



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

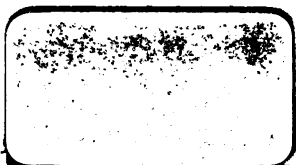
- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>



44.1700.

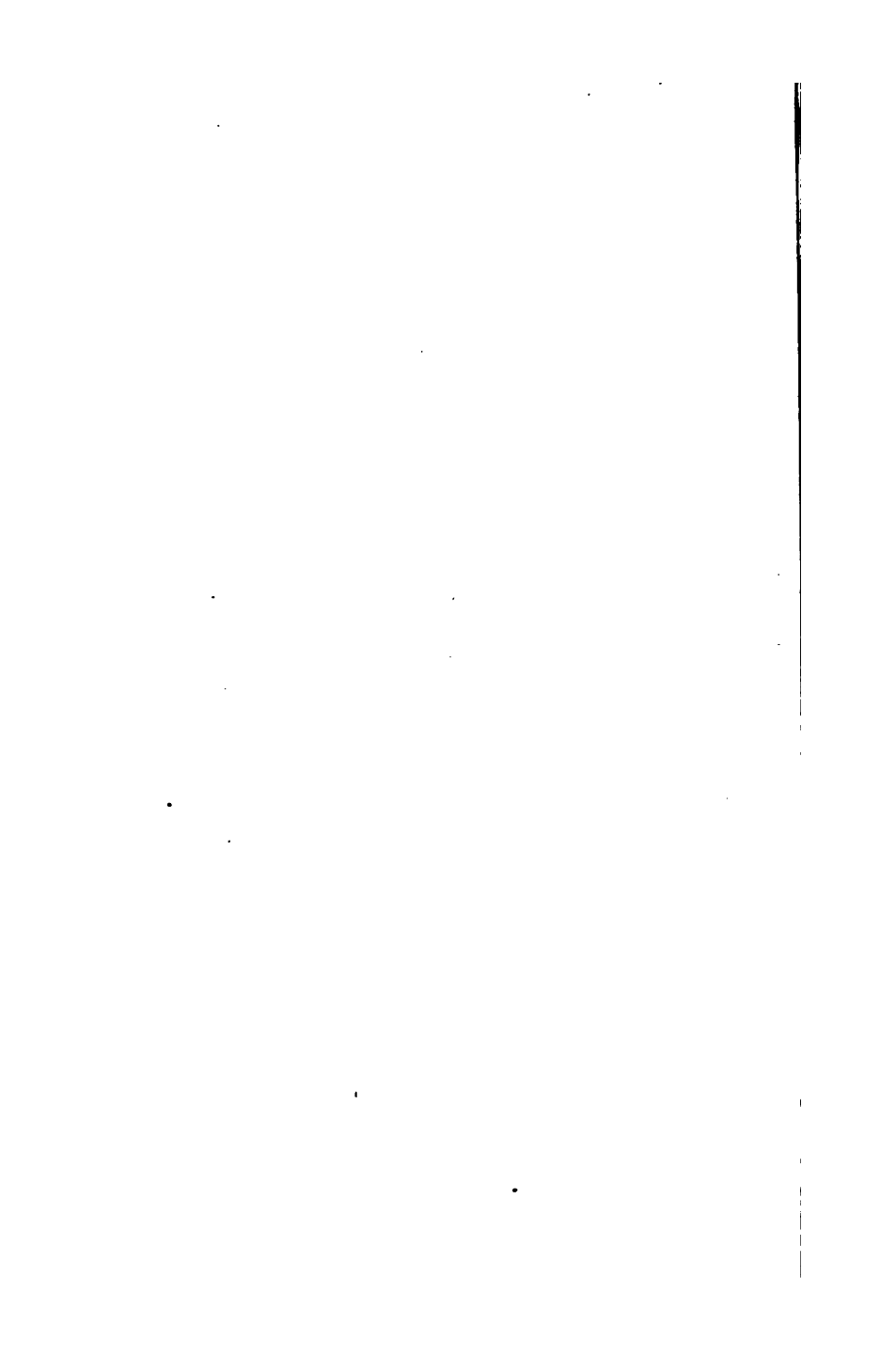












**SPELLING**  
**TURNED ETYMOLOGY.**

**PART I.**

---

**BY THE REV.**  
**THOMAS KERCHEVER ARNOLD, M.A.**  
**RECTOR OF LYNDON,**  
**AND LATE FELLOW OF TRINITY COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE.**

---

**LONDON:**  
**FRANCIS & JOHN RIVINGTON,**  
**ST. PAUL'S CHURCH YARD, & WATERLOO PLACE.**  

---

**1844.**

**LONDON:**  
**GILBERT AND RIVINGTON, PRINTERS,**  
**ST. JOHN'S SQUARE.**

## PREFACE.

---

My object in this work is to enable even a village schoolmaster to train his pupils to a considerable knowledge of words ; which, according to Coleridge's frequent admonition, is *itself* a knowledge of *things* ; and the acquiring of which is an exercise admirably suited to open and strengthen the powers of the mind. Till the meaning of words is acquired, the meaning of principles can never be fully mastered ; no chain of reasoning can be followed ; no free and full communication of thought can take place between the upper and lower classes of society.

I feel convinced that, *by frequent repetition*, even village children may acquire an extensive vocabulary, and be taught to use it accurately, because they understand it thoroughly.

The second and more important part of the work will contain the words derived immediately from Greek and Latin roots.

I should add, with respect to the *use* of the book, that it is intended for the master or monitor. The spelling lists will be printed separately for the pupils; though it is not *necessary* that they should have even these. They must first be made to spell the words in each list; and then be required to form, *vivâ voce*, the derivatives given in the Exercises\*. I am much mistaken, if they do not soon become interested in this practice, and expert in forming the words that express the required notion.

T. K. A.

*Lyndon,*  
*July 24, 1844.*

\* After Exercise 28, the *meaning* of the harder words is asked.

# CONTENTS.

---

	PAGE
Division of Syllables .....	vii
——— English Consonants .....	viii
<b>INTRODUCTION:</b>	
Prefixes—Suffixes or Terminations .....	1
On the Parts of Speech—Number .....	4
On the Second and Third Singular of a Verb .....	5
<b>LESSON</b>	
1. Sounds of A—The <i>a</i> in <i>fate</i> .....	6
2. Sound of <i>a</i> in <i>fate</i> (continued) .....	8
3. ——— <i>a</i> in <i>far</i> .....	9
4. ——— <i>a</i> in <i>fall</i> .....	10
5. ——— <i>a</i> in <i>fat</i> .....	12
6. Sounds of E—Long Sound of <i>e</i> .....	13
7. Sound of <i>e</i> in <i>met</i> .....	15
8. Long I .....	17
9. Long <i>i</i> (continued) .....	18
10. Long <i>i</i> (continued) .....	19
11. Diphthongal sound of <i>i</i> .....	ib.
12. Short <i>i</i> .....	20
13. Short <i>i</i> (continued) .....	22
14. Long O .....	ib.
15. Long <i>o</i> (continued) .....	24
16. Short <i>o</i> .....	25
17. Long close sound of U ( <i>chuse</i> ), &c. ....	26
18. Short close sound of <i>u</i> ( <i>full</i> ) .....	27
19. Short sound of <i>u</i> ( <i>tub</i> ) .....	28
20. Short sound of <i>u</i> (continued) .....	29
21. Dissyllables [A] .....	30
22. Dissyllables [A] (continued) .....	32
23. Words in which <i>a</i> has the sound of <i>o</i> in <i>not</i> .....	35
24. Sounds of <i>a</i> (continued) .....	37
25. Sounds of <i>a</i> (continued) .....	39



LESSON	PAGE
26. AI.....	41
27. AU.....	43
28. C.....	45
29. CO.....	49
30. C.....	51
31. CH.....	53
32. D.....	56
33. EI.....	58
34. On Participles.....	60
35. F.....	63
36. G—GH.....	65
37. G.....	ib.
38. H.....	68
39. Words with <i>ai</i> pronounced like <i>a</i> in <i>fate</i> .....	ib.
40. EO.....	71
41. EA.....	73
42. EAU, EE, EOU, EW, EY.....	75
43. IE.....	77
44. IO, IOU, OA.....	78
45. OI,—O=U.....	81
46. OE, OU.....	83
47. UA, UE, UI.....	85
48. Words in which a letter is not pronounced.....	86
49. Words exactly, or very nearly, the same in sound, but different in spelling and signification.....	88
50. List of words which are, or used to be, sometimes spelt differently.....	96
51. List of some <i>dissyllables</i> with the first syllable short, but only one consonant in the middle.....	99
52. Latin nouns in <i>or</i> . Words beginning with <i>em</i> , <i>en</i> .....	100
53. Pronouns. (Adjectives and Substantives relating to number)	102
54. Adjectives of number, or numerals.....	104
55. Table of the helping verbs, <i>Am</i> , <i>Have</i> , <i>Do</i> .....	105
Table of the other helping verbs.....	106
Verbs that do not form the past tense and past participle in <i>ed</i> , <i>ed</i> .....	107
Prepositions and Adverbs.....	112
APPENDIX. Table of the English Verb.....	116

**OBS.**—In the Exercises, the words are not always divided properly for spelling, but for the purpose of showing their formation; the following are the principal rules for the

#### DIVISION OF SYLLABLES.

- I. If one consonant stands between two vowels, it is taken with the second; as: *pro-per*, *na-ture*.

**EXCEPTION.** *x* between two vowels belongs to the former:

*ex-ile*, *ex-ist*, *ex-amine*.

- II. When two consonants stand between two vowels, the first consonant belongs to the first vowel; the second to the second: *dan-ger*, *num-ber*.

**EXCEPTION a.)** If the two consonants are a *mute* and a *liquid* (in *that* order), they are both taken with the second vowel: *a-ble*, *tri-ple*, *ea-gle*, *pene-trated*, *re-cruit*, *de-gree*. But *gn* are regularly separated: *mag-nificent*, *mag-netic*.

**b)** So *ch*, *ph*, *th* are kept together with the following vowel: *ba-chelor*, *bro-ther*.

**c)** But *ck* go with the preceding vowel: *pock-et*, *jack-et*.

- III. When more than two consonants stand between two vowels, the first consonant goes with the preceding vowel; the others with the following one: *gen-tle*, *cum-brous*, *illus-trate*.

**EXCEPTION.** If the two first are *nc*, *mp*, or *ck*, they both go with the preceding vowel: *distinc-tion*, *compunc-tion*, *emp-ty*, *con-sump-tion*, *pérempt-ory*, *buck-les*. But *acknowledge* is divided *ac-knowledge*.

- IV. But when words are derived from others by syllables prefixed or appended, the original word is kept distinct from the prefixure or appendage: *an-other*, *up-on*, *dis-ease*, *arm-ing*, *speak-est*, *great-er*, *broad-est*, *read-er*, *tun-ing*, *giv-ing*, *fool-ish*, *condemn-est*, *remark-able*, *acquaint-ance*, *de-stroyer*, *character-istic*, *Rich-ard*.

**REMARK 1.** *Silent e* goes with the preceding syllable: *sore*, *peace*. But when the *e* is sounded in consequence of any addition, the general rule for the division of syllables is followed: *hou-ses*, *acquaintan-ces*.

2. When the *silent e* has fallen away before a termination beginning with a vowel, the final consonant goes with the termination: *kna-vish*, *wri-ter* (not *knav-ish*, *writ-er*).

3. When a final consonant is doubled before a termination, the second consonant goes with the termination; as: *grin-ning*, *blot-ted*. But if the *verb itself* ends in two consonants, both are kept together: *fall-ing*, *call-ed*.

## DIVISION OF ENGLISH CONSONANTS.

## MUTES.

<i>Smooth.</i>	<i>Middle.</i>	<i>Aspirate.</i>	
p	b	ph	( <i>p</i> sounds.)
k	g	ch	( <i>k</i> sounds.)
t	d	th	( <i>t</i> sounds.)

Oss. The aspirates are not represented by any *single letter* in English, though *f* is very nearly *ph*. The *ch* meant is *ch* hard, as in *chemist*; *c* hard is equal to *k*.

(Division of *all* the consonants.)

L, M, N, R, ..... *liquids*.

P, B, PH, F, V, W, ..... *labials*, or *lip-consonants*.

T, D, TH, Z, S, ..... *linguals*, or *tongue-consonants*.

C, K, G, CH, J, H, Q, X, .. *gutturals*, or *throat-consonants*.

## ERRATA.

Lesson X and Lesson XI, } should not have been  
Lesson XXXVI and Lesson XXXVII, } separated.

Page 51, to *controller*, add, *one who controls accounts* is called a *comptroller*, not a *controller*.

# SPELLING TURNED ETYMOLOGY.

## INTRODUCTION.

### PREFIXES.

- 1 *Un* signifies *not*.
  - (a) Before verbs, *un* denotes the making what had been done to be undone. (To *un*bind, *un*tie, &c.)
  - (b) *Un*, before a present participle, turns it into an adjective. (*Uncultivated*.)
- 2 *Mis* signifies *ill*; in a *wrong* manner. (To *miscal*culate.)
- 3 *With* marks *opposition*. (To *with*stand.)
- 4 *Be* turns an *intransitive*<sup>1</sup> verb into a *transitive*<sup>1</sup> one: it sometimes means, *to cover with*, or *to do all over*. (To *bemoan*; *besprinkle*; *bepraise*.)
- 5 *Over* marks *too-much*; *superiority*, &c.
- 6 *Out* marks the *going beyond* or *beating* a person. (To *out*live.)
- 7 *Fore* signifies *before*, *beforehand*. (To *fore*tell.)
- 8 *Up*
- 9 *Under* } retain their own meaning.

### SUFFIXES OR TERMINATIONS.

- 10 *er* is the male *doer* of an action. (A *player*.)
- 11 *ess* is the female *doer* of an action. (A *governess*.)
- 12 *ian* }
- 13 *ist* } are the names of men derived from their *occupa*-  
*tion*, &c. (A *guardian*; an *artist*.)
- 14 *or* is the *Latin* termination for the *male doer* of the

<sup>1</sup> These words will be explained elsewhere.

action; but it is added to many words that do not come immediately from the Latin.

- 15 *our* (not following *s* or *t*) is a termination of *abstract* substantives or names of *things*.

(a) This termination is *or* in Latin; *eur* in French: and as the words that have it, come to us from the French, they should not be spelt without the *u*.

- 16 *hood* and *head*  
 17 *ship*  
 18 *dom*  
 19 *ness*  
 20 *th*  
 21 *y*

} are the terminations of abstract substantives<sup>2</sup> denoting a *quality*, *state*, *condition*, or the like.

(a) Those in *ness* are derived from adjectives.

(b) The vowel sound of the root, is often changed (generally *shortened*) before *th*: and there is frequently some further change, in the way of contraction or rejection. Thus *leng-th* for *long-th*; *dep-th* for *deep-th*; *mir-th* for *merry-th*, *merr'th*, &c.

(c) *th* is changed into *t* if an *h* precedes: thus *weight* for *weighth*.

- 22 *ing* denotes the *action* of the verb: but sometimes the *state*, or *thing done*. (*Whipping. A whipping.*)

- 23 *ment* is a termination that comes to us from the French, to whom it came from the Latin. It is the termination of a substantive denoting generally the *state* or other *thing* corresponding to the action of the verb. *Engage-ment; amaze-ment.*

- 24 *age*, also from the French: the substantives that end in *age* have a *collective* meaning (as *herb-age*); or some *abstract* meaning.

- 25 *ric* } especially denote *dominion* or *jurisdiction*: as  
 26 *wick* } bishopric, bailywick.

- 27 *ful* } denote a *fulness* of what the root means.  
 28 *ous* }

- 29 *y* denotes either *abundance of*—or simply the *consisting of* what the root means. (*Rainy, hilly—earthy.*)

(a) A single consonant terminating an *accented syllable* having a *short vowel*, is doubled before *y*.

- 30 *ly* is the termination of adjectives, that denote *agree-*

<sup>2</sup> Abstract substantives are explained in 44, b.

- ment with, or suitableness to, the notion of the root.*  
*(Fatherly.)*
- 31 *ly* is also the termination of *adverbs* derived from *adjectives*. (*Broadly.*)
- 32 *ish* added to substantives expresses *manner* (like *ly*).  
*ish* added to adjectives means *somewhat, rather*.  
*ish* is also the termination of adjectives from names of *country*. (*Childish; reddish; British.*)
- 33 *en* is the termination of adjectives meaning of *such a material*.
- 34 *en* is the simplest termination of verbs meaning to *make* or *cause* what the root expresses. It is added to *substantives* and *adjectives*. (*To whiten.*)
- (a) Several of these verbs have an *intransitive* meaning (to *grow* or *become* what the root denotes), as well as the *transitive* one, which usually belongs to verbs of this class. (*The plot thickens.*)
- 35 *ern* is the termination of adjectives derived from the *points of the compass*. (*Southern.*)
- 36 *ed* denotes *being furnished* or *provided with* what is expressed by the root.
- (a) These adjectives resemble past participles<sup>2</sup>; but there is often no verb to which they can be referred.
- (b) This termination is often added to an *adjective* and *substantive*, or other *short combination* of words. (*Pale-faced; pig-headed; 'an out-of-fashioned thing.'*)
- 37 *ward* expresses *situation* or *direction*. (*A forward course.*)
- 38 *ty* forms *tens* in numeration. (*Twenty.*)
- 39 *less* implies the *absence* or *want* of what the root expresses.
- 40 *able* denotes *fitness to be done; capability* of being done.
- (a) This is properly a Latin termination; but from having an English meaning it was readily received into the language, and used to form adjectives from our simplest words; as *drinkable*.
- 41 *ling* } are the terminations of English *diminutives*.  
 42 *kin* }  
 43 *ock* } (*Duckling, lambkin, bullock.*)

- (a) *Diminutives* express *little things* of the kind, often with the notion either of *tenderness* and *endearment*, or of *contempt*.

#### ON THE PARTS OF SPEECH.

- 44 A *substantive* is the name of a *person* or of a *thing*.  
 (a) A substantive will make sense with *a* or *the*.  
 (b) When a substantive is the name of some *virtue*, *quality*, or *property*, it is called an *abstract* substantive.  
 (c) An *abstract* substantive seldom takes '*the*,' unless it is followed by '*of*' and another substantive. (*Whiteness. Virtue. The* whiteness of this paper. *The* virtue of prudence.)
- 45 An *adjective* is the name of some *quality* that we perceive in things.  
 (a) An adjective is the name of a quality not in the form in which we think of it by itself, but in which we describe a *thing* as having the quality. '*Whiteness*' is the form in which I think and talk of the quality by itself; but '*white*' is the form in which I describe a thing as being *white*.  
 (b) An adjective will generally make sense with *men* or *things*. (*Good* men : *black* men. *Round* things.)
- 46 A *verb* is a word by which we express that persons *do* any thing, or *are* any thing, or *have* any thing *done* to them.  
 (a) A verb in its simplest form may have '*to*' put before it.
- 47 An *adverb* expresses *time*, *place*, or *manner*, in the form in which we add on such circumstances to verbs and adjectives.  
 (The other parts of speech will occur in other places.)

#### NUMBER.

- 48 The *singular* number stands for *one*: the *plural* for more than one. (A dog: two dogs.)  
 49 A substantive is made *plural* by adding *s*.

- (On the Second and Third Singular of a Verb.)**

- 59 The second person singular is the form used after *thou*.  
(a) It ends in *est*, and the rules for changing *y* into *i*, and doubling the last consonant, are the same as those given for the superlative adjective. (58, a, b.)
- 60 The third singular is the form used after *he, she, it, or any substantive*.



The *third singular* of the present tense ends in *s*: and the rules for forming it are the same as those for forming the plural of a substantive. (49—52.)

## PART I.

### A.

#### LESSON I.

##### Sounds of A.

<sup>1</sup>Fate; <sup>2</sup>far; <sup>3</sup>fall; <sup>4</sup>fat.

- 1 The *a* in fate is *slender*: this sound may be called its *name sound*, being the sound its name has in the alphabet.
- 2 Words in which *a* has its *name sound*, end in *silent e*.
- 3 Words in which *a* has its *name sound*.

make	take	name	spade	shake
quake	trade	blade	slave	cake
rake	care	dare	hare <sup>3</sup>	spare
blaze	share	age	haste	stare
wage	stale	change	pale	face
bake	mare	wave <sup>4</sup>	save	rave.

#### EXERCISE 1.

- 4 *I make* to-day: what yesterday? (*I made*<sup>5</sup>.) One-who-makes (a mak-er). Add *ing* to *make* (mak-ing): to *take* (tak-ing). *I take*: thou —? (thou tak-est.) What person is *tak-est*? (2nd pers. singular.) *I make*: he —? (he make-s.) What person is *make-s*? (3rd singular.) *I take* to-day: what yesterday? (*I took*.) What tense is *took*? (the past<sup>6</sup> tense.) Do *take* and *make* express *doing* any thing? [Yes.] What parts of speech are they then? [verbs.] What part of speech is a *maker*?

<sup>3</sup> The animal.

<sup>4</sup> Of the sea.

<sup>5</sup> Let the pupil spell all the derivative words and forms.

<sup>6</sup> Called also the *perfect* or *preterite* tense.

(A substantive.) Form a word to mean *one who trades* (a trad-er): to mean *one who quakes* (a quak-er). Form a word to mean *slave-like* (slav-ish). You can say *a slavish man*: what part of speech is *slav-ish*? (an adjective.) Full-of-care (care-ful). Without-care (care-less). Form a substantive from *care-ful* (care-ful-ness). Form a substantive from *slavish* (slavish-ness). *Slavish-ly* means *in a slavish manner*: what part of speech is *slavish-ly*? [an adverb.] Form an adverb from *care-ful* (care-ful-ly): from *care-less* (care-less-ly).

### EXERCISE 2.

- 5 Add *ing* to *dare* (dar-ing). A person-who-shares (a shar-er). Rather-stale (stal-ish). Full-of-change (change-ful). Possible-to-be-changed (changeable<sup>7</sup>). Not-possible-to-be-changed (un-changeable). What are abstract substantives? (The names of some *virtue*, *quality*, or *property*.) Form abstract substantives from *changeable* and *unchangeable* (changeable-ness: un-changeable-ness). Not-changing (un-changing). Rather-pale (pal-ish). Most-pale (pal-est). Baked-too-much (over-baked). One-who-bakes (bak-er). Having-a-pale-face (pale-faced).

### EXERCISE 3.

#### *On the Parts of Speech.*

- 6 What part of speech is — ?
- |                |   |
|----------------|---|
| <i>Name</i> ,  | in: What is its <i>name</i> ? <i>Name</i> them.                         |
| <i>Trade</i> , | — I <i>trade</i> with the interest. <i>Trade</i> is dull.               |
| <i>Blaze</i> , | — The fire <i>blazes</i> . What a <i>blaze</i> !                        |
| <i>Share</i> , | — Let me have a <i>share</i> . <i>Share</i> it with me.                 |
| <i>Rake</i> ,  | — Give me a <i>rake</i> to <i>rake</i> the grass with.                  |
| <i>Face</i> ,  | — I shall put a good <i>face</i> on it. I shall <i>face</i> the danger. |
| <i>Care</i> ,  | — I shall banish <i>care</i> , and <i>care</i> for nobody.              |

<sup>7</sup> Often in the sense of 'given to change'; 'often changing.'

*Change*, in: *Change* me a shilling. I have ~~not~~ any *change*.

*Daring*, — A *daring* attempt. That was an instance of noble *daring*.

*Haste*, — Make *haste*. *Haste* off.

*Spare*, — *Spare* that *spare* man.

## LESSON II.

7 The sound of *slender a* (or the *a* in *fate*) is sometimes expressed by :

*ai, ei, ay, ey, e, ea.*

[*They pay eight great maids there.*]

8

(Sound of *a* in *fate*.)

EY (*final*)

prey<sup>a</sup> obey whey<sup>9</sup> they Dey<sup>1</sup> Bey<sup>2</sup>

AY (*final*)

day clay say play gray  
pray stay pay way

(EI)

eight *a* vein to weigh *a* skein  
to neigh reins<sup>3</sup> reign<sup>4</sup> heir<sup>5</sup>

(EA)

to bear *a* bear tear swear  
wear *a* pear<sup>6</sup> *a* beef-steak break

(AI)

*a* pail<sup>7</sup> snail aid *a* maid  
fail hail aim maim  
claim gain pain rain  
rail praise hair chair  
stair-case saint faith tail  
sprain

(E followed by silent *e*). *He* is there. Where?

*There* = *in that place*.

*Their* = *belonging to them*.

<sup>a</sup> In; the *prey* of wild beasts.

<sup>1</sup> In; the *Dey* of Algiers.

<sup>3</sup> In; take the *reins*.

<sup>5</sup> In; this is the *heir*.

<sup>9</sup> In; white-wine *whey*.

<sup>2</sup> In; the *Bey* of Tunis.

<sup>4</sup> In; the king's *reign*.

<sup>6</sup> The fruit.

<sup>7</sup> Of water.

## EXERCISE 4.

- 9 Add *ing* to *obey* (obey-ing). Make *obey* third person singular (obey-s). A-thing-said (a say-ing). Somewhat-gray (gray-ish). Add *er* to *pray* (pray-er). Form an abstract substantive from *weigh* (weigh-t). Form from *swear* a substantive to express the action (swear-ing). Without-an-aim (aim-less). One-who-claims (a claim-ant). Full-of-gain (gain-ful). Full-of-pain (pain-ful). Abounding-in-rain (rain-y). To make what was chained not chained (to un-chain). Add *ing* to *praise* (prais-ing). Make *praise* plural (praises). To cover-with-praise (to be-praise). Having-much-hair (hair-y). Full-of-faith (faith-ful). What is an *abstract* substantive? (See 44, *b*.) Form an abstract substantive from *playful* (play-ful-ness). Having-weight (weight-y).

## LESSON III.

- 10 The *a* in *far* is called *middle* or *Italian a*. A has this sound in one-syllable words ending in *r*; before *lm*, and sometimes *lf* and *lve*; before the sharp *th*, and *n* followed by *c*, *t*, or *d*.

- |    |               |              |                |        |        |
|----|---------------|--------------|----------------|--------|--------|
| 11 | <i>to</i> mar | <i>a</i> car | <i>to</i> spar | art    | bark   |
|    | dark          | hard         | harm           | large  | lark   |
|    | star          | part         | tart           | sharp  |        |
|    | bath          | path         | lath           | father | dance  |
|    | glance        | lance        | France         | chance | prance |

[In the following, *l* is not sounded]

alms <sup>a</sup>	balm (of <i>Gilead</i> )	calm	calf
to calve	half palm	psalm	salve

- 12 The sound of middle *a* (in *far*) is sometimes represented by *au*, *ua*, *ea*, *e*.

[The clerk laughed heartily at my aunt.]

laugh	aunt	guard	hearth
launch	haunch	clerk	

<sup>a</sup> In; to give *alms*.

## EXERCISE 5.

- 13 Add *ed* to *mar* (mar-red). Add *ing* to *spar* (spar-r-ing). Full-of-art (art-ful). Without-art (art-less). One-who-practises-an-art, especially that of painting (an art-ist). Form an abstract substantive from *dark* (dark-ness). Rather-dark (dark-ish). To make-dark (to dark-en). To make-hard; also, to grow-hard (to hard-en). Form an adverb from *artful* (art-ful-ly). Form an abstract substantive from *hard* (hard-ness): an adverb from *hard* (hard-ly). Without-harm (harm-less). Adverb from *large* (large-ly). Abstract substantive from *sharp* (sharp-ness). One-who-composes-psalms (a psalm-ist). Like-a-father (father-ly). Form a verb from *half*, as *to calve* is formed from *calf* (to halve). Fit-to-be-laughed (at) (laughable). One-who-guards (a guard-i-an). The-office-of-being-a-clerk (clerk-ship). The-office-of-being-a-guardian (guardian-ship).

## EXERCISE 6.

## On the Parts of Speech.

- 14 What part of speech is — ?  
*Dark*, in : It is a *dark* night, and I am afraid of the *dark*.  
*Bark*, — The dog *barks*, but who cares for the *bark* of a dog?  
*Part*, — He asked for a *part*; but I could not *part* with any.  
*Tart*, — The plums in that *tart* are *tart* indeed.  
*Dance*, — Whom did you *dance* the last *dance* with ?

## LESSON IV.

- 15 The sound of *a* in *fall* is its *broad* sound.

all	wall	to call	bald
false	falcon (pronounced faw'kn)	also	also
almost	tall	walk	swarm
small	warm	dwarf	warp

16 The corresponding short sound is represented by *o*, as in *folly*, *holly*.

17 The broad sound of *a* is sometimes represented by *au*, *aw*, *o*, *ou*, *ough*.

[I bought a broad shawl at *Audrey* and *Fortescue's*.]

18 AU (*middle*).

*he* caught      daub      fault      fraud      quart

AW (*final*).

paw              law              saw              claw  
draw             crawl            dawn            straw

OA (*middle*).

broad              groat

OUGH (*middle*).

*he* brought      *he* thought      *he* fought

'O (*middle*).

broth      horn      horse      frost      orb  
or-phan    corn      morn      scorn      thorn  
cord      cork      fork      short      stork  
scorch    form      storm

#### EXERCISE 7.

- 19 Form a substantive to express the act or state from to *call* (calling). Form a substantive from *false* (false-hood). Adverb from *false* (false-ly). More-tall (tall-er). Most-tall (tall-est). Form a subst. to express the act from to walk (walk-ing). A person-who-walks (a walk-er). More-false (fals-er). More-small (small-er). Form an abstr. subst. from *warm* (warm-th). Full-of-thought (thought-ful). Without-thought (thought-less). Form adverbs from the two last words (thoughtful-ly, thoughtless-ly). One who daubs (a daub-er). Having faults (fault-y). Without fault (fault-less). Adjective from *fraud* (fraud-ful). Form an abstr. subst. from to *draw* (draught, draft). Form an abstr. subst. from *broad* (bread-th). More-broad (broad-er). Most-broad (broad-est). Furnished-with-horns (horn-ed).

Adj. from *frost* (frost-y). Adj. from *dwarf* (dwarf-ish).

## EXERCISE 8.

*On the Parts of Speech.*

20 What part of speech is ——?

*Fall*, in : The snow is beginning to *fall*; there will be a heavy *fall* before night.

*Walk*, — Don't *walk* above two hours: you can take a long *walk* in that time.

*Swarm*, — There is a *swarm* of bees. Isn't it early for bees to *swarm*?

*Claw*, — The cat *claws* me with its *claws*.

*Dawn*, — The *dawn* appears: the day begins to *dawn*.

(a) What part of speech is *small*? *broad*? *catch*? *fault*? *broadly*?

(b) Try to show that *catch* is in one sense a verb: in another sense (or other senses) a substantive.

## LESSON V.

21 The sound of *a* in *fat* is its short sound; being the short sound of the middle or Italian *a*.

22	lamp	Anne	and	pant	thank	prank
	he drank	the Alps	axe	bad	bag	bat
	back	catch	chat	chasm	hat	sad
	mad	man	mat	wax	have	lamb
	match	rash	scalp	scratch	spasm	thatch
	thrash	trap				

Before *f*, *s*, *n*, the short sound of *a* is often a little lengthened\*.

ant    graft    glass    grass    plant    ass

\* Walker is against this compromise: but Mr. Smart, his last editor (or rather remodeler) says, "Surely there can be no harm in avoiding the censure of both parties by shunning the extreme that offends the taste of each."

## EXERCISE 9.

- 23 Subst. to express the act from *pant* (pant-ing). Full of thanks (thankful). Without thanks (thankless). Adj. from *Alps* (Alpine). Abounding in *chat* (chat-t-y). Abstr. subst. from *thankful* (thankfulness). Adv. from *thankful* (thankful-ly). A maker-of-hats; or, dealer-in-hats (hat-t-er). Abounding-in-wax; or, resembling-wax (wax-y). Made-of-wax (wax-en). Abstr. subst. from *rash* (rash-ness). One-who-thatches (a thatch-er). One-who-thrashes (a thrash-er). Make *match* the third singular (match-es). Make *lamb* plural (lambs). More-fat (fat-t-er). Abstr. subst. from *fat* (fat-ness). What part of speech is *chat* in 'let us *chat* together?'—in 'let us have a *chat* together?'

## LESSON VI.

E.—Sounds of E: me—met.  
1 2

---

Long sound of E.

glebe      theme      these      eve      here

- 24 The long sound of *e* is also represented by other characters:—*ee*, *ea*, *ei*, *ie*, *i* followed by silent *e*.

[Seized by fearful grief she *seeks* the ravine.]

EE (*middle and final*).

breeze	cheek	cheese	eel
fee	flee	fleece	fleet
keep	knee	leech	queer
screech	sleeve	sneeze	speech
squeeze	sweep	sweet	three
tree	veer	weep	



EA (*middle and final*).

beam	bean	beast	bleak
cheap	cheat	cream	dream
each	ear	fear	freak
heath	leash	peach	preach
sneak	speak	squeak	squeal
teach	veal	wheat	wreath
year			

(Some have also *e* final.)

breathe	cease	cleave	crease
ease	league	weave	wreathe

EI (*middle*):      to ceil <sup>1</sup>      seizeIE (*middle*):

brief	chief	field	fiend
grief	lief <sup>2</sup>	priest	shield
shriek	thief	yield	

(Several with silent *e* also.)

fierce	grieve	liege
niece	piece	pierce

I followed by silent *e*:

antique	caprice	machine
ravine	routine	

## EXERCISE 10.

- 25 Abounding-in-breezes (breez-y). Without-a-breeze (breeze-less). A seller-of-cheese (a cheese-monger). Make *cheese* plural. Make *eel* plural. More-fleet (fleetier). Most-fleet (fleetest). Rather-queer (queerish). One-who-keeps (a keeper). Form a substantive to express the *act* from keep (keeping). Without sleeves (sleeveless). Without speech or speaking (speechless). Form an abstract substantive from

<sup>1</sup> That is, to cover with a ceiling.<sup>2</sup> In the phrase, "I had as lief do this as that."

*speechless* (speechlessness). An abstract substantive from *fleet* (fleetness). Make *screech* third person singular (screeches). One-who-sweeps (sweeper). Abstract substantive from *sweet* (sweetness). Adverb from *sweet* (sweetly). Most sweet (sweetest). Having-fleeces (fleecy<sup>3</sup>). Not-ceasing (ceaseless). Without fear (fearless). Full-of-fear (fearful). Form abstract substantives from *fearful* and *fearless* (fearfulness, fearlessness). Adverbs from *fearful* and *fearless* (fearfully, fearlessly). Occurring-every-year (yearly). Add *ing* to breathe (breath-ing). Make *grief* plural (griefs). Add *ing* to pierce (pierc-ing). To-make-cheap (to cheap-en). One-who-preaches (a preach-er). One who teaches (a teach-er).

## EXERCISE 11.

*On the Parts of Speech.*

26 What part of speech is — ?

*Fee*, in : You must *fee* the doctor. His *fee* is reasonable.

*Sneak*, — He *sneaks* away. What a *sneak* !

*Squeak*, — I heard a *squeak*. Did you *squeak* ?

*Fear*, — Who *fears* ? I have no *fears*.

(a) What part of speech is *peach* ? *preach* ? *teach* ? *preacher* ? *veal* ? *squeal* ?

(b) Try to prove that *squeal* is both a substantive and a verb.

## LESSON VII.

Sounds of *e* in *met*.

27 The sound of short *e* is represented in other ways.

(*e* in *met*.)

*ea*, *ai*.

<sup>3</sup> Often only resembling a *fleece*.

EA (*middle*)

breadth	breath	dead	dread
head	health	meant	realm
stead	stealth	thread	threat
wealth			

[*ai* and *ay* in *says, said.*]Before *r* short *i* has very nearly the sound of short *e*.

[See 59.]

fir	stir	sir	chirp	birch
irk	bird	gird	third	shirt
birth	girth	first	mirth	thirst

## EXERCISE 12.

- 28 Without-breath (breath-less). Full-of-dread (dread-ful). Full-of-health (healthful, healthy). Add *ing* to *dread* (dreading). I *dread* to-day: what yesterday? (I dreaded.) Make *realm* plural (realms). Form an adjective from *stealth* (stealthy). Form an abstract substantive from *stealthy* (stealthiness). Form a verb from *threat* (threaten). Form a substantive to express the act from *threaten* (threatening). Abounding-in-wealth (wealthy). Abstract substantive from *wealthy* (wealthiness). Form a verb from *breath* (to breathe). Add *ing* to *breathe* (breathing).

## EXERCISE 13.

- 29 Add *ing* to *stir* (stirring). The bird *chirps* to-day: what yesterday? (chirped or chirpt.) Full-of-mirth (mirthful). Abstract substantive from *mirth-ful* (mirth-ful-ness). Having-much-thirst (thirst-y). I *stir* to-day: what yesterday? (I stirred.) I *stir*: thou —? (stirrest): he —? (stirs): I have —? (I have stirred).  
(a) What parts of speech are *chirp*? *fir*? *birch*?

## LESSON VIII.

## I.

- 30 When *i* has its name sound in a final syllable, it is followed by silent *e*, unless it is followed by *nd*, *ld*, or *gh*, *gn*<sup>4</sup>. (Exceptions are *pint*, *climb*.)

time	thine	white	fine	nine
tide	pine	dine	whine	mind
tribe	ride	a clime	kine	wine
hind	child	bide	to climb	kind
mine	line	wild	bride	grind
to wind	blind	bite	chide	

(with *gh*)

fight	dight	light	blight	slight
bright	nigh	tight	fright	sight
plight	might	high	thigh	night
sigh	wright <sup>5</sup>			

- 31 After *g*, *ui* has the sound of *i*; *qu* = *kw*.

guile	guide	guise	quite	quire
-------	-------	-------	-------	-------

## EXERCISE 14.

- 32 Form an abstract substantive from *white* (whiteness). Rather-white (whitish). To make-white (to whiten). That-which-whitens (whitening). To wash-white (to white-wash). Adverb from *fine* (finely). Abstract substantive from *fine* (fine-ness). To make-fine-again (to re-fine). One-who-refines (a refiner). Form a *numeral*<sup>6</sup> to mean *ten and nine* (nine-teen). Form an *ordinal* numeral from nineteen (nineteenth). Add *ing* to *pine*, *whine*, *dine* (pining, whining, dining). Having-one's-mind-full (mindful). One-who-rides (a rider). Substantive to express the act from to

<sup>4</sup> Long *i* is really a diphthong, that is, *two* simple sounds. It is represented in other languages by *ei*.

<sup>5</sup> In: Wheel-wright.

<sup>6</sup> That is, an adjective that expresses number.

*ride* (riding); from *climb* (climbing). One-who-climbs (climber). Like-a-child, as adjective (childish).

## EXERCISE 15.

- 33 To make-light (to lighten). To make-bright (to brighten). To produce-fright (to frighten). I *frighten* to-day: what yesterday? (I frightened.) One-who-slits (a slither). From the adjective *slight* form an abstract substantive (slightness). Occurring-in-the-night (nightly). Full-of-fright (frightful). Possessing-might (mighty). Abstract substantive from *high* (highth<sup>1</sup>). To make-tight (to tighten). I *grind* to-day: what yesterday? (I ground.) In-a-blind-manner (blindly). An abstract substantive from *blind* (blind-ness). I *bite* to-day: what yesterday? (I bit): I have —? (I have bitten). I *chide* to-day: what yesterday? (I chid): I have —? (I have chidden.) One-who-bites (a biter). Add *ing* to *bite*, *chide* (bit-ing, chid-ing).

## LESSON IX.

(Long *i* continued.)

34	mile	file	while	lime	rime
	shine	drive	hive	strive	ripe
	wife	like	side	bite	blithe
	rise	ice	price	thine	wide

## EXERCISE 16.

- 35 To take-off-with-a-file (to file). Add *ing* to *shine* (shin-ing). It *shines* to-day: what yesterday? (it shone.) One-who-drives (a driver). Add *ing* to *drive* (driv-ing). I *drive*: I have —? (I have driven.) I *strive*: I have —? (I have striven.) I *strive* to-day: what yesterday? (I strove.) Abstract substantive from *like* (like-ness). What does *like-ly* mean? (*Looking-like*: that is, probable.) Abstract substantive from *likely* (like-li-hood). One-who-

<sup>1</sup> More commonly spelt *height*.

bites (a biter). That-which-is-bitten (a bit). Adverb from *blithe* (blithely). *I rise* to-day: what yesterday? (I rose.) *I rise*: I have —? (I have risen.) Abounding-in-ice; or, consisting-of-ice (icy). Plural of *price* (prices). More-wide (wid-er). To make-wide (to widen). Adverb from *wide* (widely). Abstract substantive from *ripe* (ripe-ness). To grow-ripe (to ripen). Has to *ripen* any other meaning? (Yes: *to make ripe*.)

- (a) What parts of speech are *ripe*? *ripen*? *ripeness*? *ripely*?

### LESSON X.

(Long *i* continued.)

- 36 The diphthongal sound of *i* is also represented by *y* (with or without silent *e*), *ie*, *ei*, *ui*, *uy*, *ai*, *ay*, *ey*, *eye*.

try	my	thy	by	why	wry
sky	fly	cry	shy	sly	rye
rye-grass					

### EXERCISE 17.

- 37 Add *ing* to *try* (try-ing). Add *est* to *cry* (cri-est). What person is thou *cri-est*? (The second person.) Add *es* to *cry* (cri-es). What person is *cries*? (The third.) Add *ed* to *cry* (cried). What tense is *cri-ed*? (The preterite, or past tense.) Make *fly* plural (flies). Make an abstract substantive from *sly* (slyness): an adverb from *sly* (slily). An abstract substantive from *shy* (shyness). Make *sky* plural (skies). Make *cry* plural (cries).

### LESSON XI.

- 38 The diphthongal sound of *i* is also represented in other ways.

[Heigh-ho, the guide will buy a pie.]

EI (middle)	height	sleight	heigh-ho
IE (end)	die	lie	pie tie vie hie
UI (middle)	guile	be-guile	guide guise disguise
UY	buy		

To these add *ay* ('yes') and *eye*.

## EXERCISE 18.

- 39 Add *ing* to *die* (dy-ing): to *lie* (ly-ing). I *lie* on the grass to-day: what yesterday? (I lay on the grass.) Make *pie* plural (pies). Make *hie* third person singular (hies). Make *vie* second person singular (vi-est). Add *ing* to *vie* (vy-ing). Without-guile (guile-less). Form an abstract substantive from *guileless* (guilelessness). Add *ing* to *be-guile* (be-guiling). Add *ing* to *disguise* (disguising). One-who-disguises (a disguiser). One-who-buys (buyer). Add *ing* to *buy* (buy-ing). Make *buy* second singular (buy-est): third singular (buy-s). I *buy* to-day: what yesterday? (I bought.) What tense is *bought*? (Preterite or past tense.)

## LESSON XII.

## Short i.

- 40 (1) *before a single consonant*:

him	in	it	if	is	with	dim
swim	spin	win	lip	ship	sip	rib
hit	wit	kin	sin	give	live	liver

- (2) *before a double consonant*:

dill	kill	still	till	will	stiff	thick
milk	silk	ring	thing	sing	sink	wink
chink	drink	wind	mist	shift	lift	

## EXERCISE 19.

- 41 [Observe, in adding a termination to those words that end in a single consonant after short *i*, you must double the consonant: *swim*, *swim-ming*.] More-dim (dim-mer). Most-dim (dim-mest). Add *ing* to *spin* (spin-ning). I *spin*: thou — ? (spin-nest.) What person is *spin-nest*? (second singular.) I *spin* to-day: what yesterday? (I spun.) Abounding-in-wit (witty). One-who-hits (a hitter). I *hit* the

wicket to-day: what yesterday? (I *hit* the wicket yesterday.) I *swim*: thou —? (swimmest.) I *swim* to-day: what yesterday? (I swum or swam.) I *spin* to-day: what yesterday? (I spun: less commonly, I span.) Abstract substantive from *dim* (dim-ness). To make-dim (to dim). One-who-wins (a winner). I *win* to-day: what yesterday? (I won.) Add *ing* to *sip* (sipping). I *sip* to-day: what yesterday? (I sipped.) Having-much-sin (sin-ful). Without-sin (sin-less). Abstract substantives from *sinful* (sinfulness): from *sin-less* (sin-less-ness). One-who-gives (a giver). *Thing-given* (gift). I *give* to-day: what yesterday? (I gave.) Add *ing* to *live* (living). I *give*: I have —, what? (I have given.)

## EXERCISE 20.

- 42 Abstract substantive from *still* (stillness). To make-still (to still). Most-still (still-est). One-who-kills (a killer). I *kill* to-day: what yesterday? (I killed.) Abstract substantive from *stiff* (stiffness): from *thick* (thickness). Having-much-mist (mist-y). Abstract substantive from *misty* (mist-i-ness). More-stiff (stiffer). To make-stiff (to stiffen). That-which-stiffens (stiffening). To make-thick (to thicken). Adjective meaning *of-silk* (silken). I *ring* to-day: what yesterday? (I rang or rung.) I *ring*: I have —, what? (I have rung.) A thing-sung (a song). I *sing*: thou —? (singest.) What person is *singest*? (second singular.) I *sing* to-day: what yesterday? (I sang or sung.) I *sing*: I have —, what? (I have sung.) One-who-sings (a singer). One-who-sings-a-song (a songster). Of what is *songster* chiefly said? (of a bird.) The ship *sinks* to-day: what yesterday? (sank or sunk.) I *sink*: I have —, what? (I have sunk: less commonly, sunken.) Abounding-in-shifts; that is, tricks (shift-y). I *drink* to-day: what yesterday? (I drank.) I *drink*: I have —, what? (I have drunk.)



## LESSON XIII.

(Short *i* continued.)

swift	hill	ill	mill	gild
king	kiss	wish	bridge	witch
sick	bid			

## EXERCISE 21.

- 43 Abstract substantive from *swift* (swift-ness). In-a-swift-manner (swift-ly). What part of speech is *swiftly*? (adverb.) Abounding-in-hills (hill-y). The-state-of-being-hilly (hill-i-ness). The man-who-manages-a-mill; or owns-a-mill (a miller). One *kiss*: two —? (kisses.) I *kiss* to-day: what yesterday? (I kissed.) One *bridge*: two —? (bridges.) Full-of-a-wish, or -wishes (wish-ful). Adverb from *wishful* (wish-ful-ly). The art- or business-of-a-witch (witch-craft). The art- or business-of-a-king (king-craft). How is *king-craft* generally used? (In a bad sense, for the art of governing for one's own interest.) Abstract substantive from *sick* (sick-ness). Looking-sick (sick-ly). To fall- or become-sick (to sicken). I *bid*: I have —, what? (I have bid-den.) I *bid* to-day: what yesterday? (I bade<sup>1</sup>.)

(a) What part of speech is —?

*Still*, in: He *stills* the waves. The waves are *still*.*Sink*, — The water runs into the *sink*. The ship *sinks*.*Swift* (and the words derived from it), in: Have you seen a *swift* this year? It is called a *swift* from its *swift* flight. It flies very *swiftly*, and is called a *swift* from the *swiftness* of its flight.*Wish*, in: Such is my *wish*; and I *wish* you would attend to it.

## LESSON XIV.

[Long *o*.]

- 44 Long
- O*
- (with silent
- e*
- ).

hole	hope	whole	more	sore
home	drone	bone	hone	stone
forge	force	rove	droll	

<sup>1</sup> Pronounced *băd*.

Long *o* (before *ll*, *th*, and other double consonants, of which the last is mostly *d*, *t*, or *k*.)

knoll	roll	scroll	stroll	cold
scold	colt	bolt	folk <sup>9</sup>	gold
bold	hold	old	both	loth
ghost	most	sloth	port	ford
pork	post	sport	go	no

### EXERCISE 22.

45 Full-of-hope (hopeful). Without-hope (hopeless). Abstract substantives from *hopeful*, *hopeless* (hopefulness, hopelessness). Adverb from *hopeful*, *hopeless* (hopefully, hopelessly). Abstract substantive from *sore* (soreness). Adverb from *sore* (sorely). Adjective from *home* (homely). Abounding-in-bone (bon-y). Abounding-in-stones (ston-y). One-who-forces (a forcer). One-who-roves (a rover). Rather-cold (cold-ish). Made-of-gold (gold-en). Abstract substantive from *bold* (bold-ness). Adverb from *bold* (bold-ly). I *hold* to-day : what yesterday ? (I held.) I *hold* : I have —, what ? (I have held : sometimes, I have holden). Full-of-sloth (slothful). Abstract substantive from *slothful* (slothfulness). Adverb from *slothful* (slothfully). More-old (older). Most-old (old-est : sometimes eld-est). More-bold (bold-er). Most-bold (bold-est). A-thing-that-rolls (a roll-er). One-who-goes (a go-er). I *go* to-day : what yesterday ? (I went.) I *go* : I have —, what ? (I have gone.)

(a) What part of speech is — ?

*Hope*, in : I entertain no *hope*. I *hope* he will come.

*Stone*, — They *stone* Stephen : he threw a *stone* at Stephen.

*Scold*, — She is a *scold*. I shall *scold* her.

*Bolt*, — *Bolt* the door. Fasten the *bolt*.

<sup>9</sup> Pronounced *fōke*.

*Roll*, in : *Roll* your hoop. Give me a *roll*.

*Sport*, — Is this *sport* or earnest? I shall *sport* my new coat.

*Post*, — Is the *post* come in? I knocked my head against the *post*. You must *post* off for the doctor.

## LESSON XV.

46 The long sound of *o* is represented in other ways.

[Four toasts show themselves at the door.]

OA (*middle*)

loaf	coal	soap	oaf	oats
goat	boar	oar	oak	roar
road	coat	coast	toast.	broach
roast	goal	oath	hoarse	

OO (*middle*)

door floor

OU (*middle*)

soul	four	course	gourd	ourn
four	fourth	mould	mourn	pour
though	dough	source	moult	

OW

blow	bow	crow	flow	grow
glow	know	low	row	show
slow	snow	stow	throw	mow
bowl				

Show *or* shew.  
to sow (seeds).  
to sew (with thread).

## EXERCISE 23.

47 Having-much-soap: *or*, like-soap (soapy). One *loaf*: three —, what? (three loaves.) Abstr. subst. from *hoarse* (hoarse-ness). Adv. from *hoarse* (hoarse-ly). Without soul (soul-less). Add *ing* to *course* (coursing). Having-much-mould (mould-y). Abstr. subst. from *mouldy* (mould-i-ness). Consisting of dough; *or*, like-dough (dough-y). I *pour*: thou —? (thou pour-est.) What person is *pour-est*? (2nd sing.)

Subst. to denote the act from *pour* (pour-ing). It *blows* to-day: what yesterday? (it blew.) It *blows* now: it has —, what? (it has blown.) Abstr. subst. from *grow* (growth). It *grows* to-day: what yesterday? (it grew.) It *grows* now: it has —, what? (it has grown.) I *know* to-day: what yesterday? (I knew.) I *know*: I have —, what? (I have known.) Form another adj. from *low* (low-ly). Abstr. subst. from *lowly* (low-li-ness). One-who-mows (a mow-er). In-a-slow-manner (slow-ly). Abstr. subst. from *slow* (slo-th, for slow-th). I *throw* to-day: what yesterday? (I threw.) I *throw*: I have —, what? (I have thrown.) One-who-sews (a sew-er). Subst. from *sow*, *mon*, *throw*, to express the act (sow-ing, throwing, mow-ing).

What part of speech is —?

*Course*, in: A fair *course*, and no favour. To *course* a hare.

*Soap*, — Give me the *soap*. *Soap* his face.

What part of speech is *slowly*?

## LESSON XVI.

Short *o*.

48	not	spot	hop	top	stop	God
	lot	pot	shot	moth	lop	box
	fox	ox	on	cot	pop	rot

[The single consonant at the end is *doubled* before a termination.]

## EXERCISE 24.

- 49 God-like (god-ly). Abstr. subst. from *godly* (god-li-ness). Without a *spot* (spot-less). Subst. from *spotless* (spotless-ness). Superl. of *top* (top-most). Add *ing* to *stop* (stop-p-ing): to *lop* (lop-p-ing). One *box*: two —? (box-es.) One *fox*: three —? (three fox-es.) One *ox*: two —? (two ox-en.)

Adv. from *spotless* (spotless-ly). A-thing-that-stops (a stop-p-er). One-who-makes-pots (a pot-t-er<sup>1</sup>).

(α) What part of speech is — ?

*Shot*, in : I *shot* the hare : here is a *shot* in its leg.

*Hop*, — Try a *hop*, skip, and jump. How far can you *hop*?

*Box*, — I shall *box* your ears. Look into the *box*.

*Stop*, — *Stop* the horse. He has made a dead *stop*.

### LESSON XVII.

The long close sound of *u* (chūse) : and its sound in *plume*.

[~~48~~ All the words in which *u* has the sound of *u* in *chuse* are from the Latin, or from languages derived, more or less, from the Latin.]

50 The sound of *u* in *chuse* is a diphthong : nearly *eu*.

mule mute lure cube duke use tube

51 A nearly similar diphthongal sound is *u* in *brute* = *oo* or *ue*.

plume brute rude crude

52 The sound of *u* in *brute* is also represented in other ways.

[The true *Jew* moves through the room.]

O-E	move	prove	lose	
OO	noose	soon	moon	room
	coo	woo	tooth	sooth
	goose			
UE	blue	true	glue	
OU	through	wound	your	youth
	group	croup	rouge	route
	soup	tour		
EW	Jew	yew		

### EXERCISE 25.

53 Like-a-mule (mul-ish). Add *est* to *lure* (lur-est).

<sup>1</sup> Observe that this word is formed from a substantive.

Adj. from *cube* (cub-ic<sup>2</sup>). Like a *brute* (brut-al, brut-ish). Territory-of-a-duke : *or*, dignity-of-a-duke (duke-dom). Adj. from *duke* (duc-al). What is a *duke's wife* called? (a duch-ess.) Full-of-use (useful). Abstr. subst. from *useful* (useful-ness). Without-use (use-less). Abstr. subst. from *useless* (useless-ness). Adverbs from *useful*, *useless* (useful-ly, useless-ly). Abstr. subst. from *rude* (rude-ness). Add *ing* to *move* (mov-ing). One-who-moves (a mov-er). Abstr. subst. from *true* (tru-th). Full-of-truth (truth-ful). Abstr. subst. from *truth-ful* (truthful-ness). Adv. from *true* (tru-ly). One-who-tours (a tour-ist). One-who-loses (a los-er). Having-room (room-y). Abstr. subst. from *roomy* (room-i-ness). Add *ing* to *coo*, *woo* (coo-ing, woo-ing). Add *est* to *coo* (coo-est). I *woo* : he — ? (he wooses.) What difference of pronunciation is there between *use* the verb and *use* the substantive?—In which is the *s* pronounced like a *z*?

### LESSON XVIII.

Short close sound of *æ* (bull).

- 54 pull full bush push puss put  
 55 *Oo, ou*, have sometimes this sound. [It should be good.]  
 OO book look crook hook wool foot  
 good hood wood  
 OU could would should

### EXERCISE 26.

- 56 Having-much-wool; *or*, like-wool (wool-l-y). Made-of-wool (wool-l-en). Consisting-of-bushes : *or*, resembling-bushes (bush-y). Add *ing* to *put* (put-t-ing). Form adjectives from *crook*, *hook* (crook-ed, hook-ed). Made-of-wood (wood-en). One *foot* : two — ? (two feet.) One *bush* : two — ? (two bushes.) One *push* : two — ? (two pushes.) Adv. from *full* (fully). Subst. from *full* (ful-ness).

<sup>2</sup> This *ic* is properly a Greek and Latin termination.

(a) What part of speech is — ?

*Push*, in : To give him a *push* : to *push* him down.

*Look*, — His sour *look*. They *look* at me.

*Pull*, — Why do you *pull* me ? Why did you give me a *pull* ?

*Book*, — Did you *book* my place ? Is it in the *book* ? *Book*<sup>3</sup> learning.

*Hook*, — I shall *hook* the fish. He has taken my *hook*.

## LESSON XIX.

Short sound of *u* (tub).

rub	snub	tub	rut	smut	dun
run	sun	shrub	up	tug	but
rug	nut	shut	burn	gulf	bulk
burst	lung	hunt	tusk	rusk	husk

### EXERCISE 27.

57 Add *ing* to *rub* (rub-b-ing). Abounding-in-smut (smut-t-y). Rather-dun (dun-n-ish). Having-bulk (bulk-y). A-thing-that-shuts (a shutter). Having-tusks (tusk-ed). I *burst* to-day : what yesterday ? (I burst.) I *burst* : I have —, what ? (I have burst.) I *shut* to-day : what yesterday ? (I shut.) I *shut* : I have —, what ? (I have shut.) I *shut* : thou — ? (thou shuttest.) Abounding-in-shrubs (shrub-b-y). A-collection-of-*shrubs*-planted-together (a shrub-bery).

What part of speech is — ?

*Rub*, in : Did he *rub* the table ? He gave his opponent a *rub*.

*Dun*, — He bought a *dun* horse. There is a *dun* at the door : I hope he is not come to *dun* me.

<sup>3</sup> This is a substantive used adjectively ; as *barn*, *corn*, *spade*, are in *barn door*, *corn field*, *spade husbandry*. Two substantives used in this way are often joined together by a little mark called *hyphen* : as *corn-field*. The two words may then be considered one compound substantive : *book-learning*.

## LESSON XX.

58 The short sound of *u* is also represented in other ways.

[*Young blood errs sometimes, and needs the birch.*]

59 O	come	done	dove	front	glove
	love	monk	month	none	one
	shove	some	son	sponge	ton
	tongue	word	work	world	worse
	worth	once			
OU	rough	tough	touch	young	scourge
OO	blood	flood	soot		
E }	before }	err	earth		
I }	r }	bird	gird	third	irk
		stir	sir	fir	chirp
		girth	thirst	shirt	birth
Y in	myrrh				

## EXERCISE 28.

- 60 Add *ing* to *come* (com-ing). One-who-comes (com-er). One-who-loves (lov-er). Adj. from *love* (love-ly). Abstr. subst. from *lovely* (love-li-ness). Capable-of-being-loved (lov-able). Adj. from *monk* (monk-ish). Occurring-every-month ; lasting-a-month (month-ly). State-of-being-a-son (son-ship). Resembling-sponge (spong-y). Subst. from *spongy* (spongi-ness). Abounding-in-words (word-y). Resembling-the-world ; or, belonging-to-the-world (world-ly). Subst. from *world-ly* (world-li-ness). Subst. from *rough* (rough-ness). Adv. from *rough* (rough-ly). To-make-rough (to rough-en). More-rough (rough-er). What degree of comparison is *rough-er* ? (the comparative.) What is the superlative of *rough* ? (rough-est.) Form subst., adv., verb, from *tough* (tough-ness ; tough-ly ; tough-en). Add *ing* to *scourge* (scourg-ing). Abounding-in-blood (blood-y). Abounding-in-soot ; or, resembling-soot (soot-y). Consisting-of-earth (earth-y). Belonging-to-earth, *i. e.* not to heaven (earth-ly). Made-of-earth (earth-en). Not-belonging-to-earth (un-earth-ly). Adj. from *irk* (irk-some). Subst. from *irk*-



*some* (irksome-ness). Having-thirst (thirst-y). Made-of-birch; of-birch (birch-en). What is the meaning of *toughen*? (either to grow tough or to make tough.)

☞ *Wor-ship* is for *worth-ship*: as a subst. it properly means *honour, respect*: as a verb, *to show honour, respect*. *Worship* now means *the paying of divine honour*.

## LESSON XXI.

### *Dissyllables.* [A.]

61 ☞ When *a* ends the last syllable but one, it is generally long: the following are some of the exceptions:

62	adage	agate	alum	atom	balance
	banish	baron	cabin	canon	carol
	cavil	chapel	claret	damage	damask
	fagot	famine	famish	fathom	flagon
	gamut	granite	gravel	habit	harass
	havoc	hazard	lather	Latin	lavish
	lazar	manor	pageant <sup>4</sup>	palace	palate
	panel	parish	ravage	ravish	salad
	satin	savage	shadow	Spanish	tavern
	tariff	travel	valet	satire	Saturn
	satyr	ravel			

### EXERCISE 29.

#### *On the meaning.*

63 What is an *adage*? (a proverb or maxim.) Give an example of an *adage* or *proverb* (the more haste the less speed). What is *agate*? (a precious stone.) *Alum*? (a salt acid substance.) *Atom*? (the smallest possible particle.) To *carol*? (to sing.) To *cavil*? (to pick faults in what is said.) *Claret*? (a sort of wine.) *Damask*? (linen or silk which has a flower-pattern formed in it by a particular arrangement of the threads.) *Fathom*? (a measure of six feet, used in measuring depth.) *Flagon*? (a large vessel of

<sup>4</sup> Generally pronounced *păd-jünt*: but by Perry, Webster, and others, *pă-jünt*.

drink.) *Gamut*? (the scale of musical notes.) *Granite*? (a very hard rock or stone, that has little hard *grains* in it.) *To harass*? (to weary.) *Havoc*? (devastation: the ruin and destruction caused by an invasion of enemies.) *Hazard*? (risk.) *To lather*? (to form a foam with water and soap. To *lather* one's chin, is to *cover the chin with such a foam*.) Where was Latin spoken? (in Italy.) Latin is a *dead language*: what does that mean? (a language that is no longer *the mother tongue* of any nation.) To *lavish*? (to spend recklessly or wastefully.) A *lazar*? (a man covered with sores, especially infectious sores; like Lazarus in the parable.) A *manor*? (certain rights over the lands of a parish; for instance, of killing game on it, and preventing others from doing so.) A *pageant*? (a gaudy show or procession.) The *palate*? (the roof of the mouth.) What is meant by *pleasing the palate*? (pleasing the taste—the palate being supposed to be the organ of taste.) *Palace*? (a king's house, or some splendid house, like a king's.) *Panel*? (a sunk square in a door, wall, &c.) Has *panel* any other meaning? (it also means the piece of parchment on which the sheriff writes the names of a jury.) To *ravish* means to 'seize by violence' mostly for the purpose of maltreating; what is the meaning of *ravishing* music, &c.? (music that *seizes* the ear, and so *takes possession* of a person's mind and attention; music that is *captivating*.) *Ravage*? (lay waste, plunder.) *Salad*? Lettuces or other herbs cut up and mixed with a sauce of oil, vinegar, &c.) *Satin*? (a glossy closely-woven silk stuff.) *Savage*? (wild, uncivilized—hence, brutal, cruel.) What makes any thing cast a *shadow*? (a shining body, the sun, moon, a candle, &c.) When are the *shadows* cast by the sun the shortest? (at twelve o'clock.) When the longest? (at sun-set.) The *Spanish* coast is the coast of —? (of Spain.) A *tavern*? (a public-house.) A *tariff*? (a paper stating what duty is to be paid on things exported and imported.) To *travel*? (to take a journey, especially in foreign countries.) A *valet*? (the man-servant who immediately attends on a rich

man's person.) A *satire*? (a poem or discourse that attacks vice and folly in a keen, cutting style.) *Saturn*? (the name of a Grecian idol or false god. Also the name of one of the planets.) What is a *planet*? (a heavenly body that moves round the sun.) Mention the principal planets (Mercury, Venus, the Earth, Mars, Jupiter, Saturn, the Georgium Sidus). A *satyr*? (a false god, or half-god, living in woods.) To *ravel*? (to entangle by twisting together.)

## EXERCISE 30.

- 64 Adj. from *atom* (a-tom'-ic). Adj. from *baron* (baronial). Subst. from *banish* (banishment). Add *ing* to *cavil*, *carol* (cavilling, carolling<sup>3</sup>). Able-to-be-fathomed (fathomable). Not-able-to-be-fathomed (unfathomable). Abounding-in-gravel; *or*, like-gravel (gravelly). Abounding-in-hazard (hazardous). Adj. from *manor* (manorial). Pleasing-the-palate (palatable). Not-palatable (unpalatable). Consisting-of-shadow (shadowy). One-who-travels (traveller<sup>4</sup>). Adj. from *satire* (satirical). To disentangle-what-was-ravelled (to unravel). What do you mean by saying that any thing *ravels* out? (that the edge of it becomes unwoven.) One-who-cavils (a caviller<sup>5</sup>.)

## LESSON XXII.

65	magic <sup>6</sup>	jalap <sup>6</sup>	radish <sup>6</sup>
	fabric	quatrain	Thames
	—	quadrant	any
	water <sup>7</sup>	squalid	many

<sup>3</sup> The doubling of the consonant in these words that have the accent on the last syllable is an irregularity that it would be better to get rid of.

<sup>4</sup> Accented *a* in the penult is short in words in *ic*.

<sup>5</sup> Like *a* in *hall*.

<sup>6</sup> Like *o* in *not*. *Skwōd-rōn*: *kwōd-rānt*: *kwōt-rāne*.

<sup>7</sup> Like short *e*: but *radish* is often (and better) pronounced *rād-dish*.

baggage <sup>10</sup>	menace	blänket	halter
herbage	purchase	—	jackál
—	furnace	alter <sup>2</sup>	palsy
messuäge <sup>11</sup>	—	appál	palter
mortgäge	angel <sup>1</sup>	balsam	paltry
outräge	cambric	caldron	—
presäge	danger	chaldron	father <sup>3</sup>
—	manger	falcon	rather
palace <sup>12</sup>	—	falter	bravo
solace		halberd	

## EXERCISE 31.

## Meaning.

- 66 *Magic*<sup>4</sup>? (the pretended art of working wonders by the assistance of evil spirits.) *Fabric*<sup>5</sup>? (a building; a manufacture, especially of cloth.) *Quatrain*<sup>6</sup>? (a stanza of four lines, rhyming alternately.) *Squadron*? (a troop of soldiers, or part of a fleet, properly drawn up in a square, or some regular form.) *Jalap*? (a medicine.) *Squalid*<sup>7</sup>? (foul, filthy—spoken of a man's person.) *Messuage*<sup>8</sup>? (dwelling-house with its offices and premises.) *To mortgage*<sup>9</sup> a house or estate? (to borrow money after giving up to your creditor the title-deeds of the house or estate; so that if you do not pay him the interest of the money

<sup>10</sup> In the unaccented final syllable *age*, *a* is pronounced like *e*; or, according to Walker, nearly like *i*.

<sup>11</sup> These are exceptions to the last rule, the *a* being long, as in *fate*. But in *mortgage* it is generally pronounced shorter.

<sup>12</sup> In the unaccented final syllable *ace*, the *a* has nearly the sound of short *e*. So in *purchase*, &c. In *furnace* Walker says it has nearly the sound of short *i*: Jones gives it the sound of short *e*.

<sup>1</sup> Long *a*, as in *fate*.

<sup>2</sup> Sound of *a* in *wall*. In *appál*, *jackál*, it is the last *a* that has the broad sound.

<sup>3</sup> *A* sounded nearly like *ar* in *far*.

<sup>4</sup> From the Latin *magicus*. The *Magi* were Persian priests, who were supposed to practise such arts.

<sup>5</sup> *Fabrica*, Latin.

<sup>6</sup> Lat. *quatuor*; French, *quatre*, *four*.

<sup>7</sup> From the Lat. *squalidus*.

<sup>8</sup> Pronounce *mes-swäge*.

<sup>9</sup> The *t* is not sounded in this word.

borrowed, he may sell your house or estate, and pay himself.) To *presage*<sup>10</sup>? (to forebode: to foretell.) A *solace*<sup>11</sup>? (a comfort.) To *menace*<sup>12</sup>? (to threaten.) *Cambric*? (a sort of muslin). *Balsam*? (any oily sweet-scented substance that is healing.) What is the difference between a *caldron* and a *chaldron*? (a *caldron* is a large kettle or boiler; a *chaldron* is a measure of coals, equal to thirty-six bushels.) A *falcon*<sup>1</sup>? (a hawk trained to chase other birds.) To *falter*? (to hesitate in one's speech in a trembling manner.) A *jackal*? (a small animal, supposed to start prey for the lion.) The *palsy*? (a disease that deprives a limb or side of feeling, and the power of voluntary motion.) To *palter*? (to shift and dodge in one's words in a tricky way.) A *quadrant*? (the quarter of a circle—used also of a *curved* row of houses; and of an instrument for astronomical purposes.) *Bravo*? (an exclamation, that means 'well done!' also a man whose trade is assassination.)

#### EXERCISE 32.

- 67 Adj. from *magic* (magic-al). A person who uses *magic* (a magician). Consisting-of-water; like-water (water-y). To sprinkle-water on plants (to water them). What is the meaning of *watering* a horse? (to give him water to drink.) What is the meaning of *one's mouth waters*? (that one longs for a certain food.) Adj. from *outrage* (outrageous). Adding to *menace* (menac-ing). One-who-purchases (a purchaser). Adj. from *Angel*<sup>2</sup> (angelic). On what day does the Church call upon us to think of the holy Angels? (on the 29th of September, which is the festival of St. Michael and all Angels.) What is this day also called? (Michaelmas.) Attended-with-danger (danger-ous). Subst.

<sup>10</sup> From the Latin.

<sup>11</sup> From the Lat. *solatium*.

<sup>12</sup> From the French *menacer*, which itself comes from the Latin *minari*.

<sup>1</sup> Pronounce the *l* like *w* (fawk'n).

<sup>2</sup> *Angel* is from a Greek word meaning *messenger*, the *angels* being God's *messengers*. What *good tidings* were brought by *angels* to any persons mentioned in the Bible?

from *dangerous* (dangerousness). To expose-to-danger (to endanger any thing). Add *ing* to *appal* (appal-l-ing). Adj. from *balsam* (balsam-ic). A limb afflicted-with-the-palsy (a palsied limb). Adj. from *father* (father-ly). Having-no-father (father-less). Adj. from *many*, meaning, containing-many-times-as-much (mani-fold).

## LESSON XXIII.

(Words in which *a* has the sound of *o* in *not*.)

68	chap	squat	wad	wander	wash
	quarrel	squash	wadding	want	wasp
	quarry	swab	wallet	wanton	wast
	quash	swaddle	wallop	warren	watch
	scallop	swallow	wallow	warrant	wattle
	slabber	swamp	wan	wassail	what
	squab	swan	wand	was	yacht <sup>3</sup>
	squabble	swap			

## EXERCISE 33.

*Meaning.*

- 69 *Chap*? (a cleft from heat or cold.) Has *chap* any other meaning? (yes; the upper or under part of a beast's mouth, and, in the plural, of a man's mouth, as a contemptuous name for it.) To *chap*? (to break into clefts either by heat or by cold.) *Chap-fallen*? (with the lower chap hanging down; hence, dispirited, crest-fallen.) *Quash*? (to crush; to destroy by squeezing.) *Quarry*? (stone-pit.) To *scallop*? (to cut the edge of any thing into rounds.) To *slabber*? (to let the spittle fall from one's mouth.) *Squab*? (short and broad.) To *squash*? (to crush into pulp.) To *squabble*? (to dispute peevishly.) To *squat* down? (to cower down close to the ground.) *Swab*? (a kind of mop.) To *swaddle*? (to swathe; roll up

<sup>3</sup> Pronounced *yŏt*.

with bandages.) To what is *swaddling* mostly applied? (to wrapping a new-born child in bandages.) A *swamp*? (a boggy place.) To *swamp*? (to sink any thing into a swamp.) To *swap*? (to exchange one thing for another; a vulgar word, often spelt *swop*.) *Wadding*? (soft stuff used for quilting or stuffing coats, &c.<sup>4</sup>) *Wallet*? (a traveller's bag or knapsack.) To *wallop*? (to boil with noise and bubbling.) To *wallow*? (to roll in the mire.) *Wan*? (pale and haggard.) A *wand*? (a small twig or rod; a rod of office.) *Wanton*? (lustful, and also recklessly playful and gay.) A *warren*? (a kind of park for rabbits.) A *warrant*? (a writ that gives a man authority to do something; for instance, to bring a man before a magistrate.) *Wassail*? (an old name for a riotous drinking-bout.) To *wattle*? (to form by plating twigs; for instance, in making hurdles.) A *yacht*? (a small ship; generally one used for pleasure.)

## EXERCISE 34.

- 70 Given-to-quarrelling (quarrelsome). One-who-quarrels (a quarreller). Add *ing* to *squabble* (squabbling). Having-the-nature-of-a-swamp (swamp-y). One-who-wanders (a wanderer). In-a-wanton-manner (wantonly). Abstr. subst. from *wanton* (wantonness). I *wash*: he —? (wash-es.) Having-the-manner-of-a-wasp (wasp-ish). Abstr. subst. from *waspish* (waspishness). In-a-waspish-manner (waspishly). What is the meaning of *warranting* a horse? (to assert that it is sound; to guarantee its soundness.) Capable-of-being-warranted, that is, *justified* (warrantable). What is the keeper-of-a-warren called? (a warren-er.) One-who-washes (a washer). A-woman-who-washes (a washer-woman).

<sup>4</sup> *Wadd* is a sort of black lead.

## LESSON XXIV.

A is pronounced nearly like *a* in father :

- 1) When it is followed by an *r* in the same syllable, if this is not followed by another *r*, or preceded by a *w* or *qu*.  
(*a*) But in an unaccented final syllable, *ar* is pronounced nearly like *är* ; and so in *custard*, &c. (*b*) *Southwark* is pronounced *Suthürk* ; and *southward* sometimes *suthürd*.
- 2) Before *th* aspirated.
- 3) In *command*, &c. ; and in *can't*, *shan't*, for *cannot*, *shall not*.
- 4) Mostly before the nasal *a* followed by *c* or *t* ; and before *ss* or *st*.

Exceptions	{	71	regárd (1)	bath (2)	bask	chant
			bar	path	basket	clasp
			—	—	blanch <sup>10</sup>	class
			cóllar (1, <i>a</i> )	command (3)	blast	craft
			cústard	reprimand	bombast	dance
			mustard	—	branch	dastard
			rhubarb	advance (4)	brass	disaster
			forward	after	cask	enchant
			toward	aghaſt	casket	enhance
			afterwards	alas	cast	fast
			—	answer	castle	flask
			Southwark (1, <i>b</i> )	ant	chaff	France
			southward (1, <i>b</i> )	ask	chance	gallánt
				ass	chandler	gasp
						ghastly

## EXERCISE 35.

(*Meaning.*)

- 72 To *regard*? (to look to ; generally, either from affection, or a wish to act according to what one sees.)  
 ‘To have a *regard* for one’s interests :’ what part of speech is *regard* here? (a substantive.) ‘To have a *great regard* for a person :’ what does *regard* mean here? (affection.) *Southwark*? (the town that lies on the southern bank of the Thames, opposite London and Westminster, and may be considered a part of what we call London.) What is the principal magistrate of the borough of *Southwark* called?

<sup>10</sup> Pronounced *blanch*.



(the High Bailiff.) *Rhubarb*? (a medicine: it is the root of a plant.) Is it the root of the *rhubarb* that grows in our gardens? (no: the root of Turkey rhubarb.) How is a *custard* made? (of milk and eggs, with sugar, flavoured with laurel leaves, or bitter almonds.) Is the *mustard* we have at table obtained from the plant that grows in our gardens, and generally goes with cress? (yes: the seed of it is crushed into a yellow flour or powder, and mixed with water.) *To reprimand*? (to reprove.) *Aghast*? (struck with horror, as if one had seen a ghost.) *To blanch*? (to make white by some change in the thing itself.) *Bombast*? (empty swelling words.) *To chant*? (to repeat prayers or psalms in the peculiar sort of plain-song that is used in cathedrals, &c.) *Craft* has two meanings; what are they? (cunning, and a man's trade or business.) *Dastard*? (coward.) *A disaster*? (a mishap, misfortune.) *To enchant*? (to delight; properly, to captivate, as if by enchantment.) *To enhance*? (to raise higher; generally spoken of encreasing praise, merit, the price of any thing, &c.) *Gallant*? (a smart man, attentive to females.) What is *gallant*? (brave, nobly daring.) *Ghastly*? (deadly pale, like a ghost.)

### EXERCISE 36.

- 73 Without-regard (regard-less). Abstr. subst. from *forward* (forward-ness). Having-no-path (path-less). Subst. from the verb *command*, to signify the thing (command-ment). One-who-commands (command-er). What is the *principal commander* of an army called? (the commander-in-chief.) Subst. from *advance* (advance-ment). What does *advancement* mean? (progress, promotion.) Add *ing* to *answer* (answer-ing). Plur. of *ass* (ass-es). Adj. from *bombast* (bombast-ic). Having-many-branches (branch-y). Adj. from *brass* (braz-en). To-let-go-one's-hands-after-having-clasped-them-together (to un-clasp them). Abounding-in-craft (craft-y). One-who-dances (a danc-er). Adj. from *dastard* (dastard-ly).

Subst. from *dastard-ly* (dastardli-ness). Adj. from *disaster* (disastr-ous). Subst. from *enchant* and *enhance*, to denote the thing (enchant-ment; enhance-ment). To-make-fast (to fasten). To undo-what-has-been-fastened (to un-fasten it). That-which-fastens (a fastening). Subst. from *gallánt* (gállantry): from *gállant* (also gállantry). Adv. from *gállant* (gállant-ly). Abstr. subst. from *ghastly* (ghastli-ness.)

## LESSON XXV.

[See remark in Lesson V. 22.]

74	glance	jasper	master	plant	sample
	glanders	lance	mastiff	plaster	shaft
	glass	lanch	nasty	prance	slander
	graft	lass	pass	quaff	slant
	grant	last	passover	raft	stanch
	grasp	lath	passport	rafter	task
	grass	mask	pastern	rascal	trance
	hasp	mass	pasty	repat	vast
	janty	mast			

## EXERCISE 37.

(Meaning.)

- 75 A *glance*? (a sudden look.) To *glance* has two principal meanings; what are they? (to dart a look: to touch lightly, without piercing.) *Glanders*? (a disease in the glands of a horse.) To *graft*? (to insert a shoot of one tree into the stock of another, that the tree may become of the same kind as the inserted shoot.) *Hasp*? (a clasp folded over a staple, and fastened as with a padlock.) *Janty*? (showy, fluttering in manner.) *Jasper*? (a precious stone of a bright green colour, sometimes clouded with white.) A *lance*? (a long spear.) To *lanch*? (to send violently forward, as a lance from the hand, or a ship into the water.) Is to lanch a ship usually spelt differently? (yes.) How? (launch.) *Lath*? (a thin slip of wood, such as is used to support the tiles of a house.) A *mask*? (the representation of a face, used to cover and disguise a person's own face.)

*Mass*? (a large lump or quantity.) Has *mass* any other meaning? (yes; the communion service in the Roman Catholic Church.) *Mast*? (the tall pole or post that supports the sail of a ship.) *Passover*? (a feast of the Jews.) Of what deliverance did this feast keep up the recollection? (the destroying Angel's *passing over* the houses of the Israelites, when he killed the first-born of the Egyptians.) Who is our *Passover*? (the Lord Jesus Christ; for the Apostle says, 'Christ our Passover is slain.') *Passport*? (a written permission for a foreigner to travel in a country.) *Pastern*? (the part of a horse's leg, between the joint next the foot and the hoof.) *Pasty*? (a raised pie.) *Prance*? (to move in a springing manner, like a high-mettled horse.) To *quaff*? (to drink off.) *Raft*? (a frame or float, made of planks of timber joined together.) *Rafter*? (one of the roof-timbers, that are let into the main beam.) A *repast*? (a meal.) A *sample*? (a specimen.) A *shaft*? (a straight rod, pole, or column; as the *shaft* of an arrow, the *shaft* of a cart, the *shaft* of a pillar.) Has *shaft* any other meaning? (yes; the straight throat, as it were, of a pit.) *Slander*? (a false and malicious tale against a person.) To *slant*? (to lean away from a line that is straight upright; or from one that goes on straight before us.) What is a line that is straight upright called? (a perpendicular line.) To *stanch*? (to stop the flowing of blood.) A *trance*? (a deep death-like sleep; often one in which the soul sees visions of the future.)

#### EXERCISE 38.

- 76 Made-of-glass; or glass-like (glass-y). To-fill-with-glass (to glaze). One-who-glazes *windows* (a glazi-er). Having-much-grass (grass-y.) Abstr. subst. from *grassy*, *glassy* (grass-i-ness; glass-i-ness). A little-lance, *such as surgeons cut a vein with* (a lancet). A party-where-people-wear-masks (a masquerade). Having-a-great-mass (mass-y; also massive). Adj. from *nasty* (nasti-ly). Abstract substantive from *nasty* (nast-i-ness). To pass and pass-

back-again (to pass *and* re-pass). One-who-passes-by (a passer-by). I *pass* to-day: what yesterday? (I past *or* passed.) To plant-again (to re-plant). A place-where-young-trees-are-planted (a plantation). Add *ing* to *prance* (pranc-ing). Rascal-like (rascal-ly). Adj. from *slander* (slander-ous). One-who-slanders (a slander-er). Abstr. subst. from *vast* (vast-ness). Adv. from *vast* (vast-ly).

- (a) What is the meaning of *tasking* a man's strength?  
 (making even *his* strength find it a *hard task*.)  
 What is the meaning of, taking a person to *task*?  
 (finding fault with, or scolding him.)

## LESSON XXVI.

## AI.

- 77 *AI* has generally the sound of *a* in *fate*.  
 But the following words are exceptions:

plaid <sup>1</sup>	wainscot	travail	aisle <sup>5</sup>
railery	waistcoat	_____	_____
_____	_____	Britain <sup>4</sup>	plaster <sup>6</sup>
again <sup>2</sup>	captain <sup>3</sup>	villain	_____
against	curtain	_____	plait <sup>7</sup>
said	mountain		

## EXERCISE 39.

- 78 Abounding-in-mountains (mountain-ous). Subst. from *mountainous* (mountainous-ness). One-who-lives-on-mountains; or, one-who-lives-amongst-mountains (a

<sup>1</sup> *AI* has here the sound of short *a*. *Plaid* rhymes to *mad*: *railery* to *salary*.

<sup>2</sup> *AI* has here the sound of short *e*. Pronounced *-agen*, &c.

<sup>3</sup> Like short *i*. *Captin*, &c.

<sup>4</sup> "*AI* (in *Britain*) has here the short sound approaching to *u*, so common with all the vowels in final unaccented syllables, and is pronounced exactly like *Briton*."—Walker, who, with Smart, gives *villain* the sound of *villin*.

<sup>5</sup> Pronounced *ile*, a rhyme to *smile*.

<sup>6</sup> *Plaster*, as it is often spelt; a rhyme to *master*.

<sup>7</sup> *Plait*, 'a fold,' should rhyme to *mate*: not, as some express it, to rhyme to *meat*.

mountain-er). The rank-of-a-captain (captain-ship, or captain-cy). Adj. from *villain* (villain-ous). Adv. from *villainous* (villainous-ly). A subst. from *villainous*, to express the *act* or *conduct of a villain* (villain-y<sup>a</sup>). Abstr. subst. from *villainous* (villainousness).

79 What part of speech is —— ?

*Wainscot*, in : Shall you *wainscot* this room ? Do you like the *wainscot* ?

*Plaster*, — Is the *plaster* dry ? Shall you *plaster* the wall this winter ?

*Plait*, — Can you *plait* neatly ? The *plaits* are too large.

What *tense* is, she *plaited* neatly ? (the *past tense*.)

What *tense* is, she *plaits* neatly ? (the *present tense*.)

#### EXERCISE 40.

(On the meaning.)

80 What is *raillery* ? (bantering ; joking a man about something.) What is *wainscot* ? (the inner wooden covering of a wall.) In *wainscoting* there are generally sunk squares, or more commonly *oblong* spaces ; what are such spaces called ? (panels.) What is the difference between the word I just used, *oblong*, and square ? (an *oblong* has four sides, of which each side is of equal length with the side opposite to it, but not of equal length with the other two sides.) What is the officer next above a captain ? (a major.) Next above a major ? (a colonel.) Next above a colonel ? (a general.) What is the officer next below a captain ? (a lieutenant.) Next below a lieutenant ? (an *ensign* in a foot regiment ; a *cornet* in a horse regiment.) What is an *aisle* ? (properly, the space on each side of a church between the pillars and the wall ; but also used for the walks up a church between the pews.) What is, to *plait* ? (to fold linen by doubling small parts over.)

<sup>a</sup> Spelt by Dr. Johnson and some others, *villany*, *villanous*.

## LESSON XXVII.

## AU.

81 *Au* has regularly the sound of *aw* in *awl*, or *a* in *wall*.

*Exceptions.*

daughter			
slaughter <sup>9</sup>	daunt <sup>10</sup>	jaunt	draughts
ought	paunch	jaunty	laugh
naught	flaunt	haunch	—
naughty	—	launch	gauge <sup>3</sup>
sauce	aunt <sup>1</sup>	craunch	—
saucer	askaunt	jaundice	hautboy <sup>4</sup>
saucy	askaunce	laundry	—
—	chaunt	laundress	cauliflower <sup>5</sup>
	gaunt	staunch <sup>2</sup>	laurel
	gauntlet	draught	laudanum

## EXERCISE 41.

82 Form abstract substantives from *naughty*, *saucy* (naught-i-ness, sauc-i-ness): adverbs (naught-i-ly, sauc-i-ly). More-saucy (sauc-i-er). Not-daunted (un-daunted). Subst. and adv. from *undaunted* (undaunted-ness; undaunted-ly). Not-capable-of-being-daunted (undaunt-able). Subst. from *gaunt* (gaunt-ness). Subst. from *jaunty* (jaunt-i-ness). Fit-to-be-laughed-at (laugh-able). Adv. from *laughable* (laugh-ably). One-who-laughs (laugh-er). Not-jaundiced (un-jaundiced). Is there any other substantive that nearly resembles *laugh*? (yes: laughter.) Which is an *abstract* subst. *laugh*, or *laughter*<sup>6</sup>? (laughter.)

<sup>9</sup> This word is derived from *to slay*.

<sup>10</sup> In the two first of these words *au* should (I think) have its regular sound. In *flaunt* all the authorities but Perry give it the sound of *a* in *father*.

<sup>1</sup> In these words (which include nearly all in which *au* is followed by *n*) *au* has the sound of *a* in *father*. *Jaunty* is also spelt *janty*, and *launch*, *lanch*. [Less. XXV.]

<sup>2</sup> Better *stanch*.

<sup>3</sup> Pronounce *gāge*.

<sup>4</sup> Pronounce *hōboy*.

<sup>5</sup> *Au* has here the sound of *ö* in *not*; *colliflower*, &c. *laudanum*, *lōdnūm*.

<sup>6</sup> To answer this, try which you can use without *a* or *the*: 'laughter is a sign of merriment'; 'a laugh.'

83 What part of speech is —— ?

*Laugh*, in: Don't *laugh*: a *laugh* jars against my present feelings.

*Gauge*, — Howard went about taking the *gauge* of human misery. Who can really *gauge* the human heart?

*Slaughter*, — A fearful *slaughter* followed. They *slaughtered* friend and foe.

#### EXERCISE 42.

(On the meaning.)

84 *Aught*? (any-thing.) *Naught*? (good for nothing.)

How is the word of the same sound, which means *nothing*, spelt? (nought.) What is the *best sauce*? (hunger.) To *daunt*? (to frighten, to cow.) To *flaunt* about? (to flutter about in gay clothes.) What is an *aunt*? (the sister of one's father, or of one's mother.) What is the meaning of looking *askaunt* or *askaunce*? (looking sideways.) *Gaunt*? (lean.) *Gauntlet*? (an iron glove.) What was sometimes done with a *gauntlet*? (when a knight wished to give a challenge, he threw down his gauntlet; whoever took it up, accepted the challenge.) A *haunt*? (a place to which one often resorts.) To *haunt*? (to resort to regularly, or very often.) A *jaunt*? (an excursion; that is, an outing.) *Jaunty*? (having the air of wishing to show off one's gaiety.) The *haunch*? (hip, thigh.) To *launch* a ship? (to make it slide from the docks into the water.) The *jaundice*? (a disease that makes a man look yellow, and also makes every thing look yellow to him.) What is the meaning of looking upon any thing with a *jaundiced eye*? (with a prejudiced eye; and so *changing the colour*, as it were, of what one looks at.) A *laundry*? (a wash-house.) A *laundress*? (a washerwoman.) A *draught*? (the quantity of a drink that one *draws off*, that is, drinks, at one pull.) What does it mean when I talk of '*sitting in a draught*?' (in a place where the

<sup>7</sup> *Draught* comes from the verb to draw.

wind *draws in*.) A *draft* on a banker? (a written form, used when one *draws* money out of a bank.) When I speak of '*beasts of draught*,' the '*draught* of a carriage,' &c.? (beasts for *drawing*; the *drawing* of a carriage, or manner in which it *draws*.) What is the game of *draughts*? (a game played with wooden men: a game of the same kind as *chess* and *backgammon*.) Upon what is it played? (upon a draughts-board:) with what? (with draughts-men.) To *gauge*? (to measure how much a vessel contains: how much any thing contains.) A *hautboy*? (a sort of flute: also a sort of strawberry.) What is *laudanum*? (opium dissolved in spirits of wine.) What do *opium* and *laudanum* do? (make a man sleepy and stupid.) Do they do him harm? (yes: they produce a kind of intoxication; and, if taken often, soothe him for a little while, and then make him *miserable*.) Is it sinful to get into the habit of taking *opium* or *laudanum*? (yes: it is a great sin: it is a bad kind of drunkenness.) Is it ever right to take *opium* or *laudanum*? (yes: when a doctor gives it, to still pain or procure sleep for a sick person.)

## LESSON XXVIII.

## C.

- 85 (1.) *C* has the sound of *k* before *a, o, u*; before every consonant but *h*; and at the end of a word.
- (2.) *C* has the sound of *s* before *e* and *i* sounds; that is, before *e* and *i*, and *æ* (which has the sound of *e*), and *y*, which has the sound of *i*.
- (3.) *C* has the sound of *sh* before *e, i*, followed by another vowel (not forming a diphthong with it), and having an accented syllable next before it. (Walker says before *ea, ia, ie, io, ious*.)
- (4.) *C* is pronounced like *tsch* in *vermicelli, violoncello*.



86	cabál	callow	canopy	cárol <sup>5</sup>	cáter <sup>7</sup>
	cabbage	calomel	cant	caréss	caterpillar
	cabin	cambric	canvass <sup>8</sup>	carouse <sup>6</sup>	caterwaul
	cabinet	camel	cáper	carpet	catkins
	cable	camlet	caprice <sup>4</sup>	carriage	cattle
	cackle	canál	capstan	carrión	cavalcade <sup>3</sup>
	cage	cáncel <sup>2</sup>	cárbine	carrot	cavalier <sup>9</sup>
	cajole <sup>11</sup>	cancer	caraván	carve	cávalry
	caitiff <sup>12</sup>	candle	caraway	cascáde	causeway
	calico	candy	carcass	casement	or causey
	calk <sup>1</sup>	canker	card	castle	

## EXERCISE 43.

(On the meaning.)

- 87 What is a *cabal*? (a party of men joined together to carry on some factious design.) How was this word formed? (from the first letters of the names, or rather titles, of some intriguing ministers<sup>10</sup> of Charles the Second's.) What does *cabbage* mean in the language of common life? (to filch or steal.) What is a *cabin*? (a small room or hut; a room in a ship.) A *cable*? (a great rope in a ship.) A *cabinet*? (a set of boxes or drawers of curiosities; a private room in which consultations are held by kings and their ministers.) A *cabinet-council*? (the private council of the king and his ministers.) A *caitiff*? (a base villain; a miscreant.) To *cajole*? (to deceive by flattery.) *Calendar*? (almanac; or list of days, of months, and so on, throughout the year.) *Calico*? (a stuff made of cotton.) A bird's *callow* brood? (unfledged.) To *calk* a ship? (to stop its leaks.) A dose of *calomel*? (a medicine prepared from quicksilver.) *Cambric*? (a kind of fine linen.) A *camel*? (a beast of burden in hot sandy countries.) *Camlet*? (a mixed stuff, now made of wool and silk.) How did it get the name

<sup>11</sup> Ká-jöle' <sup>12</sup> ká'-tiff <sup>1</sup> kaw <sup>2</sup> kán'-síl <sup>3</sup> kán'-väs <sup>4</sup> ká-präce'<sup>5</sup> kár-rül <sup>6</sup> ká-rowz <sup>7</sup> ká'-tër <sup>8</sup> káy-ál-kāde' <sup>9</sup> káy-ä-lère'.<sup>10</sup> C-lifford, A-shley, B-uckingham, A-rlington, L-auderdale.

of *camlet*? (it was formerly made of silk and *cam-el's* hair: it was originally spelt *camelot*.) To *cancel*? (to strike out a word or figure.) A *cancer*? (a kind of eating sore.) To *candy*? (to make into a frosted or crusted mass, by preserving with sugar.) A *canker*? (a worm or disease that destroys fruit; a disease in trees.) A *canopy*? (an awning; a covering spread above people's heads to keep off the sun.) What are the two meanings of *cant*? (whining, hypocritical speech; and the slang or jargon of a low class.) *Canvass*<sup>1</sup>? (a sort of cloth; and a going round to beg for votes.) *Caprice*? (freak, fancy; the opposite of a settled plan.) To *caper*? (to dance about.) A *caper*? (the seed-vessel of the caper-bush, which is used as a pickle; also a leap in dancing.) A *capstan*? (a sort of wheel for drawing up great weights, such as the anchor of a ship.) A *carbine*? (a sort of small gun.) A *caravan*? (a party travelling together, in the East: in England, a great covered waggon, such as wild beasts are carried in.) *Caraway*? (a plant, the seeds of which are put into cakes.) *Carcass*? (dead body.) To *card* wool? (to comb it.) A *carol*? (a joyous song.) To *caress*? (to bestow marks of affection upon, such as kissing, embracing.) A *cargo*? (the lading of a ship.) To *carouse*? (to drink deep; to have a drinking-bout.) *Carrion*? (a worthless carcass.) What is *carved* besides meat? (stone.) Who *carves* stone? (a sculptor or statuary.) A *cascade*? (a water-fall.) A *casement*? (a window opening on hinges.) A *castle*? (a strong fortified building, that can be defended against enemies.) What do we mean by saying that in England "every man's house is his castle?" (that he may dwell there in safety, no man having a right to enter it by force.) To *caterwaul*? (to make a loud, disagreeable, complaining noise.) *Catkins*? (imperfect flowers resembling cats'-tails, such as some trees have.) A *cavaller*? (properly, a horseman, a knight: in the civil wars it was the name of King

<sup>1</sup> From the Lat. *cannabis*, hemp.

Charles's party.) What were the rebels called? (Round-heads.) A *cavalcade*? (a procession of men on horseback.) What is the meaning of *canvassing* a question? (sifting it, examining<sup>2</sup> it:) of *canvassing* for votes? (of going round to *enquire* and *examine* who will vote for me or my friend.)

~~For~~ The two ways of pronouncing and spelling *causeway* are thus accounted for: it comes from the French *chaussée* (pronounced *shō-sā*), and should be *causey*; but people, knowing it meant a sort of *way* or *path*, began to write it *cause-way*, and now it has come to be pronounced *causeway*. But *causey* is the *right* spelling and pronunciation.

#### EXERCISE 44.

- 88 To form-cabals (to cabal; the verb being of the same form as the substantive). What are the ministers called, who attend the private meetings of the king's council? (cabinet-ministers.) One-who-cabals (a caballer). One-who-cackles (a cackler). Add *ing* to *cackle* (cackl-ing). To put-in-a-cage (to en-cage). Subst. from *cajole*, to express the *thing* (cajology). One-who-cajoles (a cajoler). One who prints calicoes (a calico-printer). Adj. from *cancer* (cancerous). I *candy* to-day: what yesterday? (I *candi-ed*). Adj. from *caprice* (capricious<sup>3</sup>). One-who-canvasses (a canvasser). Subst. from *canvass*, to express the doing or act (canvassing). One-who-is-armed-with-a-carbine (a carbineer<sup>4</sup>). Substantives from *carol*, to express the *doer* and the act (a caroller: carolling). One *caress*: two — ? (caresses.) One-who-carouses (a carouser). Adv. from *cavalier* (cavalierly). What does *cavalierly* mean? (in a haughty way: pride being a sin that cavaliers were likely to fall into.)

What part of speech is — ?

*Carouse*, in: You have had a long *carouse*. To *carouse* is a sin.

*Caress*, — She will *caress* him with a fond *caress*.

<sup>2</sup> Skinner says, from the notion of *beating hemp*: perhaps, from that of *straining* through coarse canvass.

<sup>3</sup> Kā-prish-ūs.

<sup>4</sup> A light horse-soldier.

## LESSON XXIX.

## CO.

89	coach	coin	contrive	covet
	coal	colic	control	count
	coarse	colter	cool	countenance
	coast	combat	coop	counter
	coax	command	cooper	couple
	cobble	commence	cope	courage
	cobweb	complain	coping	court
	coddle	concern	corn	coward
	coffee	conquer	corner	coxcomb
	coffer	cóntラスト	cornice	coy
	coffin	contrást		

## EXERCISE 45.

(Meaning.)

- 90 To *cobble*? (to mend coarsely.) To *coddle*? (properly to half boil; then to make a person tender by keeping him too warm, and so on.) What is *coffee*? (the roasted berry of a plant.) In what countries does the *coffee-tree* grow? (in Arabia; in the West Indies, and in other hot countries.) *Coffer*? (strong box: especially for money.) What is a *coddling*? (an apple that is good for boiling or coddling.) *Colic*? (a painful disease of the bowels.) To *coop* up? (to shut up in a narrow space.) To *cope* with any body? (to strive with him for the first place.) The *coping* of a wall? (the top row of masonry, the stones of which are mostly wider than those of the lower rows, so as to keep the wet from them.) The *cornice* of a room? (a sort of ornamental edging, which projects round the top of the room.) To *covet*? (to feel a strong longing for what is not our own.) *Colter*? (the sharp iron of a plough, which cuts into the earth.) What is the meaning of *countenancing* a crime? (of giving it one's countenance: of *looking on*, that is, as if one was not displeased at it.) What two meanings has *counter*? (a piece of ivory or bone to *count* with; and the sort of *table* or *form* at which

goods are examined and sold in shops.) *Coy?* (shy, modest.)

### EXERCISE 46.

- 91 The-man-who-drives-a-coach (a coach-man). The box of a coach (coach-box). A-horse-that-draws-a-coach (a coach-horse). What is the mark called that is placed between *coach* and *horse* in *coach-horse*? (hyphen.) As-black-as-coal (coal-black). What is the place called from which *coals* are dug? (a coal-mine, or coal-pit, or colliery<sup>5</sup>.) The-place-in-which-coals-are-kept (coal-hole). One-who-works-in-coal-mines (a collier: altered, probably, from coal-ier). In-a-coarse-manner (coarsely). Abstr. subst. from *coarse* (coarseness). A-house-where-coffee-is-sold (a coffee-house). A-room-where-coffee-is-drunk (a coffee-room<sup>6</sup>). A-pot-in-which-coffee-is-made (a coffee-pot). One-who-coaxes (a coxer). The substantive that expresses the *act* from *to coax* (coaxing). One-who-coins (a coiner: mostly of one who does it unlawfully). The-act-of-coining (coinage). What does *coinage* also mean? (the money of a country is called the *coinage* of that country: the money coined at one time is also so called.) One-who-combats (a combatant). The combat of one man against one enemy (a single combat). One-who-commands (a commander). Thing-commanded (command, or commandment). Substantive to express '*beginning*' from *commence* (commencement). Substantive to express the *thing* from *complain* (complaint). One-who-conquers (conqueror). A word derived from *conquer* that means '*victory*,' or '*what is gained by victory*' (conquest). Capable-of-being-conquered (conquerable). A *contrast* (a striking difference, when two things are compared together). In the verb the accent is on the last syllable: what is to *contrást*? (to compare one thing with another for

<sup>5</sup> For *coalery*.

<sup>6</sup> A *coffee-room* means now a room in inns where those who don't require private apartments take their meals. It is generally furnished with many little tables.

the purpose of calling attention to the striking difference between them.) One-who-complains (complainer, *or* complainant). One-who-contrives (contriver). That-which-is-contrived (a contrivance). One-who-controls (controller). Capable-of-being-controlled (controllable). In-a-cool-manner (coolly). Abstr. subst. from *cool* (coolness). A-field-of-corn (a corn-field). If you do not write *corn-field* as one word, what mark do you put between *corn* and *field*? (a hyphen). How is *corn* used here? (as an adjective; but it may be considered as forming a compound substantive with *field*.) A-house-that-stands-at-the-corner (a corner-house). Much-given-to-covet (covetous). Abstr. subst. from *covetous* (covetousness). What does the Bible call *covetousness*? (idolatry, or the crime of worshipping a false god.) Having-much-courage (courageous). Coward-like (coward-ly). Abstr. subst. from *cowardly* (cowardliness).

- (a) Try to prove: that  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{coast} \\ \textit{coin} \\ \textit{combat} \\ \textit{command} \\ \textit{count} \\ \textit{concern} \end{array} \right\}$  are both *substantive* and *verb*.
- (b) ————— *cool* is *adjective*, *substantive*, and *verb*.

## LESSON XXX.

## C.

92	cuckoo	clamber	cloud	craze
	cuddle	clammy	clover	crest
	cudgel	clatter	clown	crew
	cumber	claret	clumsy	cringe
	cunning	clay	cluster	cripple
	curry	clever	cradle	crumble
	curtain	climate	crawl	crumple
	custom	cloth	cravat	crupper
	cutlass	clothes <sup>7</sup>	crave	crutch
	cutler			

<sup>7</sup> Pronounced klōza.

## EXERCISE 47.

(On the meaning.)

- 93 What is a *cuckoo* said to do? (to suck the eggs of other birds, and lay her own to be hatched in their place.) Does the *cuckoo* stay here in the winter, or go to some other country? (it goes to some other country.) What are such birds called? (birds of passage.) To *cuddle*? (to hug round for the purpose of keeping warm; also to lie snug and warm in one another's arms.) *Cumber*? (to clog or embarrass by a weight or obstacle.) To *curry*? (to dress leather by beating, rubbing, &c.: to dress a horse's coat by rubbing it with a scratching instrument.) What is the meaning of *currying favour* with anybody? (to stroke him, as it were, into good humour by flattery and mean compliance with his humours.) A *cutlass*? (a broad sword.) *Clamber*? (to climb up with difficulty.) *Clammy*? (sticky, gluey.) *Claret*? (a sort of French wine.) What is the meaning of *living in clover*? (living in abundance and luxury.) How does it get this meaning? (cattle are extremely fond of clover: so that to live in clover, is to live as well as cattle do in a *clover-field*.) What is a *cluster*? (berries or fruit crowded together on a common stalk; like ivy-berries, a bunch of grapes, &c.; also used for bees clinging together, people crowding together in knots, &c.) A *crest*? (a plume of feathers on a helmet.) What is a *helmet*? (an iron cap, as it were, worn by horse-soldiers: the armour for the head.) What do we mean when we talk of a man's *crest* on his spoons, and so on? (it is the ornament which his family have a right to put on their *coat of arms*.) What is a *coat of arms*? (when there was an order of knights, a knight had a particular *ornament* or *device* on his shield.) Who determined what device a knight should wear, and so on? (heralds.) What is the knowledge of all this called? (heraldry.) Are there any *coats of arms* now? (yes: the family of a gentleman has a right to

use on his seals, carriages, &c., the *device* or *coat of arms* of his family.) Where are such rights settled? (in the Herald's Office.) To *cringe*? (to fawn and flatter.) A *cripple*? (a lame person.) The *crupper*? (the strap from the saddle to the horse's tail.) What does *custom* mean besides *habit*? (a tax paid on goods brought into a country, or sent out of a country, for sale.)

## EXERCISE 48.

94 Add *ing* to *cuddle* (cuddl-ing). Having-the-property-of-cumbersome (cumbersome: *and* cumbrous). That-which-cumbers (a cumbrance *or* encumbrance). Adv. from *cunning* (cunningly). Abstr. subst. from *cunning* (cunningness). One-who-curries (a currier). The comb-with-which-horses-are-curried (a curry-comb). Adj. from *custom* (customary). The-house-where-the-*customs*-are-paid (the custom-house). Adj. from *clay* (clayey). Adv. and subst. from *clever* (cleverly, cleverness). Adj. from *clown* (clownish). Adv. and subst. from *clownish* (clownishly, clownishness). Cloud-like; or, having-many-clouds (cloudy). Abstr. subst. from *cloudy* (cloudiness): from *clumsy* (clumsi-ness). Adv. from *clumsy* (clumsily). Add *ing* to *crave*, *crumple*, *crumble* (crav-ing, crumpl-ing, crumbl-ing): to *cluster* (clustering).

(a) Show that *cluster*, *cloud*, *cudgel*, *cripple*, are both substantives and verbs.

(b) Show that *cunning* is both substantive and adjective.

## LESSON XXXI.

## CH.

95 CH has the sounds of *tch* (or *tsch*); of *sh* in words from the French, and of *k* in words from the Greek, and (sometimes) of *kw* in *choir*, *chorister*.



(CH = TCH)

(CH=SH) (CH=KW.)

chaffer	chasten	chagrin <sup>7</sup>	choir <sup>8</sup>
challenge	chastise	chandelier	—
chaldron	chequer	charade	chorister <sup>9</sup>
chalice	cherish	charlatan	
chamber	child	chicane	
chamfer	chimney	chivalry	
chancel	chirp		
chandler	chisel		
chapel	choose <i>or</i> }	(CH = K)	
chaplet	chuse	chamomile	chord
charcoal	churl	chasm	e-cho
chariot	church	chemist	choler
chart	churn	chorus	chimēra

~~For~~ The *chords* on which you played that pretty thing  
Take *h*; but there's no *h* in *cord*, 'a *string*.'

## EXERCISE 49.

(Meaning.)

- 96 To *chaffer*? (to haggle in bargaining.) To *challenge*? (to dare a person to fight one: to call him out.) A *chaldron*? (a coal-measure of thirty-six bushels.) A *chalice*? (a cup; especially that in which the wine is consecrated at the Holy Communion.) To *chamfer*? (to flute a column; cut channels in stone, &c.) A *chancel*<sup>7</sup>? (the eastern part of a Church, where the altar stands.) A *chaplet*? (a garland.) A *chart*? (a map; especially of a sea and its coasts.) To *chasten*? (to correct, to punish for the purpose of amending.) To *chastise*? (to punish for the purpose of amending.) To *chequer*? (to divide into little squares of different colours.) To *cherish*? (to treat tenderly, nurse fondly.) A *chisel*? (an instrument for paring or hollowing wood or stone.) *Chagrin*? (ill-humour,

<sup>7</sup> Pronounce *shāgreen*, *shāndeeler*, *shārárd* (like the *a* in *father*); *shār'-lütān*, *shākain*, *shivalre*, or (and I think better) *tshivalre* (with Webster and Walker, against Sheridan, Perry, and Smart).

<sup>8</sup> *Choir* is pronounced *kwire*; *chorister* is best pronounced *cōr-ister*; but it used to be pronounced *kwīr-ister*.

<sup>9</sup> From the Lat. *cancelli* (a barrier of lattice-work or bars).

vexation.) A *chandelier*? (a branch for candles; a clustered candlestick.) A *charade*? (a sort of riddle; in which the whole word is to be guessed, after something has been told about each syllable, and also about the whole word<sup>10</sup>.) A *charlatan*? (a quack: one who pretends to know, and undertakes to practise an art, of which he has no thorough knowledge.) *Chicane*? (A lawyer's trick.) *Chivalry*? (the system of knighthood in old times; when gallant knights rode about redressing wrongs.) What were the knightly virtues? (religion, loyalty, courtesy, chastity, bravery, self-denial.) A *chasm*? (a cleft or opening.) A *chemist*? (one who understands chemistry; that is, how bodies are changed by heat, by mixing other bodies with them, and so on.) A *chorus*? (a band of singers: also the verse or verses in a song, where the company join in with the singers.)

## EXERCISE 50.

- 97 One-who-challenges (challenger). One-who-drives-a-chariot (a charioteer). Subst. to express the *act* from to *chasten* (chastening). Subst. to express the *act* or *thing* from *chastise* (châtisement). One child: two —? (children.) Subst. from to *choose* (choice). Adj. from *churl* (churlish). Adv. and abstr. subst. from *churlish* (churlish-ly, churlishness). Subst. to express the *thing* from *charlatan* (charlatanry). Subst. to express the *thing* from *chicane* (chicanery). Adj. from *chivalry* (chivalrous). What does *chivalrous* mean? (high-spirited, generous, self-sacrificing, gallant.) To echo-back (to re-echo). *Choler*? (properly *the bile*; used for anger.) *Chimæra*? (the Chimera was a fabulous monster; the word is now used for an idle fancy.) Adj. from *chimera* (chimér-ical). Adj. from *choler* (chóler-ic). Subst. to express the *thing* from *chemist* (chemistry).

<sup>10</sup> Thus: my first is an action of fear; my second is a warlike instrument; my whole is the name of a poet. Answer, Shake-speare. (Example given in Smart's Dictionary.)

- (a) What part of speech is — ?  
*Challenge*, in : I *challenge* you. I accept your *challenge*.  
*Chagrin*, — This *chagrined* me : this filled me with *chagrin*.
- (b) How is *Church* used, in : There is now a grievous want of true *Church* feeling ?

## LESSON XXXII.

## D.

- 98 1. When *d* follows a syllable that has the accent, and comes before *ia*, *ie*, *io*, or *uous*, *eous*, it slides into nearly the sound of *j* or *dz*h ; as *soldier* (*sol-jeer*) ; *grandeur* (*gran-jeur*).
2. When *ed* is added to a word ending in *c*, *ch*, *k*, *x*, or *f*, *p*, *s*, *ss*, *ed* is sounded very nearly like *t* : and but a little while ago *t* was mostly written.
- a) Thus : *stript*, *whipt*, *mixt*, *snatcht*, *checkt*, *snapt*, *past*, not *stripped*, *whipped*, *mixed*, *snatched*, *checked*, *snapped*, *passed*.

arduous	dandle	delicate	dotage
soldier	danger	demúr	dotard
grandeur	dangle	demure	dragon
verdure	dapple	deny	dowry
insidious <sup>1</sup>	dastard	diet	downfall
perfidious	daub	discount	drill
hideous	dazzle	dislike	drizzle
—	debauch	dispute	droll
dabble	decamp	disregard	dungeon
dally	decry	distrust	dwarf
damson	defile	dolphin	

## EXERCISE 51.

(On the Meaning.)

- 99 *Arduous* ? (difficult.) *Grandeur* ? (greatness ; sublimity.) *Verdure* (greenness : spoken of natural

<sup>1</sup> It is better to give *d* its regular sound in this word : *insid-e-us* (not *insid-yús*) : and, probably, in *hideous*.

objects, such as meadows, &c.) *Insidious*? (sly, crafty, treacherous.) *Perfidious*? (breaking his faith.) *Dabble*? (to dip and play in water or mud: to *meddle a little* with any thing, without any sound knowledge of it; as to *dabble* in literature.) To *dally*? (to trifle with.) To *dandle*? (to move a child up and down on one's hands or knees.) To *dangle*? (to hang from, in a loose quivering way.) To *dapple*? (to streak.) *Dastard*? (coward.) To *dazzle*? (to overpower with light.) To *debauch*? (to corrupt by lewdness or intemperance.) A *debauch*? (a lewd drunken party.) To *decamp*? (to make off.) To *decry*? (to cry a thing down; find fault with it.) To *defile*? (to pollute; to move off in file<sup>2</sup>.) A *defile*? (a narrow passage through which soldiers must march in file.) To *demúr*? (to have scruples about a thing.) *Demure*? (grave, quiet: of a sort of sly quietness that seems put on.) *Diet*? (the kind of food one takes, especially as it affects the health.) To *disregard*? (to pay no attention to any thing.) To *discount*? (to pay something *less* than is due because a sum is paid before its time.) To *distrust*? (not to trust: to have doubts of a person's honesty or good intentions.) A *dolphin*? (a large fish, with oblong body and narrow sharp snout.) A *dragon*? (a sort of great snake that does not really exist.) *Dotage*? (weakness of mind; loss of understanding, especially in consequence of old age.) A *dólard*? (one whose mind is weakened by age.) *Dowry*? (the money a wife brings her husband: the money left to a widow.) *Dungeon*? (prison.) To *drill*? (to bore a small hole; to train soldiers.) To *drizzle*? (to fall in small drops.)

## EXERCISE 52.

- 100 Abstr. subst. from *arduous* (arduousness). Adverbs and substantives from *insidious*, *perfidious* (insidiously, insidiousness; perfidiously, perfidiousness,

<sup>2</sup> i. e. in a line one after the other.

*and also* perfidy). One-who-dabbles (a dabbler). One-who-dallies (a dallier). Add *ing* to *dally* (dallying). Adj. from *danger* (dangerous). Adv. and abstr. subst. from *dangerous* (dangerously, dangerousness). Adj. from *dastard* (dastardly). Abstr. subst. from *dastardly* (dastardliness). A delicate thing; or, the-state-of-being-delicate (a delicacy; delicacy). Adv. from *delicate* (delicately). Adv. and abstr. subst. from *demure* (demurely, demureness). One-who-demurs (a demurrer: used also as a law-term for stopping in a cause on a difficult point). Full-of-distrust (distrustful). Add *ing* to *drizzle* (drizzling). One-who-disputes (a disputer). Capable-of-being-disputed (disputable).

(a) What part of speech is — ?

*Disregard*, in: He *disregards* my advice. *Disregard* of all advice is presumption and folly.

*Distrust*, — You show *distrust* of my intentions: why should you *distrust* me?

*Dispute*, — Why do you *dispute*? I see no cause for any *dispute*.

*Defile*, — The soldiers *defile* through the dangerous *defile*.

## LESSON XXXIII.

### EI.

- 101 *When e and i together meet,*  
*The e comes first in* -ceive, -ceipt, -ceit;  
 In ceiling, seignior<sup>3</sup>, neighbour, seize, and feign<sup>4</sup>; }  
 Inveigle<sup>5</sup>, either, neither, leisure, skein;  
 Veil, heinous<sup>6</sup>, feint<sup>7</sup>, and in a sovereign's reign. }  
*So reins 'the kidneys,' and a horse's reins,*  
*Not those which fertilize our British plains:*  
*Plebeian<sup>8</sup> and obeisance<sup>9</sup>, theirs and their,*  
*Neigh, deign<sup>10</sup>, and freight<sup>1</sup>, inveigh<sup>2</sup>, with weight*  
*and heir.*

<sup>3</sup> Seen-yŭr   <sup>4</sup> fāne   <sup>5</sup> invāg'l   <sup>6</sup> hānūs   <sup>7</sup> fānte   <sup>8</sup> plebēan  
<sup>9</sup> obāsance   <sup>10</sup> dāne   <sup>1</sup> frāte   <sup>2</sup> in-vā

*In* forfeit, counterfeit, heigh-ho, *and* sleight<sup>3</sup>,  
Eight, surfeit<sup>4</sup>, heifer<sup>5</sup>, nonpareil<sup>6</sup>, *and* height.

☞ Of course the words *derived* from these, and those from which these are derived, are spelt in the same way: thus, *ceil* (like the first syllable of *ceiling*), *heinously*, *leisurely*, *deceiver*, &c.

(The words in *-ceive*, *-ceipt*, *-ceit*, are)

conceive	deceive	receive	perceive
conceit	deceit	receipt	

### EXERCISE 53.

(*On the Meaning.*)

- 102 *Conceit*? (a vain or proud opinion of oneself.) A *receipt*? (a direction how to make any thing, especially in cookery: also an acknowledgment that a man has *received* a sum of money.) To *feign*? (to pretend.) To *inveigle*<sup>7</sup>? (to ensnare a man; to entice him to what is wrong.) A *feint*? (a sham attack: a pretence to cover what one is *really* going to do.) *Heinous*? (very wicked.) A *skein*? (a loosely-tied knot of thread or silk.) To *deign*? (to condescend.) To *inveigh* against a person? (to launch out into abuse of him.) The *freight* of a ship? (the load of goods on board.) *Plebeian*? (belonging to the lower ranks: low, vulgar.) *Obeisance*? (an act of reverence: such as a low bow.) To *counterfeit* a thing? (to imitate it, with the intention of passing off the imitation for the thing imitated.) *Sleight*? (cunning trick: as in *sleight-of-hand*.) A *surfeit*? (sickness caused by over-eating.) A *nonpareil*? (an apple of unequalled merit: the word means *none-such*<sup>8</sup>, which is also the name of an apple.)

### EXERCISE 54.

- 103 One-who-receives (a receiver). Full-of-deceit (de-

<sup>3</sup> Slīte      <sup>4</sup> sūrfīt      <sup>5</sup> hēf-ēr      <sup>6</sup> nonparéll.

<sup>7</sup> Properly, to *veil* his sight: to *blind* him.

<sup>8</sup> From the French *non* (not), and *pareil* (like, equal).

ceit-ful). Adv. and abstr. subst. from *deceitful* (deceitfully; deceitfulness). Adj. from *leisure* (leisurely). Can you say, he walked *leisurely*? (Yes.) What part of speech is *leisurely* here? (an adverb.) Form adv. and abstr. subst. from *heinous* (heinously, heinousness).

(a) What part of speech — ?

*Forfeit*, in: You will *forfeit* your place. You must pay the *forfeit*.

*Surfeit*, — He is *surfeited* with praise. He has had a *surfeit* of praise.

*Counterfeit*, — I shall *counterfeit* sleep. It is a *counterfeit* sleep. This is not true virtue, but its *counterfeit*.

## LESSON XXXIV.

(On Participles.)

(EXAMPLES OF PARTICIPLES.)

- 104 1. A man, *running* over the bridge, called to me.
2. A *sleeping* beauty.
3. A *laughing* boy.
4. The *falling* snow.
5. The *fallen* snow.
6. A boy, *loved* by all who knew him, died yesterday.
7. An apprentice, cruelly *treated* by his master, could endure it no longer.

### EXERCISE 55.

- 105 In '*falling* snow,' what do I call the snow? (*falling*.) When I call it '*falling* snow,' do I mean that it *has fallen*, or *is falling* now? (that it is falling now.) When I say '*fallen* snow,' do I mean that it *has fallen*, or *is falling* now? (that it has fallen.) What is *falling* snow *doing*? (*falling*.) What has *fallen* snow *done*? (it has fallen: it fell at some time before that we are speaking of.) Do the words *falling* and *fallen* mark different *times*? (yes: *falling* marks *present* time, and *fallen* past time.) I can

speak of *white* snow and *falling* snow : what part of speech is *white*? (an adjective.) In '*falling* snow' and '*fallen* snow,' the words *falling* and *fallen* are not called *adjectives* but *participles*: let us make out the difference between adjectives and participles. In '*white* snow,' is the meaning that it is *white now*, or *was white at some former time*, or is *white at all times*? ('white snow' means snow that is white at any time.) Then has *white* any thing to do with *time*? (no.)

(a) Then is not one difference between a participle and an adjective this; that a participle is a *time-word*, but an adjective is not a *time-word*? (I suppose so.) In '*falling* snow,' '*sleeping* child,' the snow and the child are *doing* something: in '*a hunted* hare,' the hare is *having something done* to it: in '*white* snow,' is the snow spoken of as *doing* any thing, or *having any thing* done to it? (no.)

(b) Then is not another difference between an adjective and a participle this: that a participle marks the *doing* something, or *having something done* to one; whereas an adjective denotes merely some *quality* or *property* of a thing? (yes.)

(A) One participle ends in *ing*: it is called the *present* participle, and marks *doing*.

A *clucking* hen: a hen *clucking* to her chickens.

(B) Another participle ends in *ed*, sometimes in *en* or *t*.

This is called the *past participle*; because the thing *has generally been done*.

(a) Remember that *e* at the end of a word is dropt before *ing* or *ed*.

(b) Remember that if a word ends in a single consonant after a short vowel, the consonant is *doubled* before *ing* or *ed*, if the word is of only one syllable.

(c) If the word is of more than one syllable, the last consonant is always doubled before *ing* or *ed*, if the last syllable has a short vowel, and the accent or



stress of the voice is on that syllable. [See note 5, p. 32.]

- (d) To understand what this accent or stress of the voice is, take *differ* and *defér*.

In *differ* more stress is laid on the *dif*-.

In *defér* more stress is laid on the *-fer*<sup>9</sup>.

- (e) Hence *differing* is written with one *r*.  
*deferring* is written with two *r*'s.

### EXERCISE 56.

#### (On Participles.)

- 106 [Obs.—To find the past participle, try what form you would use with "I have." You would say "I have *loved*:" "I have *written*." *Loved* and *written* are the *past participles* of *to love*, and *to write*.]

Form the present participle of *write* (writing): of *smite* (smiting): of *receive* (receiving): of *counterfeit* (counterfeiting): of *bid* (bidding): of *chide* (chiding): of *confér* (conferring, with *r* doubled): of *refer* (referring): of *suffer* (suffering: *r* not doubled).

Form the past participle of *move* (moved): *hate* (hated): *report* (reported): *express* (expressed): *add* (added): *form* (formed): *change* (changed): *range* (ranged): *suffer* (suffered).

(In the following verbs the past participle will not end in *ed*.)

Form the past participle of *bring* (brought): *think* (thought): *smite* (smitten): *freeze* (frozen): *begin* (begun): *abide* (abode): *throw* (thrown): *bite* (bitten): *strive* (striven): *draw* (drawn).

<sup>9</sup> Let the pupil tell on which syllable the accent or stress is in: *comprehénd*, *malévolent*, *drúgget*, *neighbour*, *disárm*, *disáster*, *númerous*, *revéngeful*, *cáter*, *repróve*, *remárk*, *rámport*. Obs. The little stroke ['] marks the accented syllable.

## LESSON XXXV.

## F.

107	fable	ferret	filth	fore
	fallow	fetch	finance	forge
	fellow	fickle	firkin	fortress
	felon	fiddle	flannel	frantic
	female	fillet	flurry	fritter
	fen	filter	flutter	furrow
	fender			

## EXERCISE 57.

## (Meaning.)

- 108 A *fable*? (an instructive story, in which *animals* and other *things* are supposed to speak.) What other meanings has *fable*? (it means any invented tale that has no truth in it: and it is also a verb; to invent or tell a false tale.) *Fallow* land? (land allowed to *rest* for a time by being left unsown.) What meaning has *fallow* in *fallow* deer? (pale red or pale reddish-yellow.) A *felon*? (one who has committed a very great crime.) What crimes are *felonies*? (murder, rape, house-breaking, wilfully setting houses or property on fire.) What is house-breaking also called? (burglary.) What is 'wilfully setting on fire' also called? (arson.) What is a man now called who wilfully sets stacks on fire? (an incendiary.) A *fen*? (a marsh; flat, boggy land.) *Fickle*? (given to change his mind.) *Fillet*? (a band round the head<sup>1</sup>.) Why is a *fillet* of veal so called? (from its being tied round with a band.) To *filter*? (to strain liquor through something close, for the purpose of clearing it.) *Finance*? (the revenue or income of a country.) What does *finance* in the singular mean? (the doctrine or knowledge of such matters.) A *firkin*? (a vessel containing nine gallons.) To *forge*? (to shape heated metal by hammering it: also to

<sup>1</sup> Also a *band* round a column in architecture.

make a *false* thing, that is to be passed off as the true thing.) A *fortress*? (a strong-hold: a fortified castle.) *Frantic*? (outrageously violent or furious.) A *fritter*? (properly a small piece: used especially of a small portion of batter fried.) A *furrow*? (a small trench made by the plough.)

## EXERCISE 58.

- 109 What is the adj. to *fable*? (fabulous<sup>2</sup>.) How is *fellow* used in *fellow-servant*? (as an adj., but helps to form a compound substantive.) What mark is placed between *fellow* and *servant*? (hyphen.) Adj. from *felon* (felonious). Subst. to express the *act* (felony). Abstr. subst. from *fickle* (fickleness). What is the present participle of *filter*? (filtering): its past participle? (filtered.) Why is the *r* not doubled? (because the *accent* is not on the last syllable.) Abounding-in-filth (filthy). Adv. and abstr. subst. from *filthy* (filthily, filthiness). Present and past participle of *flurry* and *flutter* (flurry-ing, flurri-ed: flutter-ing, flutter-ed.) Why is the *r* not doubled? (because the *accent* is not on the last syllable.) Sight-beforehand (foresight). Thought-beforehand (forethought). To-tell-beforehand (to foretell). Present and past participle of *foretell* (foretelling, foretold). To see-beforehand (to foresee). Present and past participles of *foresee* (foreseeing, foreseen). Act-of-forging (forgery). Does *forgery* also mean the thing-forged? (yes; for I can say, 'this is a *forgery*.') Present and past participle of *fritter*? (frittering, frittered.) Why is the *r* not doubled? (because the *accent* is not on the last syllable.)

<sup>2</sup> Lat. *fabula*: adj. *fabulosus*.

## LESSON XXXVI.

## G.—GH.

- 110 a) G is pronounced *hard* before *a, o, u*, the consonants *l, r*, and at the end of a word.
- b) G is pronounced *soft*, like *j* (or *dsh*), before *e, i, y*. But to this rule there are the following exceptions :
- c) G is pronounced hard before *er* and *est*, the terminations of the comparative and superlative, as *longer* pronounced *lon-ger*.
- d) G is hard when it is *doubled* before these vowels [not, however, in words like *suggest, exaggerate*, which come from the Latin].
- e) G is also hard in the list given below, beginning with *anger*, and in several other words of rarer occurrence at the beginning of a word or syllable.
- f) GH is pronounced like hard *g*.
- g) In the list beginning with *chough*, *gh* is pronounced like *f*.
- h) In the three words beginning with *lough*, *gh* is pronounced like *ck*, and in *hiccough* like *p*.
- [Obs.—*Gaol* is pronounced and often written *jail*.]

## LESSON XXXVII.

## G.

111	craggy	trigger	conger (eel)	gibber
	cragged	pettifogger	eager	giddy
	dagger	shaggy	finger	gift
	dogged	boggy	forget	gig
	ragged	—	forgive	giggle
	rugged	anger	hunger	gild
	scraggy	auger	geese	gimblet
	stagger	beget	get	gird
	swagger	begin	gewgaw	give

gizzard	aghast	clough <sup>4</sup>	rough
linger	ghastly	cough	slough <sup>5</sup>
monger	ghost	draught	tough
target	gherkin	draughts	trough <sup>6</sup>
tiger	—	enough	—
together	chough <sup>3</sup>	laugh	lough <sup>7</sup>
—	—	laughter	hough
			shough

EXERCISE 59. (*Meaning.*)

- 112 *Craggy*? *cragged*? (rocky, rugged.) *Dogged*? (stupidly obstinate.) *Swagger*? (to bluster: to act in a boisterous bullying manner.) *Trigger*? (the *catch*, by pulling which a gun is fired.) *A pettifogger*? (a low attorney, who undertakes dirty business.) *Boggy*? (having many bogs: marshy, swampy.) *An auger*? (a tool to bore holes with.) *A gengaw*? a gay useless ornament: a bauble.) *To gibber*? (to talk inarticulately.) *A gizzard*? (the strong muscular stomach of a bird.) *A target*? (the mark used by those who practise archery.) *Aghast*? (struck with horror.) *Ghastly*? (deadly pale: as pale as a ghost.) *A gherkin*? (a small cucumber for pickling.) *Chough*? (a sea-bird.) *Clough*? (the cleft of a hill: cliff.) *Slough*? (the *cast* skin of a snake: also the part that separates from a foul sore.) What is meant by a snake's *casting* its skin? (getting rid of its old skin.)

## EXERCISE 60.

- 113 Adv. and abstr. subst. from *ragged* (raggedly, raggedness): from *giddy* (giddily, giddiness): from *dogged* (doggedly, doggedness): from *rugged* (ruggedly, ruggedness): from *eager* (eagerly, eagerness): from *rough*, *tough* (roughly, roughness; toughly, toughness). Abstr. subst. from *shaggy* (shagginess: from *ghastly* (ghastliness). Form the comparative

<sup>3</sup> tchüff      <sup>4</sup> clüff      <sup>5</sup> slüff. *Slough*, 'a miry place,' is pronounced *slou*.      <sup>6</sup> trüff.      <sup>7</sup> *lough* (*löck*) a Scotch lake; *hough*, the joint of the hind leg in a beast; *shough*, a shaggy dog.

from *big* (bigger): from *long, strong* (longer, stronger). Is the *g* pronounced hard or soft in these words? (hard.) Form the superlative from *big, long, strong* (biggest, longest, strongest). Form an abstr. subst. from *long* (length; see p. 2, 21, *b*): from *strong* (strength). Form adj., adv., and abstr. subst. from *length* (lengthy, lengthily, lengthiness). What sort of *length* do we call lengthy? (dull, tedious prosing *length*, in speaking). Adj. from *hunger* (hungrily). Abstr. subst. from *to forgive* (forgiveness). Subst. from *to gibber*, to express the *kind of stuff* which those who *gibber* talk (gibberish). One-who-giggles (a giggler). One-who-laughes (a laugh). That-which-girds (girth or girdle). Of what is *girth* mostly used? (of the saddle-band of a horse: also the size of any thing as taken by measuring round it.) A fish-monger is *one-who-sells-fish*: form 'one-who-sells-cheese' in the same way (a cheese-monger). What mark do you put between *cheese* and *monger*? (a hyphen.) Can you form the name of any other *dealer* in the same way? (an iron-monger.)

a) Form the present and past participles of

To *forget* (forgetting, forgotten) (why is the *t*  
— *forgive* (forgiving, forgiven) doubled?)  
— *stagger* (staggering, staggered) (why is the  
r not doubled?)

b) Form the present participles of *to swagger, to linger, to hunger, to laugh* (swaggering, lingering, hungering, laughing).

[How are you to find out the *past* tense of a verb?  
(by thinking what I should say if I were talking  
of what I *did* yesterday.)]

c) Form the *perfect* or *past* tense of *to swagger* (swaggered): *to stagger* (staggered): *to laugh* (laughed): *to forget* (forgot): *to forgive* (forgave).

## LESSON XXXVIII.

## H.

- 114 *In* humour, humorous, *and* humoursome,  
*In* herb *and* herbage, humble, honour, hour,  
*In* hostler, *in an* honorable man,  
*And* hospital, the *h* should have no power :  
*So too the letter h should silent be*  
*In* heir *and* heiress, honour, honesty.  
*But ears polite h will not much disturb*  
*In* humble *or in* hospital *and* herb.

"In some pronouncing dictionaries *herb* and *hospital* are included among the words whose initial *h* is silent: but the *h* may be aspirated in these and their derivatives *without the least offence* to polite ears; and even in *humble* and *humour* the sounding of the *h* is a fault, *if a fault*, far less grating than it would be in *heir*, *honest*, *honour*, *hostler*."—*Smart*. [I quite agree with this remark, except as to *humour*, in which, I think, the *h* should never be sounded.]

H is also unpronounced

- (1) after *r*.
- (2) at the end of a word, after a vowel.
- (3) and in some other words.

115	rheumátic	sirrah	( <i>h</i> should be heard in)
	rheumatism	——	host
	rhubarb	shepherd	hospitable
	——	ipecacuanha	hospitality
	hallelujah	——	heritable
	Messiah		heritage <sup>6</sup>

## LESSON XXXIX.

(Words with *ai* pronounced like *a* in *fate*.)

[See 77, p. 41.]

116	aid	ailment	bailiff	blain
	aid-de-camp <sup>7</sup>	airing	baize	braid

<sup>6</sup> See also remarks on *ch*, *gh*, under *c*, *g*.

<sup>7</sup> aid-dǎ-kǒng.

brain	frail	maiden	sail
chaise	gaily	maim	saint
claim	gain <sup>a</sup>	maintain <sup>a</sup>	taint
daily	gainsay	nail	tailor
dainty	gairish	paint	trail
dairy	grain	plaint	train
daisy	hail	praise	trait <sup>b</sup>
fail	hailstone	rail	traitor
fairy	jail <i>or</i> }	rain-deer <i>or</i> }	twain
faith	gaol }	rein-deer }	wail
flail	lair	raisin	wain

## EXERCISE 61.

*Meaning.*

- 117 An *aid-de-camp*? (an officer who attends the commander-in-chief of an army, to carry his orders to other officers.) An *airing*? (a short ride in a carriage, for no object but that of being out in the air.) *Bailiff*? (an officer who arrests people: the under-steward of a manor or estate.) *Baize*? (a coarse woollen stuff.) A *blain*? (a boil or pustule.) To *braid*? (to weave together.) *Braid*? (a sort of woven cord of cotton, &c.) *Brain*? (the soft white matter in the skull, in which all the nerves terminate: supposed to be the seat of understanding, and of all our sensations, &c.) To *brain* a man? (to dash his brains out.) A *fairy*? (a fabulous enchantress of very diminutive size.) *Frail*? (easily broken: and of a person apt to sin: weak.) To *gainsay*? (to say *'gainst* a man: to contradict.) *Gairish*? (gaudy, glaring.) *Lair*? (the couch of a boar or wild beast.) To *maim*? (to cripple a person by destroying a limb: to deprive any thing of an essential part.) *Plaint*? (lamentation.) To *rail* at any body? (to use insolent abusive language against him.) *Rein-deer*? (a deer with large horns, used in Lapland, and other northern countries, to draw sledges through the snow, &c.) To *taint*? (to infect,

<sup>a</sup> mền-tăn (Walker, Webster).<sup>b</sup> trã.



corrupt.) *Trail?* (tract followed by a hunter.) A *trait?* (a stroke: especially a stroke in a man's character.) A *waif?* (property found and claimed by nobody.) To *wail?* (to lament with loud cries or sobs.) A *vain?* (a waggon.)

EXERCISE 62<sup>1</sup>.

- 118 Without-aid (aidless). Sick-in-the-brain (brain-sick). What does *brain-sick* mean? (disordered in mind.) Without-brains (brain-less). One-who-claims (a claim-er or claim-ant). Adv. and abstr. subst. from *dainty* (daintily, daintiness). Without-faith (faithless). Full-of-faith (faithful). Adverbs and abstr. substantives from *faithful*, *faithless* (faithfully, faithfulness; faithlessly, faithlessness). Not-faithful (unfaithful). Abstr. subst. from un-faithful (unfaithfulness). One-who-gainsays (a gainsayer). A subst. from *gainsay* to express the *act* or *thing* (gainsaying). One who keeps a jail (jailer or gaoler). Subst. from to *maintain* to express the *act* or *thing* (mainten-ance). One-who-paints (paint-er). Subst. to express the *act* or *thing* (paint-ing). Saint-like (saintly). Abstr. subst. from *saintly* (saintliness). Worthy-of-praise (praise-worthy). Adj. from *traitor* (traitor-ous). Abstr. subst. from *frail* (frail-ness or frailty).

- (a) Form present participle of *gainsay* (gainsaying).

\_\_\_\_\_ *train* (training).  
 \_\_\_\_\_ *wail* (wailing).  
 \_\_\_\_\_ *rail* (railing).  
 \_\_\_\_\_ *fail* (failing).

- (b) Form the past participle of *train* (trained).

\_\_\_\_\_ *gain* (gained).  
 \_\_\_\_\_ *claim* (claimed).

<sup>1</sup> Many *more* words may be formed than are here given.

## LESSON XL.

## EO.

119 *Eo* is *not* a diphthong, but a combination which represents different simple sounds.

people <sup>1</sup>	súrgeon <sup>4</sup>	scutcheon <sup>6</sup>	geōgraphy <sup>6</sup>
—	sturgeon	escutcheon	geōmetry
	dudgeon	widgeon	theōry
leopard <sup>2</sup>	gudgeon	pigeon	—
jeopardy	curmudgeon	—	George <sup>7</sup>
—	dungeon		—
	luncheon		
yeoman <sup>3</sup>	puncheon		
yeomanry	truncheon		galleon <sup>8</sup>
—	habergeon		
	—		

## EXERCISE 63.

120 A *leopard*? (a spotted wild-beast.) *Jeopardy*? (danger, peril.) *Yeoman*? (an independent farmer.) The *yeomanry*? (the body of independent farmers: also a troop of horse, raised principally out of that class, and only called out occasionally.) A *sturgeon*? (a kind of sea-fish.) *Dudgeon*? (a sullen feeling of dissatisfaction.) In what phrase is *dudgeon* principally used? (in 'to take a thing in *dudgeon*.)' A *gudgeon*? (a small river-fish.) What kind of *persons* are called *gudgeons*? (silly people, who are easily caught.) A *curmudgeon*? (a miserly, churlish fel-

<sup>1</sup> Like long *ā*; *peep*'l.

<sup>2</sup> Like short *ē*; *leppard*, *jeopardy*.

<sup>3</sup> Like long *ō*; *yō-man*.

<sup>4</sup> *Eo* in an unaccented final syllable is pronounced nearly like short *ū*.

<sup>5</sup> In these the *eo* is pronounced nearly like *i*, according to Walker. Mr. Smart makes no difference between them and the last class; in all of which he gives *ē* for the sound of *eo*.

<sup>6</sup> In these words the *eo* are in different syllables: *gē-ōgraphy*, *thē-ōry*.

<sup>7</sup> Like short *ē*; *jōrge*.

<sup>8</sup> Walker says *galloon*; but better *gāl-yān*.

low.) A *dungeon*? (a prison.) A *puncheon*? (a cask containing 120 gallons.) A *truncheon*? (a short staff; used chiefly for a 'staff of command.') *Habergeon*? (armour for the neck and breast.) *Escutcheon*? (the shield on which a person's 'coat of arms' is painted or engraved.) What is the meaning of *pigeoning* a man? (to *fleece* a man; to *plunder* him at a gaming-table by *unfair gambling*.) What are *pigeon-holes*? (the holes of a dove-cot; small arched divisions in a desk or bureau.) *Geography* (the science that explains the situation of places on the earth's surface, and so on.) *Geometry* (the science that explains the properties of lines, angles, circles, and other figures.) *Theory*? (*speculation*, not *practice*: *plan* or *system*: rules that must be a little altered in practice, because they are formed on a *supposition* that is not quite found to agree with experience.) *Galleon*? (a kind of merchant-vessel, used by the Spaniards and other nations.)

- a) What are the adjectives of *geometry*, *geography*? (geometrical, geographical.)
- b) What is the name of the person who is skilled in geometry or geography respectively? (geometer, geographer.)
- c) What is the adj. from *theory*? (theoretical.) To what is *theoretical* opposed? (to *practical*.)
- d) What verb means to *form-theories*? (to theorize.)
- e) Form the present participle of *theorize* (theorizing).
- f) Having-a-projecting-breast-like-a-pigeon (pigeon-breasted.)

## LESSON XLI.

(EA.)

	( <i>e long</i> )	( <i>a in fate</i> )	earnest	stealth
121	beacon	bear	earth	stealthy
	beam	bearer	earthen	sweat
	bean	forbear	earthly	sweaty
	beard	forswear	earthy	thread
	cheap	great	feather	threat
	clean	swear	head	threaten
	cleave	to tear	health	treachery
	cream	to wear	hearse	tread
	deal	—	heaven	treadle
	dream	( <i>a in bar</i> )	heavy	treasure
	ear	heart	instead	uncleanly
	east	hearken	jealous	wealth
	fear	—	lead ( <i>the metal</i> )	wealthy
	feast	( <i>e in met</i> )	leaden	weapon
	gleam	abreast	learn	weather
	heap	ahead	learning	yearn
	hear	already	leather	zealous
	to lead	bedstead	leaven	zealously
	lean	bread	meadow	zealot
	leap	breadth	measure	—
	mean	breakfast	pearl	( <i>e short</i> )
	to read	breath	peasant	dealt
	sheath	breast	pheasant	dreamt
	spear	cleanly	pleasant	leant
	stream	cleanse	pleasantry	leapt
	a tear	dead	pleasure	meant
	treacle	deadly	readily	he read
	treason	deaf	readiness	
	year	deafen	ready	
	wheat	dearth	realm	
		death	rehearsal	
		dread	rehearse	
		endeavour	research	
		earl	seamstress <sup>1</sup>	
		earldom	stead	
		early	steadfast	
		earn	steady	

<sup>1</sup> Or, more commonly, sempstress.

## EXERCISE 64.

*On the meaning.*

- 122 A *beacon*? (something raised on an eminence, to be lighted on the approach of an army: also a light to warn navigators from a dangerous coast.) What two very different meanings has the verb to *cleave*? (to cling to: to split any thing asunder by a stroke.) What meanings has the substantive *deal*? (a portion *dealt* out: pine-timber: the act of dealing cards, or the cards dealt at one time.) To *forbear*? (to abstain voluntarily.) To *forswear* oneself? (to take a false oath.) What other word is there that has the same meaning? (to *perjure*<sup>2</sup> oneself.) What is an *Earl*? (an English nobleman.) What is an *Earl's* wife called? (a Countess.) Give the order of English noblemen, beginning with the highest. (*Duke, Marquis, Earl, Viscount*<sup>3</sup>, *Baron*.) Is a *Prince* higher in rank than a *Duke*? (Yes; but the title *Prince* is confined to members of the royal family.) Are the *Princes* of the royal family also *Dukes*? (Yes.) Give the titles of the wives of a *Duke* and the other orders of nobility. (Duchess, Marchioness, Countess, Viscountess, Baroness.) Give the difference between *earthen*, *earthy*, *earthly*. [(1.) *Earthen* is 'made of earth,' as in 'earthen-ware:' (2.) *Earthy* is 'consisting of earth,' 'resembling earth:' as in 'earthy particles,' 'an earthy taste.' (3.) 'Earthly' is opposed to *heavenly*: 'relating to this earth.'] *Jealous*? (angry at having a rival: suspicious of having a rival.) *Treachery*? (the act of betraying.) A *treadle*? (the part of a loom on which the weaver treads.) To *yearn*? (to feel a longing desire.) *Treason*? (a great crime against a king or state.) What is the polite word for *sweat*? (perspiration.)

<sup>2</sup> From the Lat. *per* and *jurare*, to swear.

<sup>3</sup> Pronounced VI-count.

- a) Give the past tense and past participle of
- |                               |                                   |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Cleave ( <i>to cling to</i> ) | (cleaved, cleaved)                |
| —— ( <i>to split</i> )        | (cleft or clove, cleft or cloven) |
| fear                          | (feared, feared)                  |
| feast                         | (feasted, feasted)                |
| gleam                         | (gleamed, gleamed)                |
| heap                          | (heaped, heaped)                  |
| forbear                       | (forbore, forbore)                |
| forswear                      | (forsook, forsook)                |
| cleans                        | (cleansed, cleansed)              |
| deafen                        | (deafened, deafened)              |
| learn                         | (learnt, learnt)                  |
| tear                          | (tore, torn)                      |
- b) Give the present participles of *leaven*, *forbear*, *endeavour*, *deafen* (leavening, forbearing, endeavouring, deafening).
- c) Abstr. substantives from *uncleanly*, *jealous* (uncleanliness, jealousy; sometimes jealousy). Adv. from *jealous* (jealously). Not-earthly (un-earthly). Adj. from *heaven* (heaven-ly). Abstr. subst. from *heavenly* (heavenliness).

## LESSON XLII.

### EAU, EE, EOU, EW, EY.

123 beau <sup>1</sup>	beauty <sup>2</sup>	cheesecake	cutaneous
bureau	——	——	vitreous
flambeau			curious
portmanteau	breeches <sup>3</sup>	Beelzebub <sup>4</sup>	——
——	breech	——	gorgeous <sup>6</sup>
			outrageous

<sup>1</sup> This is properly a *French* ending: it is pronounced like long *o*.

<sup>2</sup> In this word *eau* is pronounced *ew*, or *u* in *tube*.

<sup>3</sup> The regular sound of *ee* is long *e*. *Breeches* is pronounced *britches*. The two next words are, according to Walker, *vulgarly* pronounced *chizcake*, *britch*. It would now be affected, I think, to say *cheese-cake* with long *e*.

<sup>4</sup> "*Beelzebub* in prose has generally the short sound of *e* in *bell*."—Walker.

<sup>5</sup> cu-tā-nē-ūs.

<sup>6</sup> gorj'us, outraj'us.

hideous <sup>7</sup>	feud <sup>8</sup>	Shrewsbury	survey
piteous	deuce	sew	_____
righteous	Europe	_____	key
plenteous	_____	ewe <sup>12</sup>	ley
bounteous	dew <sup>9</sup>	_____	_____
courteous	few	convey	attorney
beauteous	_____	obey	barley
duteous	brew <sup>10</sup>	prey	chimney
_____	crew	purvey	galley
	Jew		money
	jewel		valley
	strew		
	_____		
	shew <sup>11</sup> }		
	or show }		

 *Grey* is also spelt *gray*.

#### EXERCISE 65.

124 A *beau*? (a smart man.) What is the answering word for a *female*? (a *belle*.) A *bureau*? (a chest of drawers.) A *flambeau*? (a lighted torch.) A *cutaneous* <sup>1</sup> disorder? (a disorder on the skin.) *Vitreous* <sup>1</sup>? (glassy.) A *feud*? (a quarrel: often an hereditary quarrel.) To *purvey*? (to provide stores.) What is an *attorney* also called? (a solicitor.) What does *courteous* mean? (polite: well-behaved towards a person.) What is the substantive called? (courtesy.) Is courtesy a Christian duty? (yes.) Prove it. (St. Peter says, "*Love as brethren, be pitiful, be courteous*.")

a) Full-of-beauty (beauti-ful: *also* *beauteous*.) Abstr.

<sup>7</sup> Walker says these words are pronounced *hijeous*, *pitcheous*: but they should, by all means, be pronounced regularly: but *righteous*, *rite-yūs*, *courteous*, *court-yus*.

<sup>8</sup> Like *ew*.

<sup>9</sup> Take care not to pronounce these words like *doo*, *noo*, but like the *u* in *tube*.

<sup>10</sup> Like *oo* in *too*.

<sup>11</sup> Like long *o*. The proper name *Shrewsbury* is always pronounced *Shrowsbury*. *Sew* with a needle rhymes to *no*.

<sup>12</sup> Like *yō* in common language; mostly read like *ū* (or *you*).

<sup>1</sup> These are from the Lat. *cutis* (skin); *vitrum* (glass).

substantives and adverbs from *gorgeous*, *hideous*, *piteous*, *righteous*, *plenteous*.—Adj. from *Europe* (Européan). Rather grey (greyish).

- b) Form the plural of *attorney*, *valley*, *chimney* (attorneys, valleys, chimneys). Why do they not end in *ies*? (because the *y* has a vowel, not a consonant, next before it. See Introd. 52.)
- c) What part of speech is *prey*, in: He seizes his *prey*? What does the lion *prey* upon?
- d) Form the present and past participle of *obey* (obeying, obeyed): of *show* (showing, shown): of *strew* (strewing, strewn).

## LESSON XLIII.

## IE.

125 belief <sup>2</sup>	grieve	}	tierce	vie
believe	grievance		yield	fiery
brief	grievous		—	—
chief	liege		friend <sup>3</sup>	sieve <sup>3</sup>
fief	niece		—	mischief
field	pierce		die <sup>4</sup>	mischievous
fiend	priest		lie	handkerchief
fierce	reprieve		pie	—
grief	siege		piebald	view <sup>6</sup>
			tie	

## EXERCISE 66.

- 126 *Brief?* (short.) A lawyer's *brief?* (the *short* heads of the case written out for him.) A *fiend?* (a very wicked enemy.) A *fief?* (a possession held on some *feudal* tenure.) What does a *feudal* tenure mean? (The *feudal* times were times when princes gave possessions to their retainers, on condition of the retainer's fighting for his lord whenever he required his service.) What was the lord called? (the

<sup>2</sup> The regular sound of *ie* is long *e* or *ee*.

<sup>3</sup> In *friend* the *ie* are pronounced like short *e*.

<sup>4</sup> In monosyllables *ie* are pronounced like long *i*: so also in *piebald*.

<sup>5</sup> In these words *ie* are pronounced nearly like short *i*.

<sup>6</sup> *vū* or *ven*, like *u* in *tube*.



liege-lord.) What was the retainer called? (a vassal.) What did the vassal owe to his liege-lord? (his support.) What relation to the *niece* is the person whose *niece* she is? (uncle or aunt.) What relation is a niece's brother to her uncle or aunt? (nephew.) What is a *tierce*? (the third part of a pipe.)

- a) Adv. and abstr. subst. from *brief* (briefly, briefness): from *fierce* (fiercely, fierceness). More-fierce (fiercer). Of what 'degree of comparison' is *fiercer*? (of the comparative.) Most-fierce (fiercest). Of what 'degree of comparison' is *fiercest*? (of the superlative.) To-pass-through-a-sieve (to sift). Adv. from *mischievous* (mischievously).
- b) Present participle from *vie*, *tie*, *die* (vying, tying, dying): Past participle from *vie*, *tie*, *die* (vied, tied, died): from *lie* (lain). Past tense from *lie* (lay). What must you take care *not* to say? (laid.) From what does *laid* come? (from *lay*, to *put down*.)
- c) *Obs.*—The *f* of a word often becomes *v* in words derived from it: thus, *believe*, from *believ*: *mischievous*, from *mischiev*: *calve*, *halve*, from *calv*, *half*. In *sift*, from *sieve*, the *v* has become *f*.

## LESSON XLIV.

### IO, IOU, OA,

127 violet	scorpion <sup>3</sup>	various	precious <sup>6</sup>
cushion <sup>1</sup>	_____	glorious	noxious
_____	faction <sup>4</sup>	ingenious	_____
million <sup>2</sup>	question	copious	(ō long)
minion <sup>2</sup>	digestion	_____	approach
_____	_____	anxious <sup>6</sup>	boat
champion <sup>3</sup>	bilious <sup>6</sup>	faction	coach
			coal

<sup>1</sup> *cushin*.

<sup>2</sup> *mīl-yŭn*: *mīn-yŭn*.

<sup>3</sup> The *i* is here pronounced.

<sup>4</sup> *tion*, *sion*, are pronounced *shun*: but if *tion* has *x* or *s* before it, the *i* is slightly heard.

<sup>5</sup> *iou* are generally two syllables: but (<sup>6</sup>) after *t*, *d*, *x*, or soft *c* or *g*, as one syllable: *ank-shŭs* or *angk-sh'us*: *fac-sh'us*.

coat	loan	roach	toad
float	loath <sup>7</sup>	road	toast
goat	moan	roam	uproar
gloat	moat	roan	woad
groan	oaf	roar	—
hoard	oak	roast	broad <sup>8</sup>
hoary	oath	soak	abroad
hoarse	oatmeal	soap	groat
load	poach	soar	—
loam	reproach	throat	cupboard <sup>9</sup>

## EXERCISE 67.

- 128 A *million*? (a hundred thousand.) A *minion*? (the mean creature or favorite of a great man.) A *champion*? (the warrior who fights for a party or cause.) A *faction*? (a party in a state combining for bad ends.) *Digestion*? (the *power* or *act* of *digesting* food.) Where is food *digested*? (in the stomach.) What does the stomach do to it? (it divides it, and gets the proper juices out of it, which it carries to the different parts of the body for their support.) If the *stomach* does not do its work properly, what do we suffer from? (indigestion.) When is a man said to have a *bad digestion*? (when his stomach does not do its work well.) What hurts the stomach's power of *digestion*? (giving it too much work by eating *too much*: or giving it what it cannot digest thoroughly; that is, *unwholesome* food.) Are raw apples very wholesome food for children? Are they much *more* wholesome, when they are very unripe?—What is *bile*? (a thick, yellow, bitter liquor, that is separated from the liver.) What is *bile* sometimes used for? (cross, angry humour: wrath.) A *bilious* person? (one who is suffering from too much *bile*.) *Copious*<sup>1</sup>? (plentiful.) *Noxious*? (hurtful.) To *gloat*? (to look fondly and over-lovingly at a person.) *Loam*? (fat, rich soil.) *Loath*? (unwilling.) A *loan*? (a thing lent: the lending.) A

<sup>7</sup> Rhymes to *oath*.<sup>8</sup> Sound of *a* in *call*.<sup>9</sup> *cûb'-bârd*.<sup>1</sup> From the Lat. *copia*, plenty.

*moat*? (a canal of water round a house for a defence.) *Oaf*? (a foolish child<sup>2</sup>, dolt.) To *poach*? (to steal game.) What is to *poach* an egg? (to boil it without the shell.) A *roach*? (a small fish.) To *roam*? (to ramble about over a wide space.) A *roan* horse? (bay, sorrel, or black, with grey or white spots interspersed.) To *soar*? (to fly aloft: to fly high without the wings being seen to move.) *Woad*? (a plant used for dyeing cloth.)

## EXERCISE 68.

- 129 Able-to-be-digested (digestible). Abstr. subst. from *digestible* (digestibility). Not-digestible (indigestible). Abstr. substantives from *ingenious*, *copious*, *precious*, *noxious*, *hoary*, *hoarse* (ingeniousness, &c.) Adv. from *hoarse*, *copious*, &c. (hoarsely, copiously, &c.) One-who-poaches (a poacher). One-who-hoards (hoarder). A porter-who-carries-coal (a coal-porter). What mark do you put between *coal* and *porter*? (a hyphen.) A heaver-of-coal (a coal-heaver). Full-of-reproaches (reproachful). Adj. from *uproar* (uproarious). Abstr. subst. from *broad* (breadth).

- a) What part of speech is — ?

*Hoard*, in: Do not *hoard*. What a *hoard*!

*Float*, — I *float* with the stream. Your *float* went under.

*Groan*, — I heard a *groan*. Did you *groan*?

*Reproach*, — I *reproach* you. It is an unjust *reproach*.

- b) Form *present participle* of *roar*, *float*, *poach* (roaring, floating, poaching).  
c) Form the *past participle* of *reproach*, *float* (reproached, floated).

<sup>2</sup> Such a child as superstitious people used to believe that the fairies left instead of the true child.

## LESSON XLV.

OI,—O = U.

130	boil	creator	constable	mother
	boisterous	kingdom	convince	plover
	broider	method	corrupt	pother
	broil	turbot	discómfít	shovel
	coin	troublesome	discómfört	sloven
	porpoise	(b) bombást	dozen	smother
	tortoise	bombárd	govern	stomach
	—	colléct	honey	wonder
	(a) affront <sup>1</sup>	combat	Monday	worry
	among	company	mongrel	worship
	amongst	compare	money	—
	cassock	compass	monkey	bosom <sup>2</sup>
	carol			

## EXERCISE 69.

- 131 To *broider*? (to ornament with figures in needle-work.) A *porpoise*? (an unwieldy fish common on our coasts: the sea-hog.) A *tortoise*? (an animal covered with a hard shell: there are both land and sea tortoises.) For what is *tortoise-shell* used? (for making ornamental combs, work-boxes, &c.) When the *tortoise* raced the *hare* in the fable, which won the race? why? — *Method*? (way of doing any thing: generally used for a *good* way, well planned and steadily pursued.) A *cassock*? (a close long garment of black silk, or other stuff, worn by some clergymen under their surplices or gowns<sup>2</sup>.) A *creator*? (one who creates; that is, makes out of nothing.) A *turbot*? (a large flat fish, considered very good eating.) *Bombast*? (big swelling words: senseless stuff.) To *bombard*? (to attack a town with *bombs*, pronounced *búmms*; that is, hollow iron balls filled

<sup>1</sup> Here the *o* is pronounced like *u*. Compare 59, p. 29.

<sup>2</sup> Here both *o*'s are pronounced like *u*: the first being nearly like *oo* in *good*.

<sup>3</sup> It originally meant an outward *dress* or *cloak*.

with gunpowder, and thrown out of a mortar.) A *compass*? (a circle.) What is the *mariner's compass*? (a box containing the *magnetic needle*.) What is a *magnetic needle*? (a needle rubbed with a *magnet* or *loadstone*.) What does this *magnetic needle* do? (it always points nearly to the North.) What do you mean by the *points* of the *compass*? (the points of the heavens, north, east, &c., which are marked on the card to which the magnetic needle is attached.) What are North, East, West, South, called? (the *cardinal* points; that is, the principal points.) What would the point exactly between North and East be called? (North-East.) If you look at the sun at noon, where will the North, East, West, South, points be? (the South before me: the North behind me: the East on my left hand: the West on my right hand.) Where are these points supposed to be situated on a map? (the North at the top: the South at the bottom: the East on the right hand: the West on the left.) Of what use is the *mariner's compass*? (sailors steer by it: it enables them always to find out the North, East, South, West, &c., and the intermediate points: so that they can always steer in the direction they wish to go.) By what did sailors direct their course before the *mariner's compass* was invented? (by the polar star and other stars.) Why is the *mariner's compass* better for steering by than the stars? (because it can be used in the *day-time*, and in *dark nights*, when stars are not visible.) What is a *pair of compasses*? (an instrument for making a circle with.) What is the meaning of *compassing an object*? (accomplishing it: getting round it, as it were, and catching it.) To *discomfit*? (to rout, to conquer.) *Drought*? (dryness: dry weather.) To have *recourse* to any thing? (to go to it and use it, as the best or only thing to help one.) A *resource*? (something we may go to for help or support.)

## LESSON XLVI.

## OE, OU.

132 ( <i>o long</i> )	carouse	lounge	rebound
doe	chouse	louse	round
foe	cloud	lout	rouse
hoe	clout	mound	scoundrel
toe	compound	mountain	scour
—	couch	mountebank	scout
( <i>oo</i> )	crouch	mouse	shout
canoe	devour	mouth	shroud
shoe	devout	noun	slouch
—	encounter	ounce	spouse
( <i>ow in down</i> )	espouse	our	spout
abound	expound	out	sprout
about	flout	outer	stout
account	flounder	outermost	surround
aground	foul	paramount	south
aloud	foundling	pouch	thou
amount	fountain	pounce	thousand
around	gout	pound	trounce
arouse	ground	pout	trout
astound	hound	profound	vouch
avouch	hour	pronoun	vouchsafe
bounce	house	pronounce	without
bound	impound	propound	
bounty	loud	proud	

## EXERCISE 70.

- 133 A *canoe*? (a light and rude Indian boat.) To *astound*? (to astonish greatly.) To *avouch*? (to affirm; to maintain.) To *carouse*? (to drink deep.) A *couch*? (something to lie upon; light bed, sofa.) To *couch*? (to repose by lying down: to lie down in secret or in ambush.) To *crouch* to any body? (to stoop meanly to him.) To *encounter*? (to meet boldly and contend with.) To *espouse*? (to marry: also to

go through a solemn form by which one *engages* to marry a person: to betroth oneself to a person.) What is to *espouse* a cause? (to *wed* oneself to it: to take it up and promise or resolve not to desert it.) To *expound*? (to *explain* a book.) To *flout*? (to jeer.) To *flounder*? (to struggle in mud.) A *foundling*? (a child deserted by its parents and *found* by a stranger.) The *gout*? (a disease of the legs, &c., accompanied with swelling and inflammation.) To *impound*? (to put in a pound: as 'to impound stray sheep.') To *lounge*? (to saunter about carelessly and idly.) *Paramount*? (most eminent or important.) *Profound*? (deep: deeply-learned.) A *scout*? (a person sent out to spy.) To *shroud*? (to shelter: to wrap up. To *trounce*? (to trim a person.) To *vouch*? (to witness: to warrant.) To *vouchsafe*? (to condescend.) To *account* for any thing? (to give a probable reason for it.)

(a) What part of speech is — ?

*Compound*, in : *Compound'* me this medicine. What a disagreeable *compound*!

☞ Observe the difference of accent; the verb having it on the last syllable; the substantive on the first. So in *cônt*rast, *contrast'*; *côn*flict, *con*flict'; and many other dissyllables, which are both verbs and substantives.

b) Having-the-gout (gouty). Abstr. subst. from *stout* (stoutness). Adv. from *stout* (stoutly). Abstr. subst. from *gouty* (goutiness). One-whose-business-is-to-keep-accounts (an accountant). Liable-to-be-called-to-account (accountable). Abstr. subst. and adv. from *loud* (loudness, loudly). Adv. from *devout* (devoutly). Abstr. subst. from *devout* (devoutness; but more commonly, devotion).

## LESSON XLVII.

## UA, UE, UI.

134 guard	catalogue <sup>6</sup>	quill	juice
guardian	demagogue <sup>7</sup>	quiet	pursuit
victual <sup>1</sup>	fatigue	_____	_____
victualler <sup>2</sup>	grotesque <sup>8</sup>	cuirass <sup>10</sup>	bruise
issue <sup>3</sup>	harangue <sup>9</sup>	cuirassier	cruise
ensue <sup>4</sup>	intrigue <sup>10</sup>	guile	fruit
chequer	league <sup>11</sup>	beguile	recruit
conquer	oblique <sup>12</sup>	guide	_____
coquet <sup>5</sup>	opaque <sup>13</sup>	guinea	build
a coquette	pique <sup>14</sup>	guitár <sup>16</sup>	biscuit
masquerade	plague	_____	circuit
_____	tongue	nuisance	conduit
value	vague	sluice	_____
ague	_____	suit	antiquity
_____	distinguish	suitable	iniquity.
	harlequin	suitor	_____

## EXERCISE 71.

- 135 The *issue* of a business? (the end, or up-shot of it.) To have *issue*? (to have a child, or children.) To *ensue*? (to follow something as its consequence: to follow.) A *coquette*? (an airy girl, who tries to catch lovers without any real affection.) A *catalogue*? (a list of books, furniture, &c.) A *demagogue*? (a *mob-leader*, who tries to get a party by persuading the people they are ill-governed.) *Grotesque*? (distorted: unnatural.) An *harangue*? (a speech, or oration.) An *intrigue*? (a plot carried on by several persons: a love-plot: opposed to an honorable connexion.) A *league*? (a treaty bind-

<sup>1</sup> *vitt'l.*<sup>2</sup> *vitt'lür.*<sup>3</sup> *ish-shu.*<sup>4</sup> *en-sú* (the *u* as in *tube*.)<sup>5</sup> *co-két.*<sup>6</sup> *cátalóg.*<sup>7</sup> *démagog.*<sup>8</sup> *grō-těsk'.*<sup>9</sup> *ha-räng'.*<sup>10</sup> *in-treeg.*<sup>11</sup> *leeg'.*<sup>12</sup> *ob-líke* (*obleek'* according to Jones, Jameson, and Smart).<sup>13</sup> *o-páke'.*<sup>14</sup> *peek.*<sup>15</sup> *kwě-rěss: kwe-ras-seer'.*<sup>16</sup> *git-tar'.*



ing people together: also the persons so bound.) *Opaque*? (not transparent: what one cannot see through.) *Oblique*? (not directly forward.) *Pique*? (petty offence taken: ill-will, &c.) To *quip* a person? (touch him with envy: fret, vex him, &c.) *Vague*? (loose, inaccurate: spoken of notions.) A *guitar*? (a stringed musical instrument.) A *cruise*? (a ship's voyage, to try what it can capture.) A *circuit*? (properly, 'a going round': a judge's *circuit* is the set of towns he visits for the purpose of administering justice.) A *cuirass*? (a breast-plate.) A *cuirassier*? (a soldier armed with a breast-plate.) *Antiquity*? (ancientness—ancient times.) *Iniquity*? (wickedness.)

a) What part of speech is — ?

*Intrigue*, in: He *intrigued* with the Pretender. The *intrigue* was discovered.

*Plague*, — Don't *plague* me, you abominable *plague*.

Prove *fatigue* to be both subst. and verb.

b) A person who intrigues, from *to intrigue* (an intriguer). Adv. and abstr. subst. from *suitable* (suitably: suitableness). Without-guile (guileless). Present participle of *fatigue* (fatiguing). Past participle (fatigued). Having-much-juice (juicy). Past participle of *bruise* (bruised). Full-of-fruit (fruitful). Adv. and abstr. subst. from *fruitful* (fruitfully, fruitfulness). One-who-builds (a builder). One-who-harangues (an haranguer).

### LESSON XLVIII.

(Words in which a letter is not pronounced.)

136	climb	benumb	subtle	victuals
	comb	debt	subtlety	Czar
	dumb	doubt	_____	_____
	limb	redoubt	indictment	schedule <sup>1</sup>
	numb	redoubted	muscle	schism <sup>2</sup>
				yacht <sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> shédúle.

<sup>2</sup> sizm.

<sup>3</sup> yot.

riband } or ribbon }	thigh	balk	puise
—	neighbours	chalk	viscount
—	inveigh	talk	—
handsome	nigh	stalk	chasten <sup>13</sup>
handsel	though	walk	christen
handkerchief	although	—	fasten
weasand <sup>4</sup>	through	hymn	hasten <sup>14</sup>
—	throughout	solemn	glisten
halfpenny	—	column	listen
halfpence	bagnio <sup>10</sup>	autumn	apostle
—	seignior <sup>11</sup>	condemn	bristle
phlegm <sup>5</sup>	poignant	contemn	bustle
gnash	cognizance <sup>12</sup>	—	castle
gnat	—	psalm	epistle
foreign	knee	psalter	jostle
design	know	empty	rustle
impugn <sup>6</sup>	knave	sempstress	thistle
sign <sup>7</sup>	kneel	peremptory	whistle
resign	knight	sumptuous	wrestle
assign	and in other	presumptuous	often
consign	words begin-	redemption	soften
benign	ning with kn.	raspberry	Christmas
malign	—	—	chestnut
condign	almond	tempt	mortgage
—	calf	attempt	ostler
arraign <sup>8</sup>	half	contempt	bankruptcy
campaign <sup>9</sup>	calve	exempt	mistletoe
feign	halve	prompt	—
deign	falcon	—	sword
—	folk	corps	answer
dough	salmon	—	towards
high	salve	island	
sight	—	demesne.	

## EXERCISE 72.

137 *Subtle?* (crafty, cunning.) *An indictment?* (a sworn accusation offered to a jury.) *A muscle?* (the fleshy,

<sup>4</sup> wēz'n, or wēzānd.<sup>7</sup> all sine, rezine, &c.<sup>10</sup> bān'-yō.<sup>13</sup> chase'n.<sup>5</sup> flēm.<sup>8</sup> arrane.<sup>11</sup> seen-yor'.<sup>14</sup> hase'n.<sup>6</sup> impūne.<sup>9</sup> campane.<sup>12</sup> kōn'-e-zānse.

fibrous part of a body : also a sort of shell-fish<sup>1</sup>.) The *Czar*? (the emperor of Russia.) A *schedule*? (a small paper, or scroll.) A *yacht*? (a gentleman's sailing boat.) *Schism*? (the sin of separating from the Church : separation from the Church.) To *hand-sel* any thing? (to use it for the first time.) The *weasand*? (the windpipe.) *Phlegm*? (the tough, viscous matter which comes away by coughing.) To *inveigh* against a man? (to rail at him.) A *bagnio*? (a house for bathing and sweating.) *Seignior*? (Sir, my Lord : in Italy, Spain, &c.) *Poignant* grief? (acute, sharp grief.) *Cognizance*? (trial before a judge : judicial trial : also a badge by which a person is known.) To *arraign* a person? (to bring to trial.) To *re-sign*? (to give up.) To be *resigned*? (to be given up entirely to God's will : to be ready to bear patiently.) To *assign*? (to make over to a person : to fix or mark out.) To *assign* a reason? (to point out or state a reason.) To *consign*? (to make over any thing to another.) A *campaign*? (the time of an army's keeping the field : that portion of a war that takes place in one year, from the time an army leaves its winter quarters to the time of its being stationed in winter quarters again.) *Benign*? (favorable, kind, beneficial.) *Malign*? (unfavorable, hurtful, malicious.) *Condign* punishment? (punishment proportioned to the offence : deserved punishment.) To *feign*? (to pretend.) To *deign*? (to condescend.)

### LESSON XLIX.

(Words exactly, or very nearly, the same in sound, but different in spelling and signification.)

138

{ air, one of the elements.	all, every one.
{ ere, before.	awl, an instrument to bore
{ heir, one who inherits.	holes.
{ aisle of a church.	altar, for sacrifice.
{ isle, island.	alter, to change.
{ I'll, for I will.	

<sup>1</sup> Smart spells the fish *mussel*.

anchor of a ship.  
 anker of brandy.  
 ant, the insect.  
 aunt, a relation.  
 ascent, going up.  
 assent, agreement.  
 auger, a tool for boring.  
 augur, one who pretended to  
   prophecy by the flight of  
   birds.  
 aught, any thing.  
 ought, one should.  
 bad, not good.  
 I bade = I did bid.  
 a ball.  
 to bawl, to shout.  
 bare, naked.  
 bear, a beast.  
 base, vile.  
 bass, in music.  
 beau, a fop.  
 bow, to shoot with.  
 beat, to strike.  
 beet, a plant.  
 beech, a tree.  
 beach, the strand, the shore.  
 been, in 'have been.'  
 bean, a vegetable.  
 beer, malt liquor.  
 bier, to carry the dead.  
 bell, for ringing.  
 belle, a beauty.  
 berry, a small fruit.  
 bury, to lay in the grave.  
 berth, on ship-board.  
 birth, the being born.  
 blew, did blow.  
 blue, a colour.  
 boar, a beast.  
 bore, to make a hole.

bolt, of a door.  
 to bould, to sift through a  
   coarse cloth.  
 borough, a municipal town.  
 burrow, rabbit-hole. So to  
   burrow.  
 bough, a branch.  
 to bow, to bend. To a bow  
   of the head.  
 boy, opposite of girl.  
 buoy, floating mark.  
 brake, brambles.  
 to break.  
 bread, food.  
 bred, brought up.  
 bruit, report, rumour.  
 brute, beast.  
 but, yet, however, &c.  
 butt, at which aim is taken :  
   also a barrel of 126 gal-  
   lons.  
 to buy.  
 by, the preposition.  
 Cain, Abel's brother.  
 cane, sort of reed : stick.  
 calendar, almanac.  
 calender, press for smoothing  
   cloth.  
 to call.  
 cawl, small net : integument  
   in which the guts are en-  
   closed.  
 candid, open, honest.  
 candied, incrustured with sugar.  
 cannon, great gun.  
 canon, a rule made by the  
   Church : a cathedral cler-  
   gyman.  
 ceiling, of a room.  
 sealing, fixing a seal.

- cell, *a hut, or cave.*  
 sell, *to dispose of.*  
 cellar, *for wine, &c.*  
 seller, *one who sells.*  
 censor, *for incense.*  
 censor, *one who judges or censures.*  
 cession, *act of ceding.*  
 session, *time of a parliament's sitting.*  
 chagrín,  *vexation.*  
 shagreén, *the skin of a kind of fish; or skin made rough in imitation of it.*  
 to cite, *to call before a court.*  
 sight, *act of seeing, or thing seen.*  
 site, *situation of a town, &c.*  
 to climb.  
 clime, *region.*  
 coal, *for burning.*  
 cole, *a cabbage.*  
 coarse, *not fine.*  
 course, *race, or way.*  
 colour.  
 culler, *one who culls.*  
 complement, *what makes up the full number.*  
 compliment, *civil expression.*  
 council, *deliberative assembly.*  
 counsel, *advice.*  
 cousin, *uncle's child, &c.*  
 to cozen.  
 to creak.  
 creek *of the sea.*  
 cruse *of oil.*  
 cruise, *of a ship.*  
 cygnet, *young swan.*  
 signet, *seal.*  
 cymbal, *musical instrument.*  
 symbol, *representative sign.*  
 dam, *mother of an animal.*  
 to damn, *to condemn everlastingly.*  
 day.  
 dey, *of Algiers.*  
 dear, *costly.*  
 deer, *a wild beast.*  
 dew, *on the grass.*  
 due, *owing.*  
 doe, *female deer.*  
 dough, *unbaked bread.*  
 dyer, *one who dyes cloth.*  
 dire, *dreadful.*  
 { ewe, *commonly pronounced yō.*  
   yew, *the tree.*  
   you, *pl. of thou.*  
 ewer, *jug.*  
 your, *belonging to you.*  
 { eye, *to see with.*  
   aye, *yes.*  
   I, *myself.*  
 faint, *feeble.*  
 feint, *a pretence.*  
 fair, *just.*  
 fare, *provisions.*  
 fane, *a temple.*  
 feign, *pretend.*  
 feet, *pl. of foot.*  
 feat, *deed, exploit.*  
 fillip *with the finger.*  
 Philip, *a man's name.*  
 filter, *to strain water: a strainer.*  
 philter<sup>1</sup>, *love-charm.*

<sup>1</sup> Or *philtre.*

- fir, *the tree*.  
 fur, *of an animal*.  
 flea, *an insect*.  
 flee, *to run from danger*.  
 flour, *ground corn*.  
 flower, *in the garden*.  
 forth, *onwards*.  
 fourth, *the numeral*.  
 foul, *filthy*.  
 fowl, *a bird*.  
 to freeze.  
 frieze, *a coarse woollen cloth :  
     a term in architecture*<sup>1</sup>.  
 gait, *manner of walking*.  
 the gate *of a field*.  
 gall, *bile*.  
 Gaul, *old name of France ;  
     and of a Frenchman*.  
 to gild.  
 guild, *a corporation*.  
 gilt, *with gold*.  
 guilt, *sin*.  
 grate, *for coals*.  
 great, *large*.  
 grater, *an instrument for  
     grating*.  
 greater, *bigger*.  
 Greece, *the country*.  
 grease, *oily substance*.  
 hail, *frozen rain-drops*.  
 hale, *heartly, healthy*.  
 hair, *of the head*.  
 hare, *a beast*.  
 the hall *of a house : princi-  
     pal house in a village*.  
 to hawl, *to drag*.  
 hart, *a beast*.  
 heart, *seat of life*.  
 heal, *to cure*.  
 heel, *part of the foot*.  
 hear, *to hearken*.  
 here, *in this place*.  
 he heard.  
 herd, *of cows*.  
 hew, *to cut*.  
 hue, *colour*.  
 high, *tall*.  
 to hie, *to hasten*.  
 him, *the pronoun*.  
 hymn, *holy song*.  
 hole, *a cavity*.  
 whole, *total*.  
 holy, *righteous*.  
 wholly, *entirely*.  
 Jewry, *Judæa*.  
 jury, *twelve men chosen to  
     try a cause*.  
 knave, *rascal*.  
 nave, *of a wheel*.  
 to kneel down.  
 to Neal, *to temper by heat*.  
 knew, *did know*.  
 new, *not worn*.  
 knight, *horse-soldier*.  
 night, *time of darkness*.  
 knot, *that is tied*.  
 not.  
 to lade, *to load*.  
 he laid.  
 lain, *participle of to lie*.  
 lane, *narrow street*.  
 lead, *the metal*.  
 he led.  
 leaf *of a tree*.  
 lief, *willingly*.  
 leak, *not to be water-tight*.  
 leek, *the plant*.

<sup>1</sup> The flat member between the architrave and the cornice.

- to lessen, to make less.  
 a lesson.  
 levee, morning assembly of visitors.  
 levy, to raise troops: also a levy.  
 { to lie.  
 { a lie, a falsehood.  
 { lye, water mixed with wood-ashes.  
 limb.  
 to limn, to paint with water-colours.  
 lineament, feature.  
 liniment, ointment.  
 lo! behold.  
 low, opposite of high.  
 loan, lending: thing lent.  
 lone, solitary.  
 lock of a door.  
 loch, or lough, a lake.  
 lore, learning, doctrine.  
 to lower, to depress.  
 maid, maiden, female servant.  
 he made.  
 mail, armour for the body: coach that carries letters.  
 male, opposite of female.  
 mane, of a horse, &c.  
 main, principal: the main, the sea.  
 mall, a sort of hammer.  
 to maul, to mangle.  
 manner, way, method.  
 manor, a parish, considered with reference to the privileges possessed by the lord of the manor.  
 mare, female horse.  
 mayor, of a town.  
 marshal, a high officer, who
- arranges combats, processions, &c.  
 martial, warlike.  
 Martin, a man's name.  
 marten, a kind of weasel.  
 maze, labyrinth.  
 maize, Indian corn.  
 mead, meadow.  
 meed, reward.  
 mean, low, paltry.  
 mien, appearance.  
 meet, fit: to meet, to come up to in the opposite direction.  
 meat, flesh, food.  
 to mete, to measure.  
 medlar, the fruit.  
 meddler, one who meddles.  
 metal, e. g. iron, &c.  
 mettle, spirit.  
 meter, one who metes or measures.  
 metre, measure as applied to verse.  
 might, force.  
 mite, half a farthing.  
 miner, one who works in mines.  
 minor, one still under age.  
 to moan, to lament.  
 mown, cut down with a scythe.  
 moat, ditch round a castle, &c.  
 mote, small particle.  
 mower, one who mows.  
 more, comparative of much, or many.  
 mule, the animal.  
 to mewl, to cry from uneasiness: applied to infants.  
 naught, good for nothing.  
 nought, nothing.

- nay, *the adverb of denial, &c.*  
 to neigh.  
 need, necessity: *to need, to want.*  
 knead, *to work flour into dough, &c.*  
 none, *not any.*  
 nun, *a female.*  
 oh! *the exclamation.*  
 to owe.  
 { oar, *to row with.*  
 { ore, *metal as found mixed with earth.*  
 { o'er, *for over*  
 one, *the numeral.*  
 won, *from to win.*  
 pale, *having little colour.*  
 pail, *bucket.*  
 pain, *the feeling.*  
 pane, *of glass.*  
 pair, *two things that match.*  
 pear, *the fruit.*  
 to pair, *to arrange two and two.*  
 to pare, *to cut off, or round.*  
 pall, *to become insipid, or distasteful.*  
 Paul, *a man's name.*  
 peace, *quietness: the opposite of war.*  
 piece, *a portion.*  
 peak, *pointed top of a hill, &c.*  
 pique, *ill-will, vexation: to pique, to vex.*  
 peal, *clash of bells.*  
 peel, *the skin of an apple, &c.*  
 peer, *an equal: a member of the house of lords: to peer, to look about.*  
 pier, *column supporting the arch of a bridge, &c.*  
 Peter, *a man's name*<sup>2</sup>.  
 petre, *in salt-petre.*  
 pilot, *one who steers a vessel.*  
 Pontius Pilate.  
 place, *situation, locality.*  
 plaice, *the fish.*  
 plain, *evident: even, simple.*  
 plane, *a carpenter's tool.*  
 to plane, *to make smooth with a plane.*  
 plait, *to double cloth in little folds.*  
 plate, *a flat piece of metal: a plate, on which food is placed.*  
 plum, *the fruit.*  
 plumb, *a leaden weight: plummet.*  
 pole, *long stick.*  
 poll, *the head: as in poll-tax, &c.*  
 pore, *small hole in the skin, through which the perspiration escapes: to pore over a thing: to sit over it in meditation.*  
 to pour out.  
 a practice.  
 to practise.  
 pray, *to beseech.*  
 prey, *plunder.*  
 primer, *a first reading book.*  
 primmer, *more prim.*  
 principal, *chief: the money on which interest is paid.*  
 principle, *a maxim, or rule to act by.*

<sup>2</sup> Meaning 'rock:' given to the Apostle Simon by Christ.



- profit, gain.  
 prophet, *one who foretells future events.*  
 quean, *a jade.*  
 queen, *female monarch.*  
 rabbet, *a joint made by paring two pieces, so that they wrap over one another. So to rabbet.*  
 rabbit, *the animal.*  
 { rain, *that falls from the clouds.*  
 { reign, *of a queen.*  
 { rein, *bridle: reins, 'the kidneys.'*  
 raise, *to lift up.*  
 raze<sup>3</sup>, *cut off: overthrow.*  
 rap, *light knock.*  
 wrap, *to roll round.*  
 to read.  
 reed, *the plant.*  
 red.  
 having read.  
 reckon, *to care about.*  
 wreck, *the destruction of a ship.*  
 reek, *smoke.*  
 to wreak vengeance.  
 to retch, *to make an effort to vomit.*  
 to reach any thing.  
 Rhone, *the river.*  
 roan, bay, sorrel, &c.: *with spots.*  
 rhyme, *agreement of sound.*  
 rime, *hoar-frost.*  
 to ring a bell.  
 to wring one's hand.
- { rite, *prescribed ceremony.*  
 { right, *proper, correct.*  
 { wright, *smith, workman.*  
 { write, *to form written letters.*  
 { road, *way.*  
 { he rode.  
 { he rowed in a boat.  
 room, *apartment: space.*  
 rheum, *thin fluid secreted by the mucous glands.*  
 rood, *the Cross: the fourth part of an acre.*  
 rude, *uncivil, rough.*  
 rote, *repetition by heart.*  
 he wrote.  
 rough, *opposite of smooth.*  
 ruff, *a puckered linen ornament.*  
 to row a boat.  
 roe, *kind of deer: female of the hart: spawn of a fish.*  
 he rung the bell.  
 he wrung his hand.  
 rye, *a species of corn.*  
 wry, *crooked, &c.*  
 sail, *of a ship.*  
 sale, *selling: auction.*  
 saver, *one who saves.*  
 savour, *taste, odour.*  
 scate, *instrument for skating with.*  
 skate, *the fish.*  
 scene, *in a play.*  
 being seen.  
 sea, *the ocean.*  
 see, *to behold.*  
 seam, *edges sewed.*  
 seem, *appear.*

<sup>3</sup> Written raze, in the sense of to touch lightly.

- Seignior, *Sir*.  
 senior, *the elder*.  
 sent, *did send*  
 scent, *smell*.  
 shear, *to clip : cut off*.  
 sheer, *unmixed, pure*.  
 sleight of hand.  
 slight, *slender, contemptuous; neglect*.  
 sloe, *fruit of the blackthorn*.  
 slow, *opposite of quick*.  
 { sew, *to work with a needle*.  
   sow, *to scatter seed*.  
   so, *thus*.  
 sewer, *large subterraneous drain*.  
 shore, *strip of land by the sea-side*.  
 { soar, *to fly aloft*.  
   sore, *an ulcer : painful*.  
   sower, *one who sows*.  
 sole, *alone, only*.  
 soul, *spirit of a man*.  
 some, *opposite to none*.  
 sum, *the total*.  
 son, *male child*.  
 sun, *the heavenly luminary*.  
 stair, *wooden step*.  
 to stare, *to look at with a fixed gaze*.  
 stationary, *fixed*.  
 stationery, *pens, paper, &c.*  
 to steal, *to rob*.  
 steel, *hardened iron*.  
 stile, *the steps or bars by which foot passengers get from one field into another*.  
 style, *kind of language or composition*.  
 straight, *in a direct line*.  
 strait, *narrow*.
- succour, *help*.  
 sucker, *a twig springing from the root*.  
 sword.  
 he soared.  
 tail, *of an animal*.  
 tale, *a story*.  
 team, *two or more animals harnessed for draught*.  
 to teem, *to abound with*.  
 tear, *to pull to pieces*.  
 tare, *a weed growing amongst corn*.  
 tear, *that falls from the eye*.  
 tier, *a row (of benches, &c.), rising one above another*.  
 their, *belonging to them*.  
 there, *in that place*.  
 throe, *birth-pang*.  
 throw, *to fling*.  
 he threw.  
 through, *the preposition*.  
 throne, *king's seat*.  
 having thrown.  
 thyme, *the plant*.  
 time, *opposed to eternity*.  
 tide, *the ebb and flow of the sea, or of a stream*.  
 having tied.  
 { to, *the preposition*.  
   too, *also*.  
   two, *one and one*.  
 toe, *of the foot*.  
 tow, *of flax*.  
 { vain, *empty, conceited*.  
   vane, *weathercock*.  
   vein, *blood-vessel*.  
   vale, *a valley*.  
   veil, *cover let down before the face*.  
   vails, *presents made to servants*.

wain, waggon.

wane, to decrease: of the moon.

waist, of the body.

to waste, to spend uselessly.

to wait, to stop till something happens: to attend on guests at table.

weight, what any thing weighs.

waive, to omit mentioning.

wave, of the sea.

ware, article of merchandize.

to wear, to have on an article of dress.

way, road.

to weigh, to try how heavy a thing is.

weak, opposite of strong.

week, seven days.

{ weal, benefit: mark of a stripe.

{ wheal, small swelling filled with matter.

{ wheel, of a carriage.

wean, to make an infant leave off its natural food.

ween, to think.

{ weather, state of atmosphere.

{ whether, the conjunction to which 'or' answers.

{ a wether sheep.

wood, collection of trees: substance of which a tree consists.

he would go.

## LESSON L.

139. List of words which are, or used to be, sometimes spelt differently. Chiefly from Mr. Smart's English Grammar.

accessary<sup>4</sup>.

addice.

alchymy.

ancient.

ante-chamber<sup>5</sup>.

apostasy.

artisan.

basin<sup>6</sup>.

bodice.

brazier.

{ caliber<sup>7</sup>.

{ calibre.

caliph.

{ calix.

{ calyx<sup>8</sup>.

camlet.

camphor.

{ canvas, s.

{ canvass, v.

catchup.

causeway<sup>9</sup>.

<sup>4</sup> Or accessory.

<sup>5</sup> Not anti-chamber.

<sup>6</sup> Often written bason, but not according to etymology.

<sup>7</sup> Calibre, the original French form, is generally used, when we apply the word figuratively; as in saying a mind of inferior calibre.

<sup>8</sup> When we mean the calyx of a flower.

<sup>9</sup> Causey etymologically more correct.

chameleon.	fagot.
cheer, cheerful.	falchion.
chemist.	fantasy.
chemistry.	further, furthest <sup>1</sup> .
choke.	felly.
choose.	flageolet.
cider.	flake.
cipher.	gimblet.
clinch.	glue.
cloak.	graft.
cocoa.	gray <sup>2</sup> .
contemporary.	gulf.
control.	gypsy.
crum.	harrier.
crystal.	herse.
decrepit.	height <sup>3</sup> .
deposit.	hiccough.
{ desert.	hindrance.
{ dessert.	inferrible.
{ despatch.	intrinsic.
{ dispatch <i>the common spelling</i> ; but now giving way to the other, as etymologically proper.—S.	julep.
develop.	kerseymere.
dexterous.	lackey.
dike.	landscape.
discreet (prudent).	lantern.
dishabille.	leaven.
{ drachm.	lickerish.
{ dram.	licorice.
{ draught.	lilac.
{ draft ( <i>draft when it means drawing on a banker</i> : a draft of soldiers: a first sketch).	loadstone.
ecstasy.	loath.
envelop, v.	malecontent.
	marquis.
	mattress.
	merchandise.
	misle.
	mistletoe.
	mosquito.

<sup>1</sup> *Smart* prefers farther, farthest.

<sup>2</sup> *Grey-hound* is not a compound of this word.

<sup>3</sup> *Milton* spells it highth.

mustache.	sillabub.
nankeen.	siphon.
negotiate.	sirup.
nuisance.	skein.
olio.	soap.
oxide.	solder <sup>4</sup> .
parsnep.	somerset.
phenomenon.	soland-goose.
phial, or vial <sup>4</sup> .	sponge.
philter (a love-charm).	{ staunch ( <i>the adjective</i> ).
piebald.	{ stanch ( <i>the verb</i> ).
pincers.	steadfast.
{ plaster.	strop (for a razor).
{ (plaister common.)	strew.
plough.	stupify.
potato.	surname.
pumpkin.	sycamore.
pygmy.	sylvan.
{ referrible.	thresh ( <i>but thrash, to drub</i> ).
{ referable common, but in-	tidbit.
correct.	toilet.
{ raindeer.	{ tun ( <i>cask</i> ).
{ reindeer.	{ ton ( <i>the weight</i> ).
{ resin ( <i>as a common term</i> ).	transferrible.
{ rosin ( <i>our common rosin</i> ).	tressel.
restiff.	trivet.
rodomontade.	tyro.
rummage.	verdigris.
runnet.	villain.
satirize.	villainous.
scallop.	visor.
scath.	vizier.
sceptic.	waggon.
scimitar.	Welsh.
scythe.	wizard.
sear.	woe.
secrecy.	wreck.
seignior.	yearn.
serjeant.	yeast.
show.	yolk.

<sup>4</sup> The latter mostly in the figurative sense, as in the vials of wrath, &c.

<sup>5</sup> Pronounced saw -der.

## LESSON LI.

140. *List of some dissyllables with the first syllable short, but only one consonant in the middle\*.*

<i>b.</i>	<i>g.</i>	<i>q.</i>
balance	gamut	quiver
banish	gravel	
baron	grovel	<i>r.</i>
bevil		ravage
bevy	<i>h.</i>	relish
bigot	hagard	revel
blemish	harass	rivet
borage	hazard	
borough	homage	
bodice	honey	<i>s.</i>
bury	hovel	satin
busy	hover	savage
	<i>l.</i>	seraph
<i>c.</i>	level	shadow
chisel	levy	shekel
civet	lizard	sheriff
claret		shovel
clever	<i>m.</i>	sirup
closet	manor	sloven
cover	many	snivel
covert	medal	spavin
covet		spigot
	<i>n.</i>	swivel
<i>d.</i>	never	
damage		
damask	<i>o.</i>	<i>t.</i>
desart	oven	talon
drivel		tenon
	<i>p.</i>	travail
<i>f.</i>	peril	traverse
fagot	pity	travel
flagon	pivot	trevit
frigate	privy	
frolic	provost	

\* This list does not include words regularly derived from Latin roots.

*v.*  
valance  
valet  
vizard

*w.*  
wagon,—*but* *now*  
*commonly* wag-  
gon.

widow  
wizard

---

141 The oak is *riven* : the ox is *driven*.  
*Comely* has also a silent *e*.

---

## LESSON LII.

142 The Latin nouns in *or* end in *eur* in French ; and since they come to us from that language, "it will be well to leave off such affectations as *honor* and *favor*.—In *honorable* and *favorable*, on the other hand, the *u* would be an intruder, having no more business in them than in the second syllables of *clamorous* or *laborious* ; for they are not home-made derivatives, but were imported ready-formed from France. A like rule, as has been observed by others, would be the best guide for our choice, with regard to the use of *in* or *en* in compound words ; that is to say, to write *in* where a word has come to us immediately from the Latin, *en* where it has past through the French. The same principle may be applied to a great variety of cases ; and among other advantages of such a practice would be its supplying us at a glance with a mass of evidence concerning the history of our language. ' "

This rule would make us write *superiour*, *inferiour* ; but we hardly ever find them so written now.

143            *errour*            *favour*            *honour*  
                 *splendour*        *terroure*

' *Phil. Mag.* i. 648.

144 *List of words in em, en, in which the e is retained, or may be retained without great singularity.*

*Those to which an asterisk is prefixed are often spelt with i.*

<i>em.</i>	enchafe	enlarge
embalm	enchain	enlighten
*embank (s)	enchant	enlist
embark	enchase	ennoble
embarrass	encircle	enrage
embassy	enclose	enrapture
embattle	encomium	enrich
embay	encompass	enroll
*embed	encounter	ensanguine
embellish	encourage	ensconce
embezzle	encroach	enshrine
emblazon	*encumber	ensign
*embody	endamage	enslave
embolden	endanger	*ensnare
*embosom	endear	ensue
emboss	endeavour	ensure, <i>make cer-</i>
embowel	*endite	<i>tain.</i>
embrace	endorse	( <i>insure, insurance:</i>
embrocation	endow	<i>of insuring</i>
embroidery	endue	<i>lives, &amp;c.)</i>
embroil	endure	entail
empale	enfeable	entangle
empannel	enforce	enthrall
empassioned	enfranchise	entice
employ	engage	entitle
empoison	*engender	entomb
*empoverish (s)	engorge	entrance
empower	*engraft	entrap
	engrain	*entreat
<i>en.</i>	engrave	*entrench.
enable	engross	*entrust
enact	engulf	*entwine
enamour	enhance	environ
encage	enjoin	*enwrap
encamp	enjoy	
encase	enkindle	

Obs.—*Inquire, increase, are much more common than enquire, encrease.*



## LESSON LIII.

## PRONOUNS.

145 PRONOUNS (or for-nouns) stand for substantives, the *names* of which they make it unnecessary to mention.

*Personal Pronouns.*

*I*, plural *we*, is called the pronoun of the *first* person.

*Thou*, plural *you*, is called the pronoun of the *second* person.

*He, she, it*, plural *they*, are the pronouns of the *third* person.

	Nom.	Genitive, or case of the possessor.	Accusative, or case after verbs and prepositions.
Pers. 1 { Sing. Plur.	<i>I</i> <i>we</i>	<i>my</i> or <i>mine</i> <i>our</i> or <i>ours</i>	<i>me</i> <i>us.</i>
Pers. 2 { Sing. Plur.	<i>thou</i> { <i>ye</i> <i>you</i> }	<i>thy</i> or <i>thine</i> <i>your</i> or <i>yours</i>	<i>thee</i> <i>you.</i>
Pers. 3 { Sing. { mas. fem. neut. Plur.	<i>he</i> <i>she</i> <i>it</i> <i>they</i>	<i>his</i> <i>her</i> or <i>hers</i> <i>its</i> <i>their</i> or <i>theirs</i>	<i>him</i> <i>her</i> <i>it</i> <i>them.</i>
Relative and Interroga- tive }	<i>who</i> <i>which</i>	<i>whose</i> { <i>of which</i> or <i>whose</i> }	<i>whom</i> <i>which.</i>

Demonstrative { *this*, plural *these*.  
*that*, plural *those*.

*Reflexive Pronouns.*

- |        | Sing.  | Plur.              | Obs.  |
|--------|--|--------------------|---|
| 146 1. | <i>myself</i>  | <i>ourselves.</i>  | The terminations are added to the <i>genitives</i> of the two first persons, to the <i>accusatives</i> of the third person. |
| 2.     | <i>thyself</i>   | <i>yourselves.</i> |   |
| 3.     | $\left. \begin{array}{l} \textit{himself} \\ \textit{herself} \\ \textit{itself} \end{array} \right\}$ | <i>themselves.</i> |   |
|        |  |                    |   |
- 147 (1) A *relative* pronoun *relates* to a person or thing *just mentioned*. Thus: 'the man, *who*'—'the thing, *which*,' &c. Here *who* relates to *man*; *which* relates to *thing*.
- (2) An *interrogative* pronoun is a *question-asking* pronoun.
- (3) A *demonstrative* pronoun is a *pointing-out* pronoun.
- (4) A *reflexive* pronoun is a pronoun that *turns round*, as it were, to the *person himself*; that is, which stands for the person himself of whom we are speaking.
- a) If my name is *Henry*; and I say, "I hurt *myself*," '*myself*' means '*Henry*,' which is the same person that is meant by '*I*.'

148 *Spelling list of other words connected with pronouns.*

own	whoever
one another	whatever
each other	whosoever
such	whichever
oneself <sup>7</sup>	whatsoever

149 *List of adjectives denoting number or quantity.*

each	several	any
every	all	enough
either	no	other
neither	none	another
many	more	only
much	some	alone
few		

<sup>7</sup> Some write *one's self*; but *oneself* is formed just like *himself*, *themselves*.

## 150 (Substantives relating to number.)

<i>a</i> unit	<i>a</i> dozen	<i>a</i> thousand
<i>a</i> pair	<i>a</i> score	<i>a</i> million
<i>a</i> couple	<i>a</i> hundred	

---

<i>the</i> whole	half	<i>a</i> quarter
------------------	------	------------------

---

a guinea and a half	half a guinea.
---------------------	----------------

---

## LESSON LIV.

(Adjectives of *number*, or *numerals*.)151 1. Cardinal (or principal) numerals: answering to the question, *how many*?

one	twelve	twenty-three
two	thirteen	thirty
three	fourteen	forty
four	fifteen	fifty
five	sixteen	sixty
six	seventeen	seventy
seven	eighteen	eighty
eight	nineteen	ninety
nine	twenty	a hundred
ten	twenty-one	a thousand
eleven	twenty-two	a million

152 2. Ordinal numbers: marking in *what place* of a series the thing or person spoken of stood.

the first	the eighth	the fifteenth
— second	— ninth	— sixteenth
— third	— tenth	— seventeenth
— fourth	— eleventh	— eighteenth
— fifth	— twelfth	— nineteenth
— sixth	— thirteenth	— twentieth
— seventh	— fourteenth	

the twenty first, <i>or</i>	the fortieth	the hundred and
one and twenty	— fiftieth	second
tieth <sup>s</sup>	— sixtieth	— hundred and
the twenty second,	— seventieth	twenty-first
<i>or</i> two and twenty	— eightieth	— two hundredth
tieth	— ninetieth	— three hundredth
the twenty-third	— hundredth	— thousandth
— thirtieth	— hundred and	— millionth
	first	

153

*Adverbs of number.*

first (in the first place)	sixthly
secondly	seventhly
thirdly	eighthly
fourthly	ninthly
fifthly	tenthly

154 For higher numbers we use, 'in the eleventh place,'  
and so on.

a) The following denote *how many times as great*.

twofold, <i>or</i> double.	sevenfold, <i>or</i> septuple.
threefold, — treble.	eightfold, — octuple.
fourfold, — quadruple.	ninefold.
fivefold, — quintuple.	tenfold, — decuple.
sixfold, — sextuple.	a hundredfold, <i>or</i> centuple.

## LESSON LV.

155 Table of the *helping verbs am, have, do*.

## Participles.

Infinitive.	Present.	Past.
<i>To be</i>	<i>being</i>	<i>been</i>
<i>To have</i>	<i>having</i>	<i>had</i>
<i>To do</i>	<i>doing</i>	<i>done</i>

<sup>s</sup> OBS. In these compound adjectives, the *first* is a *cardinal*: the  
*last* an *ordinal*.

		Singular.			Plural.		
		1	2	3	1	2	3
		<i>I</i>	<i>thou</i>	<i>he, she, or it</i>	<i>we, ye or you, they</i>		
Present.	{	<i>am</i>	<i>art</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>are</i>		
		<i>have</i>	<i>hast</i>	<i>has</i>	<i>have</i>		
		<i>do</i>	<i>dost</i>	<i>does</i>	<i>do</i>		
Past.	{	<i>was</i>	<i>wast</i>	<i>was</i>	<i>were</i>		
		<i>had</i>	<i>hadst</i>	<i>had</i>	<i>had</i>		
		<i>did</i>	<i>didst</i>	<i>did</i>	<i>did</i>		

Table of the other helping verbs.

	<i>I</i>	<i>thou</i>	<i>he, she, or it</i>	<i>we, ye or you, they</i>
Present.	<i>may</i>	<i>mayest</i>	<i>may</i>	<i>may</i>
Past.	<i>might</i>	<i>mightest</i>	<i>might</i>	<i>might</i>
Present.	<i>can</i>	<i>canst</i>	<i>can</i>	<i>can</i>
Past.	<i>could</i>	<i>couldst</i>	<i>could</i>	<i>could</i>
Present.	<i>shall</i>	<i>shalt</i>	<i>shall</i>	<i>shall</i>
Past.	<i>should</i>	<i>shouldst</i>	<i>should</i>	<i>should</i>
Present.	<i>will</i>	<i>wilt</i>	<i>will</i>	<i>will</i>
Past.	<i>would</i>	<i>wouldst</i>	<i>would</i>	<i>would</i>
Present.	<i>ought</i>	<i>oughtest</i>	<i>ought</i>	<i>ought</i>
Present.	<i>must</i>	<i>must</i>	<i>must</i>	<i>must</i>

157 Verbs that do not form the past tense and past participle in *ed, ed*. Those to which R is added, sometimes take *ed, ed*; those in Italics are considered obsolete by Murray; and those to which † is prefixed, by Webster.

<i>Present Tense.</i>	<i>Past Tense.</i>	<i>Past Participle.</i>
I abide	I abode	abode
am	was	been
arise	arose	arisen
awake	awoke, R.	awaked
bear ( <i>carry</i> )	bore, <i>bare</i>	borne
bear	<i>bore</i> , bare	born
beat	beat	beaten, beat
become	became	become
it befalls	befell	befallen
I beget	begot, <i>begat</i>	begot, begotten
begin	began	begun
begird	begirt	begirt, R.
behold	beheld	beheld, <i>beholden</i>
bend	bent, R.	bent, R.
bereave	bereft, R.	bereft, R.
beseech	besought	besought
bestride	bestrid	bestriden, <i>bestrid</i>
betake	betook	betaken
bid	bid, bade, <i>bad</i>	bid, † bidden
bind	bound	bound
bite	bit	bit, bitten
bleed	bled	bled
blow	blew	blown
break	broke, <i>brake</i>	broken
breed	bred	bred
bring	brought	brought
build	built, R.	built, R.
burst	burst	burst
buy	bought	bought
cast	cast	cast
catch	caught	caught
chide	chid, <i>chode</i>	chid, † chidden
choose	chose	chosen
cleave ( <i>split</i> )	† clove, cleft, <i>clave</i>	† cloven, cleft
cleave ( <i>cling to</i> )	† clave, R.	cleaved
cling	clung, clang	clung

<i>Present Tense.</i>	<i>Past Tense.</i>	<i>Past Participle.</i>
I clothe	I <i>clad</i> , R.	clad, R.
come	came	come
cost	cost	cost
creep	crept	crept
crow	crew, R.	crowed
cut	cut	cut
dare	durst	dared
deal	dealt	dealt
dig	dug, R.	dug, R.
do	did	done
draw	drew	drawn
dream	dreamt, R.	dreamt, R.
drink	drank, <i>drunk</i>	drunk
drive	drove	driven
dwelt	dwelt	dwelt, R.
eat	eat, ate	<i>eat</i> , eaten
fall	fell	fallen
feed	fed	fed
feel	felt	felt
fight	fought	fought
find	found	found
flee	fled	fled
fling	flung	flung
fly	flew	flown
fold	folded	folden, R.
forbear	forbore	forborn
forbid	forbid, forbade, forbad	forbid, forbidden
forget	forgot <sup>9</sup>	forgotten, forgot
forgive	forgave	forgiven
forsake	forsook	forsaken
freeze	froze	frozen, froze
freight	freighted	fraught, R.
get	got <sup>1</sup>	got, <i>gotten</i>
gild	gilt, R.	gilt, R.
gird	girt, R.	girt, R.
give	gave	given
go	went	gone
grave	graved	graven, R.

<sup>9</sup> Obsolete, *forgot*.<sup>1</sup> Obsolete, *gat*.

<i>Present Tense.</i>	<i>Past Tense.</i>	<i>Past Participle.</i>
I grind	I ground	ground, R.
grow	grew	grown
hang	hung, R.	hung, R.
have	had	had
hear	heard	heard
heave	hove, R.	hoven, R.
hew	hewed	hewn, R.
hide	hid	hidden, hid
hit	hit	hit
hold	held	held, <i>holden</i>
hurt	hurt	hurt
keep	kept	kept
kneel	knelt, R.	knelt, R.
knit	knit, R.	knit, R.
know	knew	known
lade.	laded	laden
lay	laid	laid
lead	led	led
lean	leant, R.	leant, R.
leap	leapt, R.	leapt, R.
leave	left	left
lend	lent	lent
let	let	let
lie	lay	lain <sup>2</sup>
light	<i>light, lit, R.</i>	<i>light, lit, R.</i>
load	loaded	laden, <i>loaden, R.</i>
lose	lost	lost
make	made	made
mean	meant	meant
meet	met	met
melt	melted	melted, <i>molten</i> <sup>3</sup>
mistake	mistook	mistaken
mow	mowed	mown, R.
partake	partook	partaken
pay	paid	paid
put	put	put
read	read	read
rend	rent	rent
rid	rid	rid

<sup>2</sup> *Lien*, obsolete.<sup>3</sup> *Molten* as adjective.—*Molten* brass, &c.



<i>Present Tense.</i>	<i>Past Tense.</i>	<i>Past Participle.</i>
I ride	I rode	ridden
ring	rung, rang	rung
rise	rose	risen
rive	<i>rove</i> , R.	riven
rot	rotted	rotten, R.
run	ran	run
saw	sawed	sawn, R.
say	said	said
see	saw	seen
seek	sought	sought
seeth	sod, R.	sodden, sod, R.
sell	sold	sold
send	sent	sent
set	set	set
shake	shook	shaken, <i>shook</i>
shave	shaved	†shaven, R.
shear	<i>shore</i> , R.	shorn, R.
shed	shed	shed
shew, show	shewed, showed	shewn, shown
shine	shone, R.	shone, R.
shoe	shod	shod
shoot	shot	shot, <i>shotten</i>
shred	shred	shred
shrink	shrunken, <i>shrank</i>	shrunken, <i>shrunken</i>
shrive	shrove, R.	<i>shriven</i> , shrift, R.
shut	shut	shut
sing	sung, † sang	sung
sink	sunk, † sank	sunk, sunken
sit	sat, <i>sate</i>	sat
slay	slew	slain
sleep	slept	slept
slide	slid	†slidden, <i>slid</i>
sling	slung, <i>slang</i>	slung
slink	slunk, slank	slunk
slit	slit	slit, R.
smell	smelt, R.	smelt, R.
smite	smote, <i>smit</i>	smitten, <i>smit</i>
sow	sowed	sown, R.
speak	spoke, <i>spake</i>	spoken, <i>spoke</i>
speed	sped	sped

<i>Present Tense.</i>	<i>Past Tense.</i>	<i>Past Participle.</i>
I spend	I spent	spent
spin	spun, <i>span</i>	spun
spit	spit, † spat, R.	<i>spitten</i> , spit, R.
split	split	split
spread	spread	spread
sprung	sprung, † sprang	sprung
stand	stood	stood
stay	staid	staid
steal	stole	stolen
stick	stuck	stuck
sting	stung, <i>stang</i>	stung
stink	stunk, † stank	stunk
stride	strode <sup>4</sup>	† stridden
strike	struck	struck, stricken
string	strung	strung
strive	strove	striven
strow	strow, strewed	strown, R.
swear	swore, <i>sware</i>	sworn
sweat	sweat, R.	sweat, R.
sweep	swept, R.	swept, R.
swell	swelled	† swollen, R.
swim	swum, swam	swum
swing	swung, swang	swung
take	took	taken
teach	taught	taught
tear	tore, <i>tare</i>	torn
tell	told	told
think	thought	thought
thrive	† throve, R.	† thriven; R.
throw	threw	thrown
thrust	thrust	thrust
tread	trod	trodden, <i>trod</i>
wax	waxed	† waxen, R.
wear	wore, <i>ware</i>	worn
weave	wove	woven
weep	wept	wept
wet	wet, R.	wet, R.
wind	wound	wound

<sup>4</sup> Sometimes *stride*, *strid*, *strid*.

<i>Present Tense.</i>	<i>Past Tense.</i>	<i>Past Participle.</i>
I win	I won	won
wont	wont, R.	wont, R.
work	wrought, R.	wrought, R.
wring	wrung, R.	wrung, R.
write	wrote	written, writ
writhe	writhed	writhen, R.

158 Prepositions (*or little words that stand before substantives to mark what relation they stand in to something else*).

above	between }	in	till }
about	betwixt }	into	until }
after	beyond	near }	to }
against	before	nigh }	unto }
among }	behind	of }	toward }
amongst }	beneath	off	towards }
amid }	below	over	under
amidst }	beside	on }	underneath
around }	by	upon }	up
round }	down	since	with
at	for	through	within
	from	throughout	without

#### ADVERBS.

159

(*Time.*)

now	always	soon
now-a-days	ever	anon
ago	eternally	instantly
already	continually	immediately
before	perpetually	presently
formerly	still	speedily
hitherto	incessantly	quickly
lately	long	first
yesterday	till	next
hereafter	until	last
henceforth	thenceforth	early
henceforwards	thenceforwards	late

160 (*Adverbs of time made up of two or more words.*)

now-a-days	ere now
to-day	the day before
to-morrow	yesterday
at present	the day after
some time ago	to-morrow
long ago	ere long

## (Place.)

161 (1) *Of rest: answering to where?*

above	far	there
abroad	here	herein
before	high	within
behind	low	without
below	near	wherever
else where	} <i>often written as one word.</i>	
no where		
any where		
some where		

(2). (*Motion.*)162 a) *Answering to whence? (that is, from what place?)*

hence                      thence

b) *Answering to whither? (to what place?)*

hither                      thither

---

further	thitherwards	
home	upward	down
homewards	upwards	downwards
forward	backward	whithersoever
forwards	backwards	

---

163 (*Adverbs denoting the manner in which things are taken.*)

at once	singly
together	alternately
separately	

164 (Adverbs answering to *how much*?)

altogether	least	scarce
almost	much	scarcely
downright	more	something
enough	most	thus
a little	pretty	too
less	quite	very

165 (Answering to *how often*?)

oft	now and then	hourly
often	never	weekly
frequently	once	monthly
sometimes	twice	yearly
seldom	thrice	

166 (*Asking* adverbs.)

why	when
wherefore	how

167 (Adverbs for *affirming*.)

yes	certainly	doubtless
truly	surely	undoubtedly
verily	really	

168 (Adverbs for *denying*.)

not	no-wise.
-----	----------

169 (Adverbs expressing *doubt*.)

perhaps	probably
perchance	possibly
peradventure	

170 *Irregular comparison.*

good	better	best
bad	worse	worst
little	less	least
many	more	most
much	more	most

late	later	{ latest
		{ last
near	• nearer	{ nearest
		{ next

---

*Superlatives in most.*

nethermost	upmost
lowermost	uppermost
undermost	inmost
hindmost	innermost
hindermost	topmost
	foremost

# APPENDIX.

## TABLE OF THE ENGLISH VERB<sup>1</sup>.

### Indicative Mood.

	ACTIVE VOICE.	PASSIVE VOICE.
Present.	{ <i>Defend</i> <i>Am defending</i> <i>Do defend</i> }	<i>Am defended.</i>
Imperfect.	<i>Was defending</i> . . . .	(None.)
Perfect } Definite. }	<i>Have defended</i> . . . .	<i>Have been defended.</i>
Preterite } (or Perfect). }	{ <i>Defended</i> <i>Did defend</i> }	<i>Was defended.</i>
Pluperfect.	<i>Had defended</i> . . . .	<i>Had been defended.</i>
Future.	<i>Shall or will defend</i> . .	<i>Shall or will be defended.</i>
Future } Perfect. }	{ <i>Shall or will have</i> <i>defended</i> . . }	{ <i>Shall or will have been</i> <i>defended.</i>

### Imperative Mood.

S.	P.	S.	P.
<i>Defend (thou).</i>	<i>Defend (ye).</i>	<i>Be thou defended.</i>	<i>Be ye defended.</i>

Forms that answer to what is called in other languages the  
*subjunctive mood.*

Present.	<i>May defend</i> . . . .	<i>May be defended.</i>
Imperfect.	{ <i>Might, should, or</i> <i>would defend</i> }	{ <i>Might, should, or would</i> <i>be defended.</i>
Perfect.	<i>May have defended</i> . .	<i>May have been defended.</i>
Pluperfect.	{ <i>Might, should, or</i> <i>would have defended</i> }	{ <i>Might, should, or would</i> <i>have been defended.</i>

<sup>1</sup> Make the pupil go through the tenses by using *I, thou, he: we, ye or you, they.* The changes of *am, have, do, may, can, could, would, &c.* are given in 155, 156.

## Infinitive Mood.

	ACTIVE VOICE.	PASSIVE VOICE.
Present.	<i>To defend . . . . .</i>	<i>To be defended.</i>
Perfect.	<i>To have defended . . .</i>	<i>To have been defended.</i>
Future.	<i>{ To be going, or about to defend . . . . }</i>	<i>{ To be going, or about to be defended.</i>

## Participles.

Present.	<i>Defending . . . . .</i>	<i>{ Defended (past part.). Being defended.</i>
Perfect.	<i>Having defended . . .</i>	<i>Having been defended.</i>
Future.	<i>{ Going to defend . . . About to defend . . . }</i>	<i>{ Going to be defended. About to be defended.</i>

## NOTES ON THE TABLE.

(a) An *active* verb denotes *doing*.

A *passive* verb denotes *suffering*: or having something *done to* one.

(b) A *transitive* verb is incomplete without a substantive after it, to which the *action* is *done*. Thus: *I killed (what?)—a sparrow. I shot a hare.* *To kill, to shoot*, are *transitive*: but '*I slept soundly, I coughed.*' *To sleep, to cough*, are *not transitive*: that is, are *intransitive*.

(c) The present '*do defend*,' and the perfect '*did defend*,' are used in *questions, denials, and strong affirmations*.

(d) The *perfect definite* (or *present-perfect*) is used of actions that have taken place in a space of time<sup>2</sup> *not yet expired*.

(e) The past participle is not passive in meaning, unless the verb is *transitive*.—The past participle of an *intransitive* verb belongs to the active voice.

There is also a *progressive form*, *I am defending*, which may be conjugated throughout. *I was defending* (imperf.); *I have been defending*; *I had been defending*; *I shall be defending*; *I shall have been defending*, &c. *I had been defending* is the pluperfect of the *progressive form*.

<sup>2</sup> The space of time may be of *any length*: a week, a year, a century.



**LONDON:**  
**GILBERT & RIVINGTON, PRINTERS,**  
**ST. JOHN'S SQUARE.**

# THE FOLLOWING SCHOOL BOOKS

(BY THE REV. T. K. ARNOLD)

HAVE BEEN LATELY PUBLISHED BY

MESSRS. RIVINGTON,

ST. PAUL'S CHURCH YARD, AND WATERLOO PLACE, Pall Mall.

*There are Keys to those works only to which † is prefixed.*

	<i>Edition.</i>	<i>Price.</i>
	<i>s.</i>	<i>d.</i>
Practical Introduction to Greek Prose Composition.....	5	5 6
Practical Introduction to Greek Accidence .....	3	5 6
Practical Introduction to Latin Prose Composition, Pt. I.	5	6 6
† .....	Pt. II. 1	8 0
† Grotefend's Materials for Translation into Latin <sup>1</sup> . . . .	1	7 6
† Longer Latin Exercises, Pt. I. (a Companion to the Practical Introduction) .....	1	4 0
† A First Verse Book .....	2	2 0
† A Second Verse Book <sup>2</sup> (being Mr. Rapier's Introduc- tion, carefully revised) .....	2	3 6
† Practical Introduction to Latin Verse Composition....	1	5 6
English Grammar for Classical Schools .....	3	4 6
Eclogæ Ovidianæ .....	6	2 6
Eclogæ Horatianæ. Tom. i. (Carmina) .....	1	5 0
Eclogæ Horatianæ. Tom. ii. (Sermones) .....	1	5 0
Historiæ Antiquæ Epitome .....	2	4 0
Henry's First Latin Book .....	4	3 0
Second Latin Book, and Practical Grammar .....	2	4 0

*To appear shortly.*

VIRGILII ÆNEIS, lib. I—VI.

CORNELIUS NEPOS, with Critical Questions and Imitative Exercises.

*By Rev. H. H. Arnold.*

DOEDERLEIN'S HAND-BOOK of LATIN SYNONYMES. *First Edition.*  
7s. 6d.

*New Work on Ancient Chronology.*

ANNALES VETERUM REGNORUM ET POPULORUM, imprimis Romano-  
rum, confecti à C. T. ZUMPTIO. Librum utilissimum ad editionem  
alteram ab ipso Zumptio auctam et emendatam typis describendum  
curavit T. K. ARNOLD, M.A., Coll. S.S. Trinitatis apud Cantabrig.  
quondam Socius. 12mo. 5s.

<sup>1</sup> A Key to this Work is in preparation.

<sup>2</sup> This Work is published by Messrs. Longman & Co., the original publishers of  
Mr. Rapier's work.





*BY THE SAME AUTHOR.*

---

**SPELLING TURNED ETYMOLOGY.**

**PART I.**

*Price, Two Shillings and Sixpence.*

# LATIN viâ ENGLISH:

BEING THE

SECOND PART

OF

SPELLING TURNED ETYMOLOGY.

---

BY THE REV.

THOMAS KERCHEVER ARNOLD, M.A.

RECTOR OF LYNDON,

AND LATE FELLOW OF TRINITY COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE.

---

LONDON:

FRANCIS & JOHN RIVINGTON,

ST. PAUL'S CHURCH YARD, AND WATERLOO PLACE.

1852.

**LONDON :**  
**GILBERT AND RIVINGTON, PRINTERS,**  
**ST. JOHN'S SQUARE.**



## P R E F A C E.

---

NEARLY the whole vocabulary of the Latin language exists, in a slightly altered form, in the English language ; so that a thorough acquaintance with our own language *implies* a knowledge of Latin words, or, at least, of their roots.

It has long been my conviction, that if proper pains were taken to make a boy thoroughly acquainted with this portion of the English language, he might be taught both French and German in the years when he is now made to toil, dictionary in hand, at Latin and Greek ; and yet be as well prepared for a public school before he is thirteen, as it is possible that he should be now.

It is to assist in the study of this portion of the language, and thus to facilitate the acquisition of Latin, that the following little Work has been drawn up. As it is intended to be used by those who do not, as well as by those who do, learn Latin, the roots are given, not in their strictly scientific form, but as they really exist in English derivatives. The Latin words at the foot of the page should be learnt by those who are going to learn Latin.

T. K. A.

Lyndon, Dec. 22, 1851.



## DERIVATION OF ENGLISH WORDS.

---

### (a) Prefixes.

- 1 *Un, mis, for, with*, either give to a word the *opposite* of its proper notion, or a *bad* sense.

(a) *Un* signifies *not*; *mis* "insinuates some error" (= *ill, wrongly*); *for*<sup>1</sup> seems to mark *opposition*; *with* marks *opposition*. *For* occurs in *forbid, forsake, &c.*

(b) When *un* is prefixed to a present participle, it turns it into an adjective (*unpitying*). Before verbs it denotes the *undoing* of what was done: to *unbind, &c.*

- 2 *Be* usually gives a transitive signification to verbs. To *bestride, bemoan, &c.*

(a) *Out, over, and up*, retain their obvious meanings. *Over* implies *superiority* in *overcome*.

### (b) Terminations.

- 3 *Er*<sup>2</sup> (Anglo-Saxon: *or*, Latin) denotes the *doer* of an action. A *discover-er*; an *invent-or*.

---

<sup>1</sup> The German *ver*, distinct from *vor, fore*.

<sup>2</sup> A few in *er*, not appended to *verbal* roots, are not *agents*: *bolster, fodder*.

Nouns that end in *hood* and *head*, *ship*, *dom*, *th*, *t*, *ness*, 4 *y*, are mostly abstract substantives denoting a *quality*, *state*, *condition*, or the like. *Childhood*, *priesthood*, *the God-head*, *worship* (worthship), *friendship*, *kingdom*, *wisdom*, *worth*, *might*, *bravery*.

(a) Those in *ness* are abstract nouns formed from adjectives. A final *y* is changed into *i* before a syllabic termination : *likeli-hood*, *holiness*.

(b) The vowel sound of the root is often modified before *th* (*length*, *depth*, from *long*, *broad*) ; and there is frequently some further change, in the way of contraction or rejection ; as *mirth*, *truth*, from *merry*, *true*.

(c) "Not only in poetry, but also in popular language, the meanings of words in the abstract and concrete frequently run one into the other."—Buttmann.

*Ing* denotes the *doing* of an action, but sometimes the 5 *action done* : e. g. a *whipping*.

(a) The Anglo-Saxon *lac*, which also signified an *action*, *condition*, or *quality*, remains in *wedlock*. *Ric* or *rick*, and *wick*, especially denote *dominion* or *jurisdiction* : *bishopric*, *bailiwick*.

*Ful*, *ous*, *y*, denote the *possession* of the property ex- 6 pressed by the root.

(a) Adjectives with these endings are generally derived from substantives.

(b) Before *ful*, and all syllabic terminations beginning with a consonant, *y* is changed into *i* : as *plentiful*.

(c) *Ful* is the adjective *full*. Middleton writes these adjectives with *ll*.

*Ly* (Anglo-Saxon, *lic*) denotes *agreement with*, or *suit-* 7 *ableness to*, the notion of the root.

(a) These adjectives were formed by the addition of the adj. *like* to a substantive or adjective. *Like* is still retained in *child-like*, &c.

*Ish*, appended to substantives, expresses *manner* (like 8 *ly*) ; appended to adjectives, it diminishes the notion of the root : *childish*, *reddish* (= *rather like a child* ; *somewhat red*).

(a) *Ish* is also the termination of adjectives denoting country: *British, Irish*.

(b) When a language possesses two forms, they are soon discriminated in practice. Thus, *childlike* refers to the simplicity and innocence, *childish* to the weakness and folly, of a child.

- 9 *En* (*adj.*) denotes especially the material of which a thing is formed: *oaken, earthen, &c.*
- 10 *Ern* chiefly denotes the regions of the globe: *southern, eastern, &c.*
- 11 *Ed* indicates that a person or thing is furnished or provided with that which is expressed by the root: *horn, horned.*

(a) These adjectives resemble past participles, but there is often no verb to which they can be referred.

(b) This termination is often appended to an adjective and substantive, or even to two substantives (of which the first is used adjectively), thus forming a compound adjective. *Tender-hearted, pale-faced, pig-headed.*

(c) The same termination is added to other combinations: e.g. "an *out-of-humoured*, tea-drinking, arithmetic fop." Bashfulness is "the only *out-of-fashion'd* thing that is agreeable."—Wycherly.

(d) From some of these compound adjectives in *ed* are formed substantives in *ness*: as *stout-heartedness*.

- 12 *Ward* expresses *situation* or *direction*. A *forward* course; a *southward* direction.

*Ty* 'forms *tens* in numeration.' *Twenty, &c.*

- 13 *Less* implies the *absence* or *want* of what the root expresses. *Fearless.*
- 14 *Able* (properly a *Latin* termination: see below, 23), from having an English meaning, was readily received into the language, and used to form adjectives from our simplest words: as *drinkable*. Cudworth uses *knovable*; and Chillingworth *knovable, understandable, &c.* Tooke, ii. 488.

*En* is the simplest termination of our derivative verbs: 15 it is appended to nouns and adjectives, and denotes the *making* or *causing* what the root expresses. To *frighten*; to *quicken*.

(a) Several of these verbs have an *intransitive* meaning (to *grow* or *become* what the root expresses), as well as the *transitive* one which usually belongs to verbs of this class. 'The plot *thickens*.'

The terminations of English *diminutives* are *ling*, *kin*, 16 and *ock*. Duckling, lambkin, bullock.

(a) Diminutives express diminution, either simply or with some accessory notion, which is either that of *tenderness* and *endearment*, or that of *contempt*.

(b) Many diminutives, probably of endearment, were formed from Christian names, and have given rise to various surnames: Tomkin, Watkin (from *Wat* or *Walter*), Dicken, Hawkin, for *Halkin*, from *Hal*, *Henry*.

---

### *Principal Terminations of Words derived from Latin and Greek.*

"While the primary words in our language are almost 17 all Saxon; the secondary, as they may be called, are mostly of French, the tertiary of Latin origin." Phil. Mag. i. 654.

N.B. *Ce*, *æ*, *ph*, *rh*, *ch* (hard, as in *chemist*) and *y* as a *vowel* in any syllable but the last, mark many words that are formed from the Greek.

*Tion*, *sion*, *ure* (in Latin, *tio*, *sio*, *ura*) denote the *doing* 18 of the action expressed by the root.

(a) But they sometimes express the *result* of such an action; the *thing done*. A *fiction*, a *creature*, a *fixture*.

(b) "*Relative* has indeed, within my memory, by a ridiculous affectation of false and unfounded accuracy, crept forward into improper use, to the exclusion of *relation* . . . but these petty fopperies will pass away of themselves, and when the whim is over, we shall all find our *relations* again, as safe and sound as ever."—Tooke, ii. 496.

- 19 *Ity, ty, ice, ncy, nce, tude* mostly denote *quality* or *habit*; the *being* what the root (an adjective) expresses. *Atrocity, cruelty, avarice, constancy, elegance.*

(a) [These terminations answer to the Latin *itas, ia, ntia, tũdo*, all *fem.*]

- 20 *Tor, sor* is, as we have seen (3), the *doer* of an action; and *tor* has a corresponding feminine *triz*.

(a) Many in *or* (or *our*) after some other consonant (that is not *t* or *s*) express *qualities*.

(b) The Latin nouns in *or* end in *eur* in French; and, since they come to us from that language, "it will be well to leave such affectations as *honor* and *favor* to the great vulgar for their cards of invitation. In *honorable* and *favorable*, on the other hand, the *u* would be an intruder, having no more business in them than in the second syllables of *clamorous* or *laborious*; for they are not home-made derivatives, but were imported ready-formed from France. A like rule, as has been observed by others, would be the best guide for our choice, with regard to the use of *in* or *en* in compound words; that is to say, to write *in* where a word has come to us immediately from the Latin, *en* where it has past through the French. The same principle may be applied to a great variety of cases; and among other advantages of such a practice would be its supplying us at a glance with a mass of evidence concerning the history of our language."—Phil. Mag. i. 648.

- 21 *Ant* and *ent* (adj.) imply *doing*, and also *habit*; the *being* what the root requires. *Tolerant, patient.*

- 22 *Tive* and *sive* (Lat.), and *ic* (Greek) denote a *tendency* or *aptness* to do what the root expresses. *Detersive, purgative, cathartic.*

(a) *ic* is also a termination of *national names* (*Gallic*).

(b) Wilkins proposed *unwalkative* for—one *who cannot walk*. Tooke, ii. 493. Tooke calls these, *Potential Active Adjectives*.

- 23 *Able, ible* denote *fitness to be done*.

(a) Tooke calls these, *Potential Passive Adjectives*.

(b) But many English adjectives end in *ble*, that have simply the meaning of a habit. These come, not from the Latin *bilis*, but from the Italian *vole* (our *ful*), which the French turned into *ble* (as in *diable* from *diavolo*). So Tooke, ii. 485.

A few less common terminatives are *ose* = 'abounding in' (*verbose*); *ean* (Greek), 'belonging to persons' (*Epicurēan*, *Pythagorēan*); *īne* 'belonging to animals' (*canine*, *feline*), &c.

From adjectives are formed many abstract substantives. 24

From *ant*, *ent*, come substantives in *ancy*, *ency*; or *ance*, 25  
*ence*.

From adjectives in *able*, *ible*, are formed abstract substantives in *ability*, *ibility*; besides which, we have many abstracts from the Latin that end in *ty*, from the termination *tas* in that language. *Placability*, *sensibility*.

*Ize* (for which *ise* is often written, and *should be* written in verbs that come to us through the French), is the termination of verbs signifying to *make* or *produce* the property expressed by the root; and also to *be* or *have* that property. 27

(a) This is properly a Greek termination (as in *catechize*), but is appended to many adjectives that come to us from the Latin: *humanize*, &c. with which it signifies to *make*.

So many words are borrowed from Greek and Latin, that 28  
it is necessary to know the meaning of the prepositions of those languages.

(a) Latin prepositions, as used in compound words:

*Prefixes.*

*ab*, away, from.  
*ad*, to.  
*amb*, } round; about; on both  
*ambi-*, } sides.  
*ante*, before.  
*circum*, around.  
*con*, with; in some words completely.  
*contra*, against.  
*de*, down; away: in some words it adds the notion of disagreeableness or deterioration.  
*dis*, asunder; in different directions; away from; un-.  
*ex*, out of, thoroughly.  
*in*, into, on, against; with adjectives, not.  
*inter*, between, amongst.  
*intro*, within.  
*ob*, against: sometimes about.

*per*, through, thoroughly; (with adj.) very. It sometimes adds a bad meaning to the word.  
*post*, after.  
*præ*, before; (with adj.) very.  
*præter*, by.  
*pro*, forth, forwards.  
*re*, back, again, away, un-; (sometimes very, or forth from within.)  
*retro*, backwards.  
*sē*, without, apart from.  
*sub*, under, away from beneath, from below upwards, somewhat.  
*subter*, underneath, away from underneath.  
*super*, above.  
*trans*, across, through, over to the other side.

- 29 The final consonant of *ad*, *in*, *ob*, *sub*, is often changed, by *assimilation*, into the initial consonant of the word to which it is prefixed. *Annex*, *affect* (for *ad-nex*, *ad-fect*), &c.

(a) *E* or *ex* becomes *ef* before *f*: and *in* becomes *im* before *b*, *m*, *p*. Before *noble* it becomes *ig*<sup>3</sup>. *Imbibe*, *imminent*, *imprudent*, *ignoble*.

(b) *Trans* appears sometimes as *tra*: *traduce*.

- 30 The following are Greek prepositions:

*Amphi* . . . *around, on both sides. Amphitheatre.*

*Anti* . . . *against. Anti-christ, anti-jacobin.*

*Hyper* . . . *over, beyond, too. Hypercritical, too critical.*

*Hypo* . . . { *under. Hypothesis* (thēsis, a placing, that which is placed) that which is placed under, to support a theory; a supposition.

*Meta* . . . { denotes accompaniment, reversal, change.—To *metamorphose*, to change the shape.

*Para* . . . { *by, beyond, against* (contrariety; failure).—A *paralogism*, an argument against, or contrary to sound reasoning.

*Peri* . . . *round. Periphrasis, a circumlocution.*

*Syn* . . . . (by assimilation, *syl*, *sym*) *with, together.*

(a) *Syn* is *sym* before *b* and *p*. *Sympathy*, a suffering with, fellow-feeling; *symbol*.

(b) *A* (before a vowel, *an*),—*not, without. A-morphous, without shape, shapeless.*

---

<sup>3</sup> But this *g* really belongs to the root of the word, which was *gno*, not *no*.

# SPELLING TURNED ETYMOLOGY.

## PART II.

### LESSON I.

#### Key-words.

#### Latin Roots.

- 1 ACID-ITY : *sour-ness.*      acid-, *sour.*  
An ACRID taste : a *sharp,*      acr-, *bitingly sharp, acrid.*  
    biting taste.  
With much ACERB-ITY :      acerb-, *sour ; of a rough, bit-*  
    with much *sourness,*      *ter sourness.*  
    *bitterness.*  
An ACUTE man : a *sharp*      acu-, acut-, *sharpen.*  
    man.  
ADULA-TION : *flattery.*      adūla-, adulāt, *flatter*<sup>1</sup>.

#### EXERCISE 1.

- 2 Sour ? (ac-id.) Sourness ? (acid-ity.) Sharp-to-the  
taste ? (acr-id.) Biting sharpness ? (acr-i-tude.)  
Sharpness, from root *acr-*, as an habitual temper of  
mind ? (acr-i-mony.) Adj. from *acrimony* ? (acrimo-  
nious.) Adv. from *acrimonious* ? (acrimonious-ly.)  
Root of words relating to what is *bitterly sour* ?  
(acerb-) Abstr. subst. from r. *acerb-* ? (acerb-ity.)  
Put *acerb-* into its verb-form. (acerb-ate.) To

<sup>1</sup> Acidus, *sour.* Acer, *sharp, vigorous.* Acerbus, *sour, bitter.* Acutus, *sharp.* Adulari, *to flatter.*



make-thoroughly-sour, from root *acerb-*? (to ex-acerbate.) Sharp? (acute.) Of what kind of *sharpness* is *acute* used? (Of sharpness of *mind*: and of a sharp *angle*.) Abstr. subst. and adv. from *acute*? (acute-*ness*, acute-*ly*.) Is there any other form for *sharpness* of mind, besides *acuteness*? (*Yes*: acū-men.) Roots of words relating to *flattering*? (*adula*, *adulat-*.) Flattery? (*adulat-ion*.) Abounding-in-flattery? (*adulat-ory*.) Put *r. acid-* into a diminutive form. (*acid-ul-*.) To-make-rather-acid? (to acid-ul-ate.)

## LESSON II.

### Key-words.

### Latin Roots.

- 3 (1.) AN EQUAL mind: an æqu-<sup>2</sup>, *equal*, *even*.  
even mind.
- (2.) EMULATION: honor- æmul-, *rivalling*.  
able *rivalry*.  
adulter-, *adulterer*.

### EXERCISE 2.

- 4 *Even-ness* or fairness, from root æqu-? (equ-ity.) Abstr. subst. to mean state-of-being-equal? (equal-ity.) To make-equal? (to equal-ize.) Made-even? (équ-able.) Of what kind of *even* things is *equable* used? (Of an *even* course, and of an *even* temper.) Abstr. subst. from *equable*? (equability.) Made-equal-to-? (ád-equate.) What then does *ád-equate* mean? (*Made equal* to the thing required: hence *sufficient* for the purpose required.) Equal-together? (co-equal.) Not-equal? (*un-equal*.) Not-equally? (*un-equal-ly*.) Not-equality? (in-equality.) What may *equi-* become, when a preposition is put before it? (*iqui-*.) Not-equity? (*in-iquity*.) Adj. from *iniquity*? (*in-iquitous*.)

<sup>2</sup> *Æquus*, *even*, *equal*. *Æmulari*, to *emulate*. *Adulter*, *adulterer*.

Give the English adjective from *æmul-*. (emul-ous.) Abstr. subst. and adv. from *emulous*? (emulousness, emulously.) Put *æmul-* into its verb-form. (emulate.) Act of *emulating*: (emulation.) How does *emulation* differ from *envy*? (Emulation is without any bad feeling towards our competitors, when they are successful.) The sin-committed-by-the-adulterer? (adultery.) Put *adulter-* into its verb form? (to adulterate.) Abstr. subst. from *adulterate*? (adulteration.) What is to *adulterate* wares? (to make them *impure* by mixing something else with them.)

---

- 5 **EQUILIBRIUM**: state of being *balanced equally* [*æqui-*, r. of words meaning *even*; *libra*, r. of words relating to *balance*].

**EQUINOX**: time when the day and night are of equal length [*æqui-*, r. of words meaning *even* or *equal*; *nox*, *night*, r. *noct.*]

---

- 6 When are the day and night equal? (about the 21st of March, and the 23rd of September.) What is the March *equinox* called? (The *vernal* equinox: *ver*, *spring*.) What is the September *equinox* called? (The *autumnal* equinox: *auctumnus*, *autumn*.) Adj. from *equinox*? (equi-noct-ial.)
- 

### LESSON III.

#### Key-words.

- 7 **AGR-I-CULTURE**: *field-culture*: tilling of *fields*.

**Ag-ile**: *able to do*: nimble.

**ESTIMATE**.

#### Latin Roots.

*agr-*, *field*<sup>2</sup>.

*ag-*, *do, act, drive*.

*æstima-*, *to value, estimate*.

<sup>2</sup> *Ager, field. Agere, to do, to drive. Æstimare, to value.*

## EXERCISE 3.

- 8 Abstr. subst. from *estimate*? (estimation.) One-who-pursues-agriculture? (agriculturist.) Adj. from *agriculture*? (agricultur-al.) Relating-to-the-field? (agr-arian.) What are '*agrarian*' disturbances? (Disturbances in country places arising from disputes between landlords or farmers and their labourers.) Thing-done? (act.) Fit-to-act? (agile or active.) Abstr. subst. from agile? (agility.) From active? (activity.) Adv. from active? (actively.) Not-active? (in-active.) Subst. to express *doing* or *thing done*? (action.) Liable-to-an-action, that is, a-law-suit? (actionable.) To-do-out of a man? (to exact.) What is to *ex-act* money? (To get it out of a man by a violent, unjust claim.) Abstr. subst. from to *exact*? (ex-action.) Thoroughly-done? (ex-act.) Abstr. subst. and adv. from *exact*? (exactness, exactly.) To do-through? (to trans-act.) What is to *trans-act* a business? (to carry it through; to do it.) Subst. to express the *act* from *transact*? (trans-act-ion.)

- 9 *Agr-*: *Per-egr-i-nation*: the travelling in foreign lands [*per*, through; *agr-*, root of words meaning *field*].

*Ag-*: (1) *Act-u-al*: really *done*; *real*, opposed to what is only *intended* or *imaginary*.

(2) *Act-u-ary*: one who *does* the work of calculation for insurance-offices, &c.

## LESSON IV.

(Derivative roots from *ag-*, which becomes *ig-* after a prefix.)

Key-words.

Latin Roots.

- 10 To AGITATE: to *shake* ag-it-a-, *shake*.  
about.

The COGENCY of an argument: its power to *compel* belief.

To *ex-cogitate* a stragem: to *think* it out, or make it out by *thinking*.

AMB-IGUOUS words: words whose meaning is *doubtful*.

To EXAMINE: to *weigh* in a balance.

cog- } *compel*.  
co-act- }

[*cog- for co-ig-*].

cogit-a-, *think*.

[*cogita- for co-agita-*].

amb-igu-, *ambiguous, doubtful*<sup>4</sup>.

exāmin-<sup>5</sup>, *the tongue of a balance*.

prodig-<sup>6</sup>, *prodigal*.

#### EXERCISE 4.

- 11 Compelling? (cogent.) Adv. from cogent? (cogently.) Abstr. subst. from *cogent*? (cogency.) Compulsion? (coaction.) Having-the-nature-of-compelling? (coactive.) One-who-agitates? (agitator.) Act of agitating; or state-of-being-agitated? (agitation.) Act of thinking? thought? (cogitation.) Relating-to-thought? (cogitative.) Not-thinkingness, from r. *cogita-*? (incogita-ncy.) Abstr. subst. from r. *ambigu-*? (ambiguity.) Adv. from *ambiguous*? (ambiguously.) One-who-examines? (an examiner.) Put r. *examin-* into its verb-roots? (examina-, examinat-.) Subst. to express the *act* or *thing* from r. *examinat-*? (examination.) Abstr. subst. from *prodigal*? (prodigality.) Adv. from *prodigal*? (prodigally.)

#### LESSON V.

##### Key-words.

##### Latin Roots.

- 2 AN ALIEN: a *foreigner*: aliēn-, *not one's own*; *another's*.  
one who does not belong to *our own country*.

<sup>4</sup> Agitare, to *shake*. Cogĕre, to *compel*. Cōgitare, to *think*. Ambig-uus (properly, '*doing in both directions*'), *doubtful*. Prodigus, *prodigal*.

<sup>5</sup> Exāmen, for *ex-agi-men*; properly, that which *drives out*, or is *driven out*: hence the *tongue* of the balance, which is *driven out* of its place when the weights are unequal.

<sup>6</sup> Prod-ig-us, *driving forward*: hence *expensive, lavish, wasteful*.

To prove an ALIBI: to ali-, *other*.  
 prove that one was in  
*another* place.

ALIMENTARY particles: al-, *nourish, support*.  
 particles that have the  
 property of *nourishing*.

ALTERNATELY: first one, } alter-, *another of two*.  
 and then another. } altern-, *alternate*.

The ALTITUDE of a alt-, *high*<sup>7</sup>.  
 mountain: the *height*  
 of a mountain.

#### EXERCISE 5.

- 13 To make- [something] -another's? (to alienate it.)  
 What is to *alienate* property? (to part with it to  
*another*.) Subst. to express the *action* or the *thing*  
*done* from *alienate*? (alienation.) Capable-of-being-  
 alienated? (alienable.) Not-alienable? (in-alienable.)  
 Nourishment? (aliment.) Adj. from *aliment*? (ali-  
 mentary or alimantal.) Verb root of *altern*-? (alter-  
 na-, alternat-.) Act of *alternating*? (alternation.)  
 Verb-roots of *alter*-? (altera-, alterat-.) Is to *alte-*  
*rate* the verb in use? (No: to *alter*: but the deriva-  
 tives are formed regularly from *altera*-, *alterat*-.)  
 Act-of-altering: or state-of-being-altered? (altera-  
 tion.) Having-the-nature-of-altering? (alterative.)  
 What is *alterative* medicine? (Medicine that *alters*  
 an unhealthy state of body gradually, but effectually.)  
 Is *alt*- or *altat*- the verb form in use for *alt*-? (*alt*-  
 in the verb: *altat*- in the substantive.) To [*make*]  
*high-out* [of something else]? (to ex-alt.) Subst. to  
 express the *action* or the *thing-done* from *exalt*?  
 (ex-altation.) Lifted-up-high? (exalted.) Height?  
 (altitude.)

- 14 al-, (1) *Alimony*: the portion of a husband's estate  
 which is allowed by the ecclesiastical court  
 for the *support* of a wife who is separated  
 from her husband, but not for adultery.

<sup>7</sup> Alienus, *belonging to another*. Alius, *another, different*. Alere, to  
*nourish, support*. Alternus, *alternate*. Altus, *high*.

- (2) To *co-al-esce*; to grow together into one body: hence a *co-al-ition*, a joining-together of two political parties [*con-, co-, together*].  
*alter-, Altercation*: the having *one more* word, each party *in turn*; wrangling.  
*alt-, Alt-ar*; a *raised* structure on which sacrifice is offered.

## LESSON VI.

*Key-words.**Latin Roots.*

- 14 AM-ATORY poems: *love* songs.  
 AN AMICABLE contest: a *friendly* contest.  
 AMPLE: abundantly large.  
 ANGUISH: choking grief.  
 ANGUL-AR: having angles.  
 TO ANIMATE: to put some *soul* or *life* into a person.  
 So much per ANNUM: so much a *year*.
- { ama-<sup>s</sup>, to love.  
 am-, love.  
 amīc-, a friend.  
 ampl-, large, ample.  
 ang-,  
 anx (=ang-s) } to throttle.  
 angul-, angle, corner.  
 anim-, the breath of life;  
 the soul.  
 anim-, the mind.  
 ann-, a year.

## EXERCISE 6.

- 15 Full-of-love? (*amorous*.) Abstr. subst. from *amorous*? (*amorousness*.) In-a-friendly-manner? (*amicably*.) To-make-ample? (to *amplify*.) How is to *amplify* used? (of making a narrative fuller.) Act of *amplifying*: or state of being *amplified*? (*amplification*.) Abstr. subst. from *ampl-us*? (*amplitude*.) Not-friendly? (*in-imīc-al*.) Act of *animating*: or state of being *animated*? (*animation*.) Having-no-animation? (*in-anim-ate*.) Having-one-mind? (*un-anim-ous*.) Abstr. subst. from *unanimous*? (*un-anim-ity*.) Abstr. subst. from *angular*? (*angularity*.) Having-

<sup>s</sup> Amare, to love. Amicus, friendly, a friend. Amplus, abundant, large. Angere, to choke, to throttle. Angulus, angle. Anima, breath, soul. Animus, mind. Annus, year.

three-angles? (triangular.) Yearly? (annually.) A yearly festival? (an annual festival.)

- 16 *Am-*: (1) To *en-am-our* (Fr.), to make a person in love.  
*Ama*: (2) An *amateur* (Fr.), one who is *fond* of a thing, but does not follow it up as his profession.  
*Amic-*: *En-mity* [for *in-(a)mity, in-mity*], hostility, hatred.  
*Ang-*: *Anxious*, full of painful, tormenting care.  
*Anim-*: (1) to *anim-ad-vert* upon any thing; to turn one's *mind* or *attention* to any thing: hence to *notice* it with severity [*vert-, vers-*, to turn: *ad*, to].  
 (2) *Anim-al*: a being that has the *breath* of life.  
*Ann-*: (1) An *anni-vers-ary*: when the *year* turns round, and brings back a memorable day [*vert-, vers-*, to turn].  
 (2) *Annals*: a history of the events of each *year*.  
 [Obs. In compound adjectives, *annual* becomes *ennial*.]  
 (3) *Bi-ennial*: lasting for *two years*. [*Bis*, twice.]  
 (4) *Per-ennial*: lasting *through* years: that is, for many years. [*Per*, through.]

- 
- 17 Abstr. subst. from *anxi-ous*? (anxiety.) Act-of-*anim-adverting*? (animadversion.) Small-animal? (animalcule.) A writer-of-annals? (an annalist.) Lasting-for-ten-years, *dec-*, short for *decem*, being 'ten'? (dec-ennial.)
- 

## LESSON VII.

*Key-words.*

*Latin Roots.*

- 18 ANTIQUITY: *ancientness*; antiqu-, *ancient*.  
*ancient* time.

- APTITUDE : *fitness*.      apt-, apt, fit.  
 AQUEOUS particles : *wa-* aqu-, *water*.  
    *tery* particles.  
 ARABLE land : land that ara-, to *plough*.  
    may be *ploughed*.  
 ARBOUR : bower of *trees*. arbör-, *tree*.  
 ARBITRATION : the deci- arbitr-, *umpire* ?  
    sion of an *umpire*.

## EXERCISE 7.

- 19 Ancient? (antique.) To make-old? (to antique.)  
 Made-old? (antiquated.) Relating-to-antiquities?  
 (antiquarian.) What is *an antiquarian*? (One who  
 is fond of antiquities, and the studies connected  
 with them.) What is an *antique*? (A piece of  
 ancient sculpture, or other work of art.) To  
 fit-to? (to ad-apt.) Act-of-fitting-to: or state of  
 being fitted-to? (ad-aptation.) Fitly? (aptly.) Fit-  
 ness? (aptness.) What do you mean by a pupil's  
*aptness*? (His *fitness* or readiness to learn.) Not-  
 fitly? (un-aptly.) Un-fitness? (in-aptitude.) Un-  
 fit? (un-apt or in-ept.) What does *in-ept* mean?  
 (foolish: silly.) Living-in-the-water: relating to the  
 water? (aquatic.) Abounding-in-trees? (arboreous.)  
 To act-as-umpire? (to arbitrate.) One-who-arbi-  
 trates? (an arbitrator.) Decision-of-an-arbiter?  
 (arbitrament.)

- 
- 20 *Aqu-*: (1) *Terr-aqueous*: consisting of *land* and  
    *water* [terra, land, earth].  
 (2) *Aqu-e-duct*: bridge for conveying *water*  
    [duc-, duct, to lead].  
*Arbitr-*: *arbitrary* power: power limited by nothing  
 but the *decision* of one's own will.

- 
- 21 Abstr. subst. and adv. from *arbitrary*? (arbitrariness,  
 arbitrarily).

<sup>9</sup> Antiquus, ancient. Aptus, fit. Aqua, water. Arare, to plough.  
 Arbor, tree. Arbitrator, umpire.



## LESSON VIII.

*Key-words.**Latin Roots* <sup>1</sup>.

- 22 **ARDENT** friendship:      ard-e, to burn (intrans.)  
     *warm, fervent friend-*  
     *ship.*

An **ARDUOUS** task: a *high*      ardu-, *high, lofty.*  
     and so difficult task.

An **ARID** plain: a *dry*, { *āre-, to be dry.*  
     *parched plain.*      { *arid-, dry.*

**ARGUMENT.**      argu-, to prove.

(From root *arcē-* [after a prefix, *ercē*], to confine.)

- 23 **CO-ERC-IVE** measures: co-erce-, to restrain.  
     *measures for restrain-*  
     *ing.*

**EX-ERC-ISE**, properly to      ex-erc-e-, to exercise, *prac-*  
     *'restrain thoroughly:'*      *tise.*  
     to practise<sup>2</sup>.

## EXERCISE 8.

- 24 Heat, fervency? (ardour.) Adv. from *ardent*?  
     (ardent-ly.) Abstr. subst. from *ardent*? (ardency.)  
     Abstr. subst. from *arduous*? (arduous-ness.) Dry-  
     ness? (aridity.) To make-dry? (to are-fy.) Act-  
     of-making-dry? (arefaction.)
- 25 Put *argument* into its verb-form. (argumentate.) Abstr.  
     subst. from *argumentate*? (argumentation.) Relating-  
     to -*argument*? or -*abounding-in-arguments*? (argu-  
     mentative.) Abstr. subst. from *coerc-e*? (coercion.)

- 
- 26 *Are*: arēna, sand. The Roman gladiators were a sort  
     of prize-fighters, who fought on a stage covered with

<sup>1</sup> Ardēre, to burn (intrans.). Arduus, lofty. Arēre, to be dry or parched. Aridus, dry. Arguere, to prove. Coercēre, to restrain. Exercēre, to exercise.

<sup>2</sup> Because all *practising* implies a restraint put upon the will; and also other restrictions as to time, place, manner, &c.

*sand*. Hence *arēna* is used for a *battle-field*, or *stage* on which a combat may take place.

- 27 *Sandy*? consisting of sand? or abounding in sand? (arenaceous.)

## LESSON IX.

### Key-words.

### Latin Roots.

#### 28 ARMS.

arm-, *arms*.

#### ART.

art-, *art*.

ARTICULATE speech:  
speech properly *joint-*  
*ed*, that is, *syllabled*.

{ art-, *joint*.  
{ articul-, *little joint*.

ASININE: *ass-like*.

asin-, *ass*.

ASPERITY: *roughness*.

asper-, *rough*.

ATROCITY: *savageness of*  
*conduct, &c.*

atrōc-, *fierce, savage*.

(From root *art-*, in composition *ert*.)

#### 29 INERT.

in-ert-, *inactive, sluggish* <sup>3</sup>.

## EXERCISE 9.

- 30 Put *asper* into its verb form? (*asperate*.) Strengthen *asperate* by a prefix meaning *thoroughly*? (to *exasperate*.) What does *to exasperate* mean? (To make *thoroughly-rough*: hence to *ruffle a man's temper violently*: to make him *bitterly-angry*.) Abstr. subst. from *exasperate*? (*ex-asperation*.) Adj. from *r. atrōc-*? (*atrocious*.) Abstr. subst. from *atrocious*? (*atroc-ity or atrocious-ness*.) Adv. from *atrocious*? (*atrociously*.) Adv. and abstr. subst. from *inert*? (*inert-ly, inert-ness*.) What is an *art-i-fice* <sup>4</sup>? (*pro-*

<sup>3</sup> Arma, *arms*. Ars, *art*. Asinus, *ass*. Artus, *joint*. Articulus, *little joint*. Asper, *rough*. Atrox, *fierce*. Iners, *sluggish*.

<sup>4</sup> fac-, *faci-*, in composition *fic-*, *fici-*, to make.

perly 'the making of an *art* or *trick*.' What is the root of the *fice* in *art-i-fice*? (*Fac*-, in composition, *fic*-, to do.) Made-by-art (artificial.) Abstr. subst. from *artificial*? (artificialness.) Adv. from *artificial*? (artificially.) To take-away a-man's-arms? (to disarm him.) Put *articul*- into its verb form. (To *articulate*.) Jointed? (articulate, of *language*: articulated, of *stalks that are jointed like reeds*, &c.) Not-jointed? (in-articulate.) In-an-articulate-manner? (articulately.) Act-of-articulating? (articulation.) In-an-inarticulate-manner? (inarticulately.)

---

*Articul*-: *Article*, a little word in grammar. An *article* is also a little portion noted down in a deed or treaty.

---

## LESSON X.

### Key-words.

### Latin Roots.

31 AUD-ACIOUS: *bold*, rashly or imprudently *bold*.

audē-, to dare.

An AUDIBLE voice: a voice that may be heard.

aud-i-, to hear.

To AUGMENT a salary: to increase it.

aug-e-, } to increase.  
auc-t-, }

An AUGUR: properly a soothsayer, who foretold the future from the chirping of birds.

augur-, an *augur*.

AUGUST: *venerable*, &c.

Augustus, the name of a Roman emperor.

An AURIST: an ear-doctor.

aur-, the ear<sup>s</sup>.

## EXERCISE 10.

32 Abstr. subst. from *audacious*? (audacity.) What is the usual meaning of words in *acious*, *acity*? (They

<sup>s</sup> Audēre, to dare. Audire, to hear. Augēre, to increase. Augur, an augur. Auris, ear.

generally imply a *faulty excess* of the thing in question.) Give another instance. (pugnacious, *too much inclined to fight*.) Adv. from *audacious*? (audaciously.) Is there any abstr. subst. from *audacious* besides *audacity*? (Yes: *audacious-ness*.) One-who-hears? (an auditor.) A-body-of-hearers? (an auditory.) A hearing? (an audience: *used also of* a body of hearers.) Unable-to-be-heard? (in-audible.) Abstr. subst. and adv. from *audible*? (audibility: *audib-ly*.) Put to *augment* into a *longer* verb-form. (*augment-ate*.) Act-of-augmenting? (*augmentation*.) To *augur*? (To foretell from some sign or prognostic.) Relating-to-an-*augur*? (*augural*.) Put *aur-* into its diminutive form. (*auricul-*.) What is the English diminutive from *auricul-*? (*auricle*.) What are the *auricles* of the heart? (Two muscular bags at the base of it.) Why is the flower *auricula* so called? (From its *ear-shaped* leaves.) Act-of-increasing? (*auct-ion*.) What is an *auction*? (A sale where each bidder *increases* the offer made just before by another person.) What is the person called who-manages-an-auction? (an auctioneer.) What other name of a person ends in *eer*? (a charioteer.)

---

33 *Aud-i*: *ob-edi-ence* (for *ob-audi-ence*); the act of *hearkening to* (an order, request, &c.) and so *obeying* it.

*Augē-* } (1) An *auxiliary* (for *aug-s-iliary*) verb, a  
*Auct-* } *helping* verb: *auxiliary* troops, foreign troops that are engaged in *aid* of one's own troops.

(2) *Author* (for *auct-tor*), properly *one who increases*: hence *one who increases* the stock of knowledge in a country: it is also used of *one who increases* the probability of a plan's being adopted by proposing it: hence the *first proposer* of a plan or scheme.

(3) *Authority* (for *auct-ority*), the influence which a powerful adviser has.

- (4) *Aut-umn* (for *auct-umn*), the time of the year when our stock of food is *increased* by the harvest.

*Augur-*: *In-augur-ate*: to admit a person to an office with ceremonies that may *augur well* for his good conduct, success, &c.<sup>6</sup>

- 34 Relating-to-obedience? (obediential.) Abstr. subst. from *obedient*? (obedience.) Adv. from *obedient*? (obediently.) To-give-authority-for-doing a thing? (to authorize it.) Act-of-authorizing it? (authorization.) What is an *authoritative* manner? (The manner of one having *authority*: a *commanding* manner.)

## LESSON XI.

### Key-words.

### Latin Roots<sup>7</sup>.

- |   |                       |
|---|-----------------------|
| 35 AUSTERE.   | austēr-, dry, severe. |
| AVIDITY: the eagerness of one who <i>longs</i> for any thing. | av-ē-; o long.        |
| AN AVIARY: a place to keep <i>birds</i> in.                   | av-, bird.            |
| AXLE.   | ax-, axle; axis.      |

## EXERCISE 11.

- 36 Abstr. subst. from r. *auster-*? (austerity.) Is there any other form? (Yes: *austere-ness*.) Adv. from *austere*? (austerely.)

<sup>6</sup> Auctoritas, authority, influence. Auctor, adviser, proposer, author (of a plan, &c.). Auctumnus, autumn.

<sup>7</sup> Austērus, dry, severe. Avēre, to long for (avidus, greedy; avārus, avaricious). Avis, bird. Axis, axle.

- 37 *Av-*: *Auspice* (for *av-i-spice*: *avis*, bird: *speci-*, in composition *speci-*, root, of verb meaning to *look at*): a sign of the future obtained from *looking at birds*; i. e. observing their manner of flight, of pecking, &c. At Rome no great business was undertaken without consulting the *auspices*. If a general was going to give battle to the enemy, the *auspices* were observed; and the soldiers were said to fight *under the auspices* of that general; so that to do any thing *under any body's auspices* means to do it under him as the leader, &c.

*Av-e*: *avarice*: a greedy *longing* for money.

- 38 Adj. from *auspice*? (*auspicious*.) What does *auspicious* mean? (Favorable in appearance, promising good luck.) Not-*auspicious*? (in-*auspicious*.) What then does *inauspicious* mean? (Ill-omened: threatening bad success.) Advv. from *auspicious* and *inauspicious*? (*auspiciously*: *inauspiciously*.) Adj. from *avarice*? (*avaricious*.) Adv. from *avaricious*? (*avariciously*.)

## LESSON XII.

### Key-words.

### Latin Roots<sup>8</sup>.

#### 39 BACCHUS.

Bacchus, the God of wine.

A BARBER: one who trims or shaves the beard.

barb-, beard.

A BARBARIAN: an uncivilized foreigner.

barbar-, not Greek: barbarian.

The BEATITUDES: the sentences in which our Lord pronounced certain people *happy*.

beāt-, happy.

<sup>8</sup> Barba, beard. Barbarus, uncivilized, barbarian. Beatus, happy. Bellum, war (gerere, to carry: to wage). Bestia, beast, any animal but man.

The BELL-I-GERENTS: bell-, war.  
the parties *waging war*  
[gerere, to carry: to  
carry on].

BESTIAL: *bestly*. besti-, *beast*.

### EXERCISE 12.

- 40 A *barbarous*, i. e. uncivilized person? (a barbarian.)  
Abstr. subst. from r. *barbar-*? (barbarity.) What  
forms of adjectives are there from r. *barbar-*? (bar-  
barous, barbarian, barbaric<sup>9</sup>.) To-make-barbarous?  
(to barbarize.) To make-happy? (to beatify.) Subst.  
from *beatify*? (beatification.) Adj. from *beatify*? (bea-  
tific or beatifical.) The adj. *beatific* is hardly used,  
except in the phrase the *beatific vision*: what does  
this phrase mean? (The 'happy-making sight' of  
Almighty God, which good men will enjoy in the  
next world.)—To war-again? (to re-bel.) What  
does to *rebel* mean, as now used? (To fight against  
a power to which one has been legally subject.)  
Abstr. subst. from *rebel*? (rebellion.) Adj. and adv.  
from *rebel*? (rebellious; rebelliously.) War-waging?  
(bell-i-gerent.) Abstr. subst. from r. *beat-*? (beati-  
tude = *happiness*.) Abstr. subst. from *bestial*? (bes-  
tiality.)

- 41 *Bacchus*: a *bacchanalian*; properly a worshipper of  
Bacchus: a drunken reveller.

*Barbar-*: *barbarism*: the barbarous nature or state:  
*ism* is a Greek termination. A *barbarism*  
is a fault against grammar, or the proper  
use of words.

### LESSON XIII.

*Key-words.*

*Latin Roots.*

- 42 A WINE - BIBBER: a bib-, to drink.  
*drinker of much wine.*

<sup>9</sup> The last is properly a Greek termination.

BILE.	bīl-, <i>bile</i> .
BLAND.	bland-, <i>soft in manner</i> .
A magnum-BONUM: a great and <i>good</i> plum [mag- nus, <i>great</i> ].	bon-, <i>good</i> .
"BREVITY is the soul of wit:" <i>shortness, con- ciseness</i> .	brev-, <i>short</i> .
BRUTAL: <i>senseless</i> like a <i>beast</i> .	brut-, <i>senseless; stupid</i> .
COM-BINE: to join to- gether [com = <i>toge- ther</i> ].	bin-, <i>two (at a time); two (for each)</i> <sup>10</sup> .

## EXERCISE 13.

- 43 Given-to-drink-in? (bibaceous; bibulous.) To drink-in? (to imbibe.) Adj. from *bīl*-? (bilious.) Abstr. subst. from *bilious*? (biliousness.) What is the meaning of *antibilious* pills? (Pills to carry off the bile: *anti* means '*against*.)' What is the meaning of a *blandishment*? (a soft winning way, intended to coax or seduce a person.) A short-collection? (a *breviary*.) What is a *breviary* now used for? (the Prayer-book of the Roman Catholics.) Adj. from *brūt*-? (brutal.) Abstr. subst. from *brutal*? (brutality.)

- 
- 44 *Bib*:-: *bibber*, one who is perpetually drinking.  
*Brev*:-: to *ab-breviate*: to abridge: to reduce a work of some length to a shorter compass.  
*Bil*:-: the *biliary* ducts, the channels by which the bile is carried off.—The *biliary secretion*: the secretion of the bile; that is, its *separation* from the rest of the food taken.  
*Bon*:-: (1) *bounty* [for *bon-ity*], generosity, liberality.

<sup>10</sup> Bibēre (bībi, bibitum), to *drink*. Bilis, *bile*. Blandus, *bland*. Bonus, *good*. Brevis, *short*. Brutus, *heavy, inert; stupid*. Bini, *two at a time; or, two to each*.



(2) *benign* [for *bon-i-gen*: *gen*, root of words that relate to *being born*], properly '*coming of a good stock*,' then *kind, gracious*.

- 45 Adj. from *benign*-? (benignant.) Abstr. subst. from *r. benign*-? (benignity.) Abstr. subst. from *combine*? (*combination*.) Does *combination* mean any thing beside the *act-of-combining*? (Yes: the thing formed by combination.)

- 46 What is the English form of *brev*-? (brief.) Shortness? (*briefness* or *brevity*.) Shortly? (*briefly*.) What is a lawyer's '*brief*'? (The *short* heads of the case drawn up by the attorney for the use of the barrister.) Without-a-brief? (*briefless*.) Form another adj. from *r. benign*. (benignant.) Abstr. subst. from *benign*? (benign-ity.)

#### LESSON XIV.

##### Key-words.

##### Latin Roots<sup>1</sup>.

- 47 A loud CACHINNATION: *cachinn*-, *horse-laugh*.  
a *horse-laugh*.

CADENCE: the *fall* of      *cad*-, } *cās*-, to *fall*.  
the voice: sometimes    *cīd*-, }  
its general modulation.

CADAVER-OUS: looking      *cadaver*-, *corpse*.  
like a body that has  
*fallen* down dead:  
like a corpse.

(Compound roots from *cad*.)

- 48 A DE-CID-UOUS cypress: *de-cīd*-, to *fall down*.  
a cypress whose leaves  
*fall-down* in the au-  
tumn.

<sup>1</sup> Cachinnus, *loud laugh*. Cadere (*cēcīdī*, *cāsum*), to *fall*. De-cīdere, to *fall down*. In-cīdere, to *fall into*. Ac-cīdere (for ad-cīdere), to *fall to* (one); to *happen*. Occīdere, to *set* (of the sun, &c.). Ocasio, opportunity. Cadaver, *carcase*.

AN AC-CID-ENT: an event ac-cid-, *to happen*.  
that *falls at one*: that  
*falls out*.

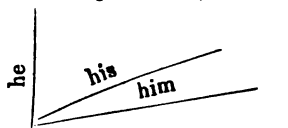
AN IN-CID-ENT: an oc- incid-, *to fall in*.  
currence that *falls in*  
one's way.

AN OC-CAS-ION: properly {oc-cid-} *to fall: to set* (of  
a 'falling against' {oc-cas-} the sun,) &c.  
one: then a state of  
things that occurs: an  
opportunity.

## EXERCISE 14.

- 49 A falling? (a case<sup>2</sup>.) How is *case* used? (As the state of things that *falls out*.) Is the *case* that *receives* any thing, as a spectacle-*case*, a book-*case*, derived from *cad-*, *cas-*? (Probably not, but from the r. *cist-*, *chest*, which in German is *Kasten*<sup>3</sup>.) Adj. from *accident*? (accidental;) from *incident*? (incidental.) What is an *incidental* remark? (A remark that *falls in*, that is, is *let to drop in*, though it does not belong to the main subject:—a *by* remark.) Adverbs from *accidental*, *incidental*? (accidentally, incidentally.) Adj. from *occasion*? (occasional.) Adv. from *occasional*? (occasionally.) Why is Queen Elizabeth called in the Preface to the English Bible a 'bright *occidental* star'? (Because she had *set* in the west, that is, *was dead*, when the Preface was written.) To fall-in-together? (to co-in-cide.) What does to

<sup>2</sup> A grammatical case is so called, because the old grammarians wrote the word itself in a perpendicular line, and the other *cases* as *falling* from it at different angles. Thus,



<sup>3</sup> The German forms are *Kasten*, and *Kiste*: supposing the *t* dropt, we get *Kasen* from *Kase*. A *case* may, however, be that which *falls* upon a thing, and so *covers* it: but this seems to me less probable.

*co-in-cide* mean? (To fall together into the same space; and so (1) to happen at the same time, (2) to agree together in opinion.) Falling-together? (coincident.) Subst. from *coincident*? (*co-in-cid ence*.)

- 
- 50 *Cad-:* } (1) *cas-ual*, *falling* out accidentally: acci-  
*Cas-:* } dental. A *cas-ualty* is a fatal accident.  
 (2) *casu-ist*, one who decides *cases* of conscience.
- 

- 51 What does *casual* mean? (50.) Form an adv. from *casual*? (*casually*.) What is a *casualty*? (50.) What is a *casuist*? (50.) What is *casuistry*? (Determining *cases of conscience*: that is, determining whether an action is *right* or *wrong*.)
- 

## LESSON XV.

A T sound (t, d) is generally thrown away before s: not *cæd-s*, but *cæs*; not *cîd-s*, but *cîs*.

### Key-words.

### Latin Roots<sup>4</sup>.

- 52 HOMICIDE: one who has  
*smitten* (= slain) a  
*man*. { *cæd-*, *cæs-* { to *smile*, to  
*cîd-*, *cîs-*, { *slay*, (in the  
 compounds)  
 to *cut*.

CELIBACY: *unmarried* *cælib-*, *unmarried*.  
 state; used of it, when  
 it is *voluntarily* ad-  
 opted from a religious  
 motive.

### CEREMONY.

*cærimoni-*, *religious cere-*  
*mony*.

<sup>4</sup> *Cædere*, to cut with a whip, &c.: *smile*, *slay* (ex-*cîdere*, cut out; *incidere*, cut into; circum-*cîdere*, cut round). *Cælebs*, *unmarried*. *Cæruleus*, *cerulean*, *dark-blue*. *Cærimonia*, a *religious rite*, *ceremony*, &c. *Calamitas*, *calamity*. *Calère*, to be hot. *Callus*, *hard skin*.

CERULEAN.	cærule-, <i>cerulean</i> , <i>dark-blue</i> .
CALAMITY.	calamitat- <sup>5</sup> , <i>calamity</i> .
CALORIC : <i>heat</i> .	cal-ē, <i>to be hot</i> .
CALLOUS skin ; hard,	call-, <i>horny skin</i> .
<i>horny skin</i> .	

## EXERCISE 15.

- 53 Put *cīd-*, *cīs-*, into the form of an abstract substantive denoting the *act*? (-cision.) Act of cutting-out? (ex-cision.) Act of cutting-into? (in-cision.) Act of cutting-round? (circum-cision.) To cut-round? (to circum-cise.) What form would be more regular? (circum-cide.) To cut away *or* down? (to decide.) What does *decide* mean? (To *cut away from* any thing, till one has removed all the doubts and difficulties that surround it: hence (1) to *come to a resolution*: (2) to *settle* a question or dispute.) Act of deciding, *or* thing-decided? (decision.) What is *decision* of character? (Resolution: all doubt and hesitation being *cut-away*.) Adjective from *r. decīd-*? (decisive.) What is a *decisive* victory? (A victory that finally *decides* the war.) Cut-before? (precise.) What does *precise* mean? (Properly, 'shortened by having a piece cut off from the fore-part of it: ' then it is used of language that has every thing that is super-fluous cut away: and of persons, who are *particular* in their sayings and doings.) Act of cutting-before? (precision.) What is the English form of *precision*? (preciseness.) What does *precision* mean? (Either *accuracy*, the being cut, as it were, to a fine point; or *minute*, *pedantic*, *formal accuracy* of language, manner, &c.: this is the usual meaning of *preciseness*.) Act-of-cutting-up-into-small-pieces? (concision<sup>6</sup>.) A smiter-[=*slayer*]-of-his father? (a

<sup>5</sup> *Calamitas* is supposed to come from *calamus*, the *halm* or *stalk* of corn; properly meaning a *storm that laid low the corn* or other crops.

<sup>6</sup> St. Paul (Phil. iii 2) opposes 'the *concision*' (*false Jews*, who magnified the *mere rite* of circumcision, and asserted its perpetual obligation,) to 'the *circumcision*' (the *true sons of Abraham's faith*, who had the *circumcision* of the heart).

*parricide*, for *patri-cide*.) What is the crime of slaying-a-father called? (Also *parricide*.) What is the act of slaying-a-man called? (homicide.) How is *homicide* distinguished from *murder*? (*Homicide* or *manslaughter*, according to our laws, is the killing of a man without *previous malice*, and so without the settled, deliberate purpose of the murderer.)—Who does St. John say is a murderer already in his heart? (He who *hateth* his brother.) Adj. from *r. cærule-*? (cerulean.) Adj. from *calamity*? (calamitous.) Adj. from *r. call-*? (callous.) What does *callous* mean? (Unfeeling, indifferent to any thing.) Subst. from *callous*? (callousness.) Hot-making? (calorific.)

## LESSON XVI.

### Key-words.

### Latin Roots<sup>7</sup>.

#### 54 CALUMNY.

calumni-, *calumny*.

To **CALCINE** *Magnesia*:  
to reduce it to a powder  
by the action of heat,  
as *limestone* is reduced  
by burning.

calc-, *limestone, lime*.

To **CALCULATE**: to count,  
properly by using little  
*pebbles* for counters.

calcul-, *pebble*.

A **CANDID** disposition: a  
*bright, clear, open* dis-  
position.

{ cand-ē, to be white; to be  
of a white heat.  
candid-, white.

<sup>7</sup> Calumnia, *calumny*. Calx (for calc-s), *limestone*. Calculus, *pebble*. Campus, *field*. Candere, to be white, to be of a white heat. Candidus, white. Calx and Calculus both belong to the same root, calc-.

A *campaign* (= 'the time an army keeps the field,' 'the operations of one year'), probably does not come from *campus*, 'field,' but from the German *Kampf*, 'battle,' *kämpfen*, 'to fight.' But *champaign* (= 'wide plain,' 'open level tract') does come from *campus*, through the French.

## EXERCISE 16.

- 55 Put *r. calumni-* into its proper verb-form. (*calumni-ate*.) One-who-calumniates? (*calumniator*.) Act-of-calumniating? (*calumniation*.) Adj. from *calumny*? (*calumnious*.) Adv. from *calumnious*? (*calumniously*.) Resembling-limestone? (*calcarious*.) Act-of-calcining? (*calcination*.) Act-of-calculating? (*calculation*.) Adj. from *r. cand-e-*? (*candid*.) Subst. from *r. cand-e*? (*candour*.) A self-murderer? (a suicide; *also the crime of self-murder*.) The murderer-of-a-king? (a regicide: *rex, regis*, king: *also the crime*.) What is to *in-cens-e*, from *r. incend-* [a compound root from *cand-e*]? (To *kindle to wrath*, to make a man fire up.) What is an *incentive*? (What *kindles* a strong desire for any thing: a strong inducement.)
- 

- 56 *Cande-*: (1) *in-cend-<sup>s</sup>*, to set fire to: hence *Incendiary*, one who willfully sets fire to any thing for the purpose of destroying it.

- (2) *Candidate*: properly *dressed-in white*, because at Rome the *candidates* for the great offices of state put on white garments.
- 

- 57 The crime-of-the-*incendiary*? (*incendiarism*.) What termination is *ism*? (Properly a termination of words derived from the Greek: as in *catech-ism*.) Why do we write *candour* with *u*; not *candor*? (Because the word comes to us from the French *cand-eur*.) What is a '*political incendiary*'? (One who scatters about bad words and principles like so many *fire-brands*; one who tries to *inflame* men's minds.) What is the meaning of a *candidate*? (An applicant for a situation.) How does the word get this meaning? (56.)

<sup>s</sup> Incendere (*incendi, incensum*), to set fire to.

## LESSON XVII.

*Key-words.**Latin Roots<sup>9</sup>.*

- 58 To IN-CULC-ATE any thing: to tread it in, as it were; to im-press it deeply on the mind.

calca- } to tread in; from  
culca- } calc-, a heel.

The CANINE race; the race of dogs.

căn-, dog.

The CANTICLES: 'the Song of Songs,' that is, 'Solomon's Song.'

can-, cant- } to sing.  
cin-, cent-

The CHANCEL: the portion at the east end of a Church, which used to be separated by rails.

cancell-, rails, a barrier.

## EXERCISE 17.

- 59 Act-of-impressing? (inculcation.) Of what kind of impressing is to inculcate used? (Of impressing lessons, advice, good principles, duties, &c.) What is 'canine madness'? (The madness to which dogs are subject.) What is 'canine madness' also called? (*Hydrophobia*, which means 'a horror-of-water.') What is a *canto* [from r. can-, cant-]? (Such a portion of a poem as would, in former days, have been sung at one time; a separate portion or division of a poem.) One-who-sings-before? (A pre-cent-or.) What is a *precentor*? (The leader of the choir in a cathedral.) Act-of-singing-in? (in-cantat-ion.) What does *incantation* mean? (enchantment.) To sing-back? (to recant.) What does to *recant* mean? (to retract a statement.) Act of recanting? (recantation.)

<sup>9</sup> Calx, heel (not to be confounded with calx, lime). Calcare, to tread. Inculcare, to tread in, to insert (fresh words or passages), to impress. Proculcare, to trample before one, trample down. Canere (cēcīni, cantum), to sing.

60 *Can-* } In English derivatives (from the French), these  
*cant-* } roots have become *chant*.

(1) To *chant*, to sing in plain-song (as the Psalms in cathedrals).

(2) To *en-chant*, properly to bind a man's senses by magic songs: hence to *ravish*, to *delight*.

*Cancell-*, The *Chancellor*: a high equity judge, so called because the courts had a *bar* to separate the lawyers from the people. Thus we now speak of the prisoner at the *bar*.

61 Substantive from *enchant*, to express the *thing*? (enchantment.) Adv. from *enchanting*? (enchanting-ly.) Why is *enchant* more correct than *in-chant*? (Because the word comes to us through the French.) What is the court in which the *Chancellor* sits called? (The court of *Chancery*.) What bird is called *Chanticleer*, and why? (The *cock*, from his *singing out* so clearly.) What is a *chantry*? (A chapel endowed in Roman Catholic times for the purpose of having masses *sung* for the soul of a person.)

## LESSON XVIII.

### Key-words.

### Latin Roots<sup>1</sup>.

62 The tropic of CAPRI- capr-, goat.  
 CORN: the point where  
 the sun appears to  
 change his course in  
 the constellation of the  
 goat.

<sup>1</sup> *Capere*, *goat*. *Capere* (cēpi, captum), to take. *Accipere* (accepi, acceptum), to receive. *Recipere*, to take back, receive; to undertake, or engage. *Recipere se*, to retire (to). *Præcipere*, to direct, order. *Suscipere*, to undertake (a task). *Concipere*, to conceive. *Percipere*, to perceive. *Excipere*, to take out, except. *Decipere*, deceive. *Inter-cipere*, intercept, cut off. *Capax*, able to hold (much).



The CAPTURE of the fleet, cǎp-, capt- } to take,  
 and inter-cept-ion of cǐp-, cept- }  
 the dispatches: the  
*taking* of the fleet, and  
*getting* possession of  
 the letters *before they*  
*reached their destina-*  
*tion.*

## EXERCISE 18.

- 63 A person-taken, *that is*, a prisoner? (a captive.) The state-of-being-a-captive? (captivity.) To take-to, *that is*, to oneself? (to accept.) One-who-accepts? (an accept-er.) The *act-of-accepting* is not *accep-tion*, which would be the regular form, but *accepta-tion*: what does *acceptation* mean? (The *sense* in which a word is *taken*.) So the adj. is not *accept-ible*, with *i*, but *accept-able*: what does *acceptable* mean? (Such as one would *gladly accept*: agreeable, pleasing.) Abstr. subst. from *acceptable*? (accept-ability and acceptableness.) Able-to-hold much? (capacious.) Power-of-holding? (capacity.) What is the *capacity* of a child? (His power of *holding* knowledge: his ability.) To take-between, *that is*, before it reaches its destination? (to inter-cept.) Act-of-intercepting? (interception.)

Many of the *verbs* from this root have, in passing through the French, changed *p* into *v*: *cev-* for *cep-*. In English they end in *-ceive*; and the abstract substantives derived from them, sometimes end in *-ceit*, sometimes (regularly) in *-ception*.

To take-down or take-away? (to deceive.) What kind of *taking-down* or *taking-away* is denoted by *deceive*? (What we should call *taking-in*.) How did the Latin to *take-down* and our *take-in* come to mean to *over-reach*, *trick*, &c.? (Probably from the notion of *taking* wild animals in a pit or trap<sup>1</sup>.) Abstr. subst. from *deceive*? (deceit and deception.) Able-to-be-deceived? (deceivable.) To take-back? (to receive.) Is *receive* now used of *taking-back*? (No: but *giving* and *receiving* are often spoken of together

<sup>1</sup> As; *decipere* foveâ leonem, &c.; and *decipula*, a mouse-trap.

as opposite and contrasted actions: it is mostly of taking or getting what presents itself to us.) One who-receives? (receiver.) Act-of-receiving? (reception.) What are the meanings of *receipt*? (1st, the *reception*: 2nd, an acknowledgement that the sum paid has been *received*: 3rd, a direction we have *received* for cooking a particular dish.) How are *receipt* and *reception* used? (We usually speak of the *receipt* of a *letter*, *news*, &c.: of the *reception* of *friends*.) To take-together or take-thoroughly? (to con-ceive.) Of what kind of *taking-together* is to *con-ceive* used? (Of taking-together *the particulars* of any *thing*, and so forming a notion of it: hence to *apprehend*, to *imagine*.) Abstr. subst. from *con-ceive*? (conceit and conception.) What does *conceit* usually mean? (vanity.) How does it probably get this notion? (It seems originally to have meant 'notion,' 'persuasion,' as *conception* does: a 'conceit of one's abilities' would mean a *notion* of them: it then came to mean a *false*, *foolish*, *over-strained notion* of one's abilities, &c.: and hence *vanity*.) To take-thoroughly? (to perceive.) How is to *per-ceive* used? (Of taking-in-thoroughly some object: hence to *discern* with the eyes or understanding.) Act-of-perceiving? (perception.) Capable-of-being-perceived? (perceptible and perceivable.) Not-perceptible? (im-perceptible.) Abstr. subst. from *per-ceptible*? (perceptibility.) One-who-perceives? (a perceiver and a percipient.) Act-of-taking-under? (susception.) How is *susception* used? (Of undertaking a task.) To take-out? (to ex-cept.) That-which-is-taken-out? (an exception.)

- 
- 64 *cap-, capt-}* (1) *re-cept-acle*: a place that will *receive*  
*cip-, cept-}* and *protect*, or *keep*, a thing or person.  
 (2) *pre-cept*: a rule, direction, or order:  
 its proper meaning is *what-is-taken-before*: perhaps because a man should have *taken* his own *advice*, and *taken* (that is, *received* and *followed*) his own rules, *before* he instructs another.

From roots *cap-*, *cip-*, are formed lengthened roots *cipa-* and *cupa-*: and from *captiv-*, the lengthened root *captiva-*.

*cipa-*: to *anti-cipate*: to *take before* the time: hence, of having a presentiment of what is coming; and to try to obtain the possession or enjoyment of a thing before the proper time; and generally, to do a thing sooner than necessary.

*cupa-*: (1) to *oc-cupy*: properly, to take possession of a thing in opposition to some one else, so that he cannot enter it. To *pre-occupy* the mind is to *fill it beforehand* with notions or prejudices, so that the truth has not a fair chance of obtaining an entrance. *Occupation* is the *act-of-occupying*: and also the *business* that *occupies* one.

*captiva-*: to *captivate*: to *take* the mind prisoner, so that it cannot escape: to *delight* it.

## LESSON XIX.

### Key-words.

### Latin Roots<sup>1</sup>.

65 CAPIT-AL punishment: capit- }  
the loss of one's head. cipit- } head.

CARBON: a chemical carbōn-, charcoal, coal.  
substance, that is a  
principal part of all  
vegetable substances:  
hence also of charcoal.

To in-CARCERATE: to carcer-, prison.  
imprison.

<sup>1</sup> Caput, n. (capitis), head. Carbo (ōnis), charcoal. Carcer (ēris), prison.

## EXERCISE 19.

66 Adj. from *r. capit-*? (capital.) What is a *capital* city, or a *capital*? (The *head-city* of a state.) What is the *capital* of a pillar? (Its *head* or crown.) What does *capital* mean as an adj.? (Standing at the *head* of its class: first-rate.) What is a *capital* offence? (An offence that will cost us our *head*, that is, our *life*, if we are found guilty of it.) Put *capit-* into its verb-form. (-cipitate.) To cast-headlong? (to precipitate.) What is to *precipitate* an event? (To hurry it on: bring it to pass too soon.) A headlong-place? (a precipice.) Headlong *as adj.*? (precipitate.) What is a *precipitate* action? (An action into which we rush *headlong*, that is, without due deliberation.) To take off-the-head? (to decapitate.) Put *capit-* into its diminutive form. (capitul-.) How is the *r. capitul-* used? (To signify the *heads* or *articles* of a treaty, laws, &c.) Put *capitul-* into its verb-form. (capitulate.) What does to *capitulate* mean? (To surrender on terms, the *heads* of the agreement being formally drawn up.) Act-of-capitulating? (capitulation.) Adj. from carbon-? (*carbonic*.) What is *carbonic* acid? (An acid obtained from vegetable matter.) What is it commonly called? (Fixed air.) Is this ever injurious? (As a gas in wells, pits, &c., it often destroys life.) Act-of-putting-into-prison? (incarceration.)

- 67 *Capit-* } (1) *Cape*: a *head-land*: part of a garment  
*Cipit-* } on the shoulders behind the *head*.  
 (2) Charlemagne's *capitulary*: collection of laws.  
 (3) *Capitation* tax: a tax laid on each person, laid on his *head*, not on any property.  
 (4) *Chapter*: a *head*, portion or division of a work: also an assembly of the members of a cathedral or other ecclesiastical establishment. This word has passed through the *French*.  
 (5) *occi-put*: the back part of the *head*.

*Carbon-* (1) The *Carbonari*, properly 'the Charcoal-burners;' the name of a revolutionary party in Italy.

(2) To *carbonade*: to cut across, season, and then broil on the coals.

## LESSON XX.

### Key-words.

### Latin Roots<sup>4</sup>.

68 The **CARDINAL** numbers; *cardin-*, a *hinge*.  
the principal numbers,  
on which all the others  
*hinge*.

A **CARIOUS** tooth: a *de-* *cari-*, *cariousness*.  
*cayed* tooth.

**CARNAL** wisdom; *fleshly* *carn-*, *flesh*.  
wisdom.

To **CARP** at a person: to *carp-*, *carpt-* } *to pluck*.  
be always, as it were, *oerp-*, *cerpt-* }  
*plucking* at him, that  
is, finding fault with  
him.

### EXERCISE 20.

69 What are the *cardinal* numbers? (One, two, three, &c.)  
What are *first*, *second*, *third*, &c., called? (*Ordinal*  
numbers.) What are the *principal* points of the  
compass called? (The *cardinal* points.) What are  
the four cardinal points? (North, east, south, west.)  
What are the four *cardinal* or *principal* virtues?  
(Prudence, Temperance, Justice, Fortitude.) Adj.  
from *r. carn-*? (*carnal*.) Subst. from *carnal*? (*carn-*  
*ality*.) What does *carnal* mean in the Bible sense?

<sup>4</sup> *Cardo* (*cardinis*), *hinge*. *Caries*, *decay* (in teeth, wood, &c.). *Caro* (*carnis*, *fem.*), *flesh*. *Carpere* (*carpsi*, *carptum*), *to pluck*. *Discerpere* (*discerpsi*, *discerptum*), *to pluck asunder*. *Excerptere* (*excerpsi*, *excerptum*), *to pluck out*.

(Proceeding from our *flesh*; that is, from our *corrupted nature*.) Adv. from *carnal*? (carnally.) Put *carn*-into its verb-form? (carnate.) To put-into-*flesh*? (to incarnate.) Abstr. subst. from *incarnate*? (incarnation.) What is the *incarnation* of our blessed Lord? (His taking our flesh upon Him.) Is *incarnate* always a verb? (No: it is also used as an *adjective* of passive meaning = 'clothed in flesh.') One-who-carps? (a carper.) Abstr. subst. from *r. carp*? (carping.) In-a-carping-manner? (carpingly.) To pluck-asunder? (to discerp.) Capable-of-being-discerped? (discerpible.) Abstr. subst. from *discerpible*? (discerpibility.) To pluck-out or cull-out? (to excerpt.)

70 *Cardin-*: a *Cardinal*; (1) an ecclesiastic of the highest rank in the Roman-Catholic church; (2) a sort of *cloak* resembling that worn by the *Cardinals*, which is *red*.

*Carn-*<sup>1</sup> (1) *carnage*: the hacking and hewing of *flesh* in battle; slaughter.

(2) *earnation*: a flower; properly one of a *rosy flesh-colour*.

## LESSON XXI.

### Key-words.

### Latin-Roots<sup>2</sup>.

71 INGESTUOUS: un-*chaste* cast- } *chaste*.  
in a particular kind of cast- }  
unchastity.

CASTIGATION: *chastise-* castig-a-, to *chastise*.  
*ment*.

<sup>1</sup> To *incarnadine* (Shakespeare), is to *make red*.

<sup>2</sup> *Castus*, *chaste*. *Incestus*, *unchaste*, *Castigare* [*which is really castum agere, to drive a man to be chaste, or well-mannered*], to *chastise*. *Causa*, *cause*. *Cautus*, *cautious* [*from cavere, cavi, cautum, to beware, to be on one's guard*]. *Cavillari*, to *mock in a teasing way*. *Cavus*, *hollow*.

CAUSE.

caus- } cause.  
cūs- }caut-, *cautious*.

To CAVIL: to tease by raising trifling vexatious objections. cavill-a, to mock in a teasing way.

A CAVITY: a *hollow*.cav-, *hollow*.

## EXERCISE 21.

- 72 What is *incest*? (The sin of marrying a near relation or connexion, whom the Bible forbids us to marry.) Adj. from *incest*? (incestuous.) Put r. *castiga-* into its verb-form. (to castigate.) One-who-causes? (caus-er.) Without a cause? (cause-less.) Put r. *caus-* into its verb-form. (caus-ate.) Act-of-causing? (causation.) Adj. from *cause*? (caus-al.) Abstr. subst. from *causal*? (causality.) What form will the r. *caus-* take, when preceded by a preposition? (cūs.) Give examples of words so derived. (ac-cuse, excuse.) What is *ac-cuse* put for? (ad-cuse.) What is its meaning? (To bring a *cause*, that is, a *charge* or law-suit *against* a man.) Abstr. subst. from r. *ac-cus-a*? (accusation.) What does *ex* mean? (out.) What is to *ex-cuse* myself? (To *reason* myself *out*; to state a *cause* that gets me *out* of a scrape.) Subst. from *excuse*? (It is of the same form, but with a different pronunciation, the *s* having its sharp sound: excuse.) Adj. from *caut-*? (caut-ious.) Abstr. subst. from *caut-*? (caution.) Relating-to-a-caution? (cautionary.) What does the verb to *caution* mean? (To try to make a man *cautious* by warning him.) One who cavils? (a cavil-l-er.) A subst. to express the act? (cavil-l-ing.) What is *concave*? (hollow like the *inside* of a bason or of half an orange.) What is the *outside* of the half-orange called as to *form*? (convex.) Put r. *cav-* into its verb form? (cav-ate.) To hollow-out? (to ex-cavate.) Subst. to express the *action* or the *thing* from *excavate*? (excavation.)

*(Explanation of some harder derivatives'.)*

73 Codic-, or caudic-, *stem of a tree*. The ancients often wrote on wooden tablets covered with wax. Hence (1) *codicil* (properly a little tablet of this kind) is used for an addition made to a will: and (2) *code*, a table of laws.

Caul-, *stalk* (especially of the cabbage): hence *cabbage*: whence *cauli-flower*, the cabbage of which we eat the flower or head. The German for cabbage is *Kohl*; the French, *chou*: and we, too, have *cole*; *cole-wort*.

Caten-, *chain*: a concatenation of causes, a connected series of causes.

## LESSON XXII.

## Key-words.

Latin Roots<sup>1</sup>.

74 To CONCEDE a point: to yield it up; to retire from it.

cēd-  
cess- (=ced-e) { to come or go; retire from it; yield.

CELERITY; swiftness.

celer-, swift, quick.

celebr-, { celebrated (properly, thronged).

## EXERCISE 22.

75 Abstr. subst. from *cede*? (cession.) What does *cession* mean? (The act of yielding or resigning.) Abstr. subst. from *con-cede*? (con-cession.) To come-to? (to accede.) Abstr. subst. from *accede*? (accession.) In what sense is *accession* principally used by us? (Of the sovereign's coming-to the throne, and also of an addition to any thing.) What is to *accede* to a proposal? (To come into it: to agree to it.) What is *ac-cess*? (The way or means of approaching.) Has it this meaning in an *access* of fever? (No: it here means an addition or increase.) Capable-of-being-

<sup>1</sup> Codex (eodicis), *stem of a tree*. Catēna, *chain*. Caulis, *stalk, cabbage*.

<sup>2</sup> Cedere (cessi, cessum), *to go, go away, retire from, yield*. Celer, *swift*. Celeber, *thronged, celebrated*.



[easily] approached? (accessible.) What does *accessory* or *accessary* mean? (Additional, besides the *principal* person or thing.) What is to be *accessory* to a crime? (To have assisted the *principal* culprit.) To go-back? (to re-cede.) To go-apart-from? (to se-cede.) Abstr. subst. from *secede*? (secession.) One-who-secedes? (a seceder.) To go-before? (to precede.) Act-of-going-before? (precession.) To come-between? (to intercede.) Act-of-interceding? (intercession.) What kind of *coming between* does *intercession* mean? (The *coming between* a person and one who is *offended with* him or going to take some step that will be injurious to him: hence it means to beg a person off; to plead his cause, supplicate in his behalf.) One-who-intercedes? (an intercessor.) Who is our *intercessor* with the Almighty, whom we so often offend by sin? (JESUS CHRIST, our Lord.) What preposition means *before* besides *pre*? (*ante*.) What is the *ante-cedent* in grammar? (The substantive which *goes before* a relative pronoun; being that to which the relative refers.)

---

76 *cēd-* (1) *de-cess*: *departure* from life; death.

(2) *pre-de-cessor*: one who has *gone away before* one; the person who filled a place or office before another.

(3) *re-cess*: the time when a class of persons have *retired from* their work for a time; also a *secret retired* place.

---

Many of the compounds of *cēd-* are spelt in English with *ex-*: *ceed*.

77 To go-out-of? (to exceed.) What kind of *going-out* is denoted by *exceed*? (The *going-out-of* or *going-forth-from* the ordinary or expected size or degree, or the *going beyond* something with which the thing in question is compared: hence to *be greater than, more than, &c.*) Pres. particip. of *exceed*? (*exceeding*.) Adv. from *exceeding*? (*exceedingly*.) Subst.

to denote the portion *by which* one thing *exceeds* another? (excess.) What is *excess* in eating? (The portion that exceeds the proper quantity: also the *act* of *exceeding* or going beyond the bounds of moderation.) Adj. from *ex-cēd*? (excessive.) Adv. from *excessive*? (excessively.) To go-forwards or forth? (to proceed.) Abstr. subst. from *proceed*? (procession.) What is a *procession* denoting a *thing*? (The *walking-forwards* of a train of persons on some solemn or festive occasion.) Method-of-*proceeding*, i. e. of going on? (procedure and process.) What is the meaning of in *pro-cess* of time? (in the *advancing course* of time.) To come-under? (to succeed.) What meaning has *sub* in this word? (that of *close after*.) What is to *succeed* to any thing? (To *come in* for it *after* another.) What is the meaning of a thing's *succeeding*? (Its turning out well.) How does to *succeed* get this meaning? (The full expression should be 'to *succeed well*:' thus we can still talk of *succeeding ill*, of having *bad success*: and this shows that the word does not *itself* denote *good success*.) Having-good-success? (successful.) Adj. from *succeed*? (successive.) What does *successive* mean? (Following in order without any break.) *Act-of-succeeding*? (succession.) Does *succession* relate to *following* or to *good success*? (To following.) What is *success*? (The *result* of an action: *generally* the *successful result*.) One-who-succeeds? (a successor.) Not-having-good-success? (*un*-successful.) Put r. *celer*- into its verb-form. (*celer-ate*.) To-make-additionally-quick? (to *ac-celerate*.) Abstr. subst. from *accelerate*? (acceleration.) Do abstr. substs. in *ion* always denote *the doing*? (No: often the *thing done* as well as the doing.) Put r. *celebr*- into its verb-form. (*celebr-ate*.) Act-of-celebrating? (celebration.) One-who-celebrates? (*celebrater*.) Famosness? (celebrity.)

**Key-words.**

### *Latin Roots*<sup>1</sup>.

- 78 To DIS-CERN: to *dis-*  
*guish, to see.*  
 CERTAIN.  
 } *to separate; to dis-*  
 crēt } *tinguish, to see.*  
 cert-, *certain.*

79 To distinguish-apart? (to discern.) Abstr. subst. from *r. discrê-*? (discretion.) What kind of *distinguishing apart* does *discretion* now signify? (The distinguishing what is *prudent* or *decorous* from what is *imprudent* or *indecorous*.) What is the adj. to express a person possessing the quality of *discretion*, or conduct marked by *discretion*? (discreet.) How spelt? (With ee.) What would be the more regular formation? (dis-crête, = distinguished-apart.) Adv. from *discreet*? (discreetly.) Power-of-discerning? (discernment.) In what sense is *discernment* used? (In the sense of *seeing through* what is difficult: *judgement, penetration*.) To separate-apart? (to se-crete.) Act-of-separating, or matter separated? (secretion.) What are the *secretions* of the body? (The different portions and substances that are secreted by the body from the *food* it takes.) That-which-is-separated? (secret.) How is this word used? (Of what is kept to itself or oneself, hence *concealed, kept secret*.) To make-certain? (to certify.) How used? (In the sense of *assuring* a person.) What is the paper called by which a person *assures* another that a fact is true? (a certificate.) What is the English adj. from *r. certi-*? (certain.) A certain-thing, or the state, property, &c., of being-certain? (certainty.) Adv. from *certain*? (certainly.)

- 80 *Cer-<sup>2</sup>, wax:* (1) *Cerate*, a medicine prepared with wax; *cerecloth*.

<sup>1</sup> Cernere (crevi, cretum), to separate, perceive. Certus, certain.

<sup>2</sup> *Cera. wax.* *Cerebrum, brain.*

*Cela-*, to *hide*: *con-ceal* (with 'a' inserted), to *hide*. Hence *con-cealment*, &c.

*Cerebr-*, *brain*: a *cerebral* affection; a disease of the *brain*.

*Cern-* } (1) *Ex-cre-ment*: what is separated from and out of the  
*Cret-* } body of living beings.

(2) *Se-cret-ary*: a person who keeps secret the documents, &c., of others: hence who writes at the dictation of others, keeps their papers, &c.; also a *secret-desk*.

## LESSON XXIV.

### Key-words.

### Latin Roots<sup>3</sup>.

- 81 **CIVIC** honours: such as **civ-**, **citizens**.  
are conferred upon **ci-**  
**tizens** by their fellow-  
citizens, for services  
done in the **city**, not in  
the field; hence op-  
posed to **military**.

To **CLAMOUR**, to **cry out**. **clam-a-**, to *shout*, or *cry out*.

### EXERCISE 24.

- 82 **Adj.** from **r. civ-**, to mean *relating-to-a-citizen?* (**civil**).  
What are **civil** rights? (Our rights *as citizens*.)  
What is a '**civil**' **war**? (The war of citizens against  
their fellow-citizens.) To what is a '**civil** **court**'  
opposed? (To a **criminal** court.) Distinguish then  
between **civil** and **criminal** causes. (**Civil** causes are  
actions brought by one citizen against another: **cri-**  
**iminal** causes are actions brought by the **government**  
against those who break *the laws of the state*.) What  
would a **civil officer** be opposed to? (A **military**  
officer.) What do we more **commonly** mean by a  
**civil** person or action? (An obliging, courteous per-  
son or action.) How does **civil** get this meaning?  
(Because persons who live in **cities** are, or ought to  
be, more courteous and polished in behaviour than  
**rustics**.) To make-civil? (to civilize.) What is to

<sup>3</sup> **Civis**, **citizen**. **Clamare**, to *shout*, or *cry out*.

*civilize*? (To introduce *civil manners* amongst a people; to reclaim them from a wild savage state.) Act-of-civilizing? *or*, state-of-being-civilized? (civilization.) Quality-of-being-civil? (civility.) What is *a civility*? (A civil act.) In-a-civil-manner? (civil-*ty*.) Subst. from *r. clām-*? (clam-our.) Why is this word spelt with *our*? (Because it comes to us through the French.) Adj. from *clamour*? (clam-orous.) Is this word spelt with *or* or *our*? (With *or*.) Abstr. subst. from *clamorous*? (clamorous-*ness*.) Adv.? (clamorous-*ly*.) One-who-clamours? (a clamour-*er*.)

---

☞ The English verbs from the *r. clam-*, end in *claim*: but the abstract substantives retain the regular form, *clamoration*.

- 83 To-cry-down? (to declaim.) What does *declaim* mean? (To make a set speech in public; to harangue.) How do you explain the *de = down*, in this compound? (Because a public speaker is raised *above* his audience, and so *banls-down* to them.) One-who-declains? (a declaimer.) Act-of-declaining? *or*, the speech-declained? (declamation.) What does *declamation* also mean? (The usual mouthing manner of a declaimer: *mere declamation* without sound arguments, proofs, &c.) Adj. from *r. declāma-*? (declamatory.) What is 'a *declamatory style*'? (A *mouthng*, empty style.) To cry-out? (to exclaim.) Abstr. subst. from *exclaim*? (exclamation.) Adj. from *r. exclama-*? (exclamatory.) To cry forth, shout forth? (to proclaim.) Act-of-crying-forth? *or*, thing-cried-forth? (proclamation.) Of what kind of *crying forth* are *proclaim* and *proclamation* used? (Of a *public order* issued by a governor.)

- 
- 84 What does a *claim* mean? (The *crying* out that we have a *right* to something: hence an *equitable right*.)

<sup>4</sup> See Part I. 142. p. 100.

What is to *claim* a thing? (To *cry out* that we have a *right* to it.) One-who-claims? (claimant.) To call back; shout-back? (to re-claim.) What does to *re-claim* mean? (To put in a *claim* to have a thing *back-again*.) Abstr. subst. from *reclaim*? (reclamation.) What does *reclamation* usually mean? (A *claim* to have something given back or altered.) What is to *reclaim* a sinner? (To *call him back* from his sins.) Capable-of-being-reclaimed? (reclaimable.) Incapable-of-being-reclaimed? (irreclaimable.) Shouting-to? (ac-clamation, *for* ad-clamation.)

---

### LESSON XXV.

*Key-words.**Latin Roots<sup>1</sup>.*

85 TO EXCITE: to *call forth*; [cie-] } to *set in motion*; *call*  
rouse, stir up. cit-a- } *forth* or up; *rouse*.

A CINCTURE: a *girdle*. {cing- } *sur-*  
{cinc-t for cing-t } *round*.

A CIRCUS: a *ring* for circ-, *circus*.  
horse-races, &c.

## EXERCISE 25.

86 What is to *cite* a witness, &c.? (To summon him.) To *cite* a passage? (To *quote* it.) Subst. from *excite*, to denote the thing-that-excites or the state-of-being-excited? (excitement.) To *stir* a man into or *against*? (to incite.) Object-that-incites? (incitement.) What is an *incitement*? (An inducement, encouragement.) What is to *re-cite*? (To *repeat by heart* or to *read out*.) How does it get this meaning? (A document or passage in a book is in a *dead* or *dormant* state, till it is *called forth again*.) To rouse-up? (to sus-citate.) To rouse-up-again? wake-up-again? (to re-sus-citate.) Act-of-resuscitating?

<sup>1</sup> Cîere (civi, citum), to *set in motion*; *rouse up*. Excitare, to *awaken*; to *rouse up*. Recitare, to *recite*. Cingere (cinqi, cinctum), to *surround*. Circus, *circus*. Circulus, *circle*.

(resuscitation.) Girded-under? or, girded-up? (succinct.) Of what is *succinct* used? (Of a *concise* style.) How does it get this meaning? (From having all its loose drapery *tucked-up* like a person *going to run a race*: the notion is taken from times when men wore loose dresses, as they now do in the East.) State or quality of being *succinct*? (succinctness.) Adv. from *succinct*? (succinctly.) Put *circ-* into its diminutive form. (*circ-ul-*.) Put this in its verb-form. (to circulate.) What is to *circulate*? (To make any thing common through a *circle*: to circulate news, to spread it about through the *circle*: to circulate *bank-notes*, to spread or scatter them through a *circle* or district.) Is it also used *intransitively*; that is, without an *object* or accusative case expressed? (Yes: the banker *circulates notes*, and the notes *circulate*.) What is the English form of *circul-*? (*circle*.) Adj. from *r. circul-*? (*circular*.) What is a *circular*? (A letter or address sent round to all who live in a certain *circle* or district.)

87 Ciner-<sup>6</sup>, dead ashes: *cinereous*, having the colour of ashes.

Cicatric-, scab over a wound: to *cicatrize*, to heal a wound by causing a skin to form; to heal and form a skin over it.

## LESSON XXVI.

### Key-words.

### Latin Roots.<sup>7</sup>

88 CELLAR.

cell-, *cell*, *store-room*.

EXCEL.

ex-cell-, to *excel*.

A CENSOR: a *severe judge*.

cens-ē, to be of opinion: to deliver one's opinion: also to number the population.

<sup>6</sup> Cinis (cineris), ashes. Cicatrix (cicatrice), scar.

<sup>7</sup> Cella, *store-room*, *cell*. Excellere, to *excel*. Censere (censui, censum), to deliver an opinion: take account of population. Centum, a hundred.

Ten per CENT: ten cent-, a *hundred*.  
pounds yearly for  
every *hundred* pounds.

## EXERCISE 26.

- 89 Put *r. cell-* into its diminutive form. (*cell-ul-*.) Adj. from *cellul-*? (*cellular*.) What is the '*cellular membrane*' in animals? (A membrane having an infinite number of minute *cells*, in which the *fat* is lodged, &c. It seems to be the medium of connexion between every part of the body.) Adj. from *r. excell-*? (*excellent*.) Abstr. subst. from *excellent*? (*excellence*.) Abstr. subst., or subst. to express the *act*, from *r. cens-ē*? (*censure*.) Is *censure* any other part of speech? (Yes: a verb.) What is to *censure*? (To blame, reprove, &c.) Much-given-to-find-fault? (*ensorious*.) Abstr. subst. from *ensorious*? (*ensorious-ness*.) Adv. from *ensorious*? (*ensorious-ly*.) What is to take the *census* of a country? (To take an account of the number of its inhabitants.) A *hundred* of years, &c.? (a century.) Does it mean a hundred of any thing else? (Tribes were divided at Rome into *centuries* or 'hundreds.') What was a *centurion*? (A captain over a hundred men.) What is a *hundred-fold*? (the centuple.) An animal with a hundred feet? (A centipede: *ped-* root meaning *foot*.)

## LESSON XXVII.

## Key-words.

## Latin Roots\*.

- 90 To EX-CLUDE: to *shut* claud-, claus- }  
out. clūd-, clūs- } to *shut*.

CLEMENT.

clement-, *mild*, *merciful*.

\* Claudere (clausi, clausum), to *shut*. Clemens, clementis, *mild*, *merciful*.



## EXERCISE 27.

91 Act-of-shutting-out? (exclusion.) Adj. from *r. exclud-*? (exclusive.) What is to have received *exclusive* intelligence? (To have received intelligence, from which all others are *shut out*.) Abstr. subst. from *exclusive*? (exclusiveness.) How is this word now used? (Of the habit of *shutting out* persons from a society; of confining it to a select few.) Adv. from *exclusive*? (exclusively.) To shut-in? (to include.) Form abstr. subst.; adj.; and adv. (inclusion; inclusive, inclusively.) What is to reckon *inclusively*? (To take in the *first* and *last*: or to take in what *might* be supposed to be left out.) To shut-before? (to pre-clude.) What is to *preclude* any thing? (To shut it out beforehand: to make it impossible to attempt it, entertain it, &c.; to make its happening impossible.) Abstr. subst. from *preclude*? (preclusion.) Shut-backwards? (re-clude.) What is a *recluse*? (One who *shuts* himself up away from men, society, &c.) What may possibly be the meaning of *re* in *recluse*? ('*Very*': so that *recluse* is 'very much shut up.') To shut-apart? (to seclude.) Act-of-secluding? or, state-of-being-secluded? (se-clusion.) Abstr. subst. from *clement*? (clemency.) Not-clement? (inclement.) Of what is this now used? (Of *ungenial* weather.) Abstr. subst. from *inclement*? (inclemeney.) What does *close* come from and mean? (It comes from *claud-*, *claus-*, and means *shut-up*, *enclosed*.)

---

92 Class-, *flect*; *class*. (1) *Classical*, belonging to a high *class*. It is principally used of the great writers of Greece and Rome; but also of works of art that are in the best style.

(2) To *classify*; to arrange in a class: *classification*, act of classifying.

Clav-, *key*: *clavicle*, properly *little key*: hence *key-bone*, collar-bone.

## LESSON XXVIII.

*Key-words.**Latin Roots<sup>2</sup>.*

93. To IN-CLINE: to *lean* *clin-a-*, to *lean*, to *bend*.  
*into* (that is, *to* or *to-*  
*wards*) some object.

CELESTIAL: *heavenly*. *cel-*, *heaven*.

The CULTURE of the *cōl-* }  
 mind: the *cultivation* *cult-* } to *cultivate*.  
 of the mind.

COLOUR. *colōr-*, *colour*.

## EXERCISE 28.

- 94 Act-of-inclining? (inclination.) What is to be *inclined* to do any thing? (To have a *leaning* that way: to be *disposed* or *minded* to do it.) What kind of meaning is this called? (A *figurative* meaning.) What then is a *figurative* meaning? (A meaning founded on a *comparison*.) What *comparison* do we take for granted, when we talk of a man's *being inclined* to do any thing? (We compare the mind to a person *stooping forward* to his work or to some person he loves, and *throwing* himself *back* from some object of dislike.) To bend-down? (to decline.) What is to *decline* a proposal, &c.? (To *bend* it *away from* me, and so to *avoid* it; to refuse it.) What is to *decline* a substantive? (To *bend* it *down* from its nominative case, which, as we have seen [page 19], was represented by an upright line: hence to state the *cases* or *falling-forms* of a substantive.) Act of declining? (declination; and an *English form*, declension.) Capable-of-being-declined? (declinable.) Incapable-of-being-declined? (in-declinable.) To lean-back? (to re-cline.) *Celestial* means *belonging-to-heaven*: what means *belonging-to-earth*? *earthly*? (terrestrial.) What Latin

<sup>2</sup> *Clinare* [not in use], to *bend* (trans. and intr.). *Cœlum*, *heaven*. *Cœlestis*, *heavenly*. *Colère* (colui, cultum), to *cultivate*.

root means *field*? (agr-) Field-cultivation? (agr-i-culture.) Adj. from *agriculture*? (agricultural.) Field-cultivator? (agriculturist.) *Hort-* is the Latin root meaning *garden*: form, garden-cultivation. (hort-i-culture.) Adj. from *horticulture*? (horticultural.) Garden-cultivator? (horticulturist.) Distinguish between *horticulturist* and *gardener*. (A *horticulturist* is used of one who is *fond* of gardening, especially of one who studies the *science* of gardening.)

95 *clin-a*: From r. *clin* (the *n* being dropt) another r. *cli-v* was formed: hence

(1) *de-cliv-ity*, a *slope downwards*;

(2) *ac-cliv-ity*, a *slope against* one; that is, *upwards*.

*col-*  
*cult-*<sup>10</sup> } *colon-*, *settler* in a new country, *colonist*.

96 A *settler*? (a *colonist*.) A *settlement*? (a *colony*.)  
Adj. from *colony*? (*colonial*.)

## LESSON XXIX.

### Key-words.

### Latin Roots<sup>1</sup>.

97 COUNCIL: a body of persons brought together to deliberate. con-cili-, a coming-together; a council; advice.

TO CONSULT. consul- } consult, deliberate.  
consult-


A DECOCTION of bark: bark, &c., boiled down till it is brought to the right state. coqu- } prepare by heat,  
coct- } cook.

<sup>10</sup> Clivus, *slope, hill*. Colonus, *husbandman, colonist*.

<sup>1</sup> Concilium, *council* (probably from con-cileo). Consulere (consului, consulum), *to consult*. Coquere (coxi, coctum), *to parch, cook*. Cor, cordis (neuter), *heart*.

A **CORDIAL** reception: a cord-, heart.  
*heartly reception.*

### EXERCISE 29.

 The compounds of *concili-* have the meaning of *bringing together and uniting in an amicable way*. The compound verbs end in *cile*.

- 98 Form a verb from *r. concili-*. (to conciliate.) What is to *conciliate* a person or a person's favour? (To *bring over* or *win over* a person; to *gain* his favour by prudent, obliging conduct.) Abstr. subst. from *conciliate*? (conciliation.) Adj. from *r. concilia-*? (conciliatory.) What is the meaning of *conciliatory* conduct? (Conduct likely to *win* or *gain* over a person, from its obliging character.) To *gain-back*? (to *re-concile*.) Abstr. subst. from *reconcile*? (*reconciliation* or *reconcilement* or *reconciling*.) Act-of-consulting? (consultation.) To *cook-down*? (to decoct.) To *cook-together*? (to *con-coct*.) How is to *concoct* used? (Of *cooking*, that is, *preparing* or *hatching*, plots, plans, &c.) Abstr. subst. from *con-coct*? (concoction.) Abstr. subst. from *cordial*? (cordiality.) What is a *cordial*? (Any thing that cheers up the *heart*: mostly used of a draught supposed, often falsely, to have this effect.) Adv. from *cordial*? (cordially.) Heart-shaped? (cordate.) How is *cordate* used? (Of *heart-shaped* leaves, &c.) What is *concord*? (The state of *united hearts*.) What word denotes the state of *disunited-hearts*? (discord.) Adj. from *concord*? (concordant:) from *discord*? (discordant.) State-of-having-the-heart-to [*that is, with*] *another*? (ac-cord.) What is to *accord*? (To agree; to grant.) State of agreeing? (accordance.)

---

99 *concili-*: council, the English form of *concilium*.

*consul-*: hence root *consili-*, counsel, advice: from which comes *counsellor*, properly an *adviser*: as the name of a profession, it means a *law-adviser*, a barrister.

*coqu-* } there is also a shorter root *coc-* : whence *precocious*, *prematurely ripe*; *ripe too soon* to be sound and durable.

*cord-* : hence to *record*, to bring back to the heart, to the mind : to relate or register events. A *recorder*, the law-officer of a borough; who *records* the offences and their punishments.

- 
- 100 Abstr. subst. from r. *pre-coc-*? (*precocity*.) Of what are *precocious* and *precocity* generally used? (Of children whose minds *ripen* too fast, so that their *early forwardness* disappoints the hopes of their parents.)
- 

- 101 *condi-* : to *preserve*; to *pickle*, &c. Hence *condiment*, something that adds a flavour to food.

*copul-* : link : hence *couple* = two things linked together : and 'copulative conjunctions,' the conjunctions that *couple* notions together.

---

### LESSON XXX.

#### *Key-words.*

#### *Latin Roots<sup>2</sup>.*

- 102 A CORNUCOPIA : a *horn* corn-, *horn*.  
 of *plenty* : a horn full (copia = *plenty*.)  
 of fruits and flowers  
 which the fabulous  
 'goddess of plenty'  
 bore in her hands.

The Queen's CORONATION : the Queen's *corōn-*, *crown*.  
*crowning*.

CORPUS-CHRISTI College : a college named *corpōr-*, *body*.  
 from the sacred *body*  
 of *Christ* our Sa-  
 viour.

<sup>2</sup> Cornu, *horn*. Corōna, *crown*. Corpus (corporis), n., *body*.

## EXERCISE 30.

- 103 What is a *uni-corn*? (A fabulous animal, said to have but *one* horn.) What is 'a *cornet* of paper'? (A little piece of paper twisted up into a sort of cap for holding small quantities of grocery, &c.) "David played before the Lord on *cornets*:" what does a *cornet* here mean? (a horn.) What officer is called a *cornet*? (The officer who bears the ensign or colours of a cavalry regiment.) How does it get this meaning? (A *cornet* is used of a cap with *two horns*: then probably of any piece of stuff with *horns*; and finally of the *standard*<sup>3</sup> of a regiment.) Horny? (corneous.) Is a *corn* on the toe, &c., probably derived from *corn-*, *horn*? (More probably from *corn*, the name for any little hard *grain*<sup>4</sup>.) A little-crown? (a coronet.) Act-of-crowning? (coronation.) Put r. *coron-* into a diminutive form. (coroll-.) What is the *corolla* of a flower? (It is the learned name for its *flower*.) What is *crown* derived from? (corōn, c'rōn.) What is a *coroner*? (A *crown*-officer, who examines into the causes of any sudden death.) What is the *coroner's* examination called? (His *inquest*.) What adjectives are formed from r. *corpor-*? (corporal, corporeal, corporate.) What is *corporal*? (Relating to the body.) In what expression is it principally used? (In the phrase: *corporal* punishment.) What is the meaning of *corporeal*? (Bodily; consisting of a body or solid substance.) What is *corporeal* opposed to? (spiritual, or immaterial.) What does *immaterial* mean as opposed to *corporeal*? (Not consisting of *matter*; that is, of any solid body or substance.) What adj. is formed from the shorter r. *corp-*? (corpulent.) What does *corpulent* mean? (big-bodied.) Subst. from *corpulent*? (corpulence.) What does *corporate* mean? (Formed into a *body* by law; as

<sup>3</sup> *Cornette* is 'a *standard*' or 'colours' both in French and German.

<sup>4</sup> *Corn* (= grain) is probably from the same r. as the Latin gran-um. *Gran*, *garn*, *karn*, *korn*, or *corn*. *Kernel* is probably of the same family.

when we speak of '*a body corporate*.' To put-in-a-body? to embody? (to incorporate.) What is a *corporation*? (A *body* of persons formed into a society by law.) Act-of-incorporating? (incorporation.) What is a *corpse*? (A dead body.) Spell a *corps*<sup>5</sup> in: 'a corps of soldiers.' What is 'a *corps*' of soldiers? (A *body* of soldiers.) A little body? (*corpuscle*.) Adj. from *corpuscle*? (*corpuscular*.) What is a *corporal* in the army? (The lowest officer over a *body* of men in a regiment.) Is any article of church-furniture called a *corporal*? (Yes: 'the fine linen cloth' with which the consecrated bread and wine, our Saviour's *body* and blood, are covered after all have communicated.) What is 'a *corporal oath*'? (A solemn oath.) Why was it so called? (Because formerly the person swearing touched the *consecrated bread*, which is, to the faithful receiver, his Lord's *body*.)

---

104 *coron*-: *cor'nice* (for *coronice*), a moulding that *crowns*, as it were, the top of a wall.

*coroll*-: a *corollary*: an *additional conclusion* drawn from a proposition that has been proved. It is so called because it *crowns* or *completes* the proposition.

---

105 *cori*-<sup>6</sup>, *hide, skin*: (1) to *excoriate*, to *flay*: to rub off the *cuticle* or skin: hence *excoriation*. (2) *coriaceous* leaves: leaves of a *leathery, parchment-like* substance.

*cortic*-, *bark*: to *de-corticate*, to strip off the bark.

<sup>5</sup> Pronounced *côre*.

<sup>6</sup> *Corium, hide, skin. Cortex, corticis, bark.*

## LESSON XXXI.

## Key-words.

Latin Roots<sup>7</sup>.

- 106 The CREEP; the *belief*.    crēd-, } to believe, to trust.  
    credit-, }
- CREATION.                        crea-, to create, to make.

## EXERCISE 31.

- 107 Capable-of-being-believed? (credible.) Abstr. subst. from *credible*? (credibility.) Incapable-of-being-believed? (incredible.) Abstr. subst. from *incredible*? (incredibility.) Adv. from *credible*, *incredible*? (credibly, incredibly.) Too-ready-to-believe? (credulous.) This termination, *ulous*, means a *faulty inclination* to do what the verb means: what does *garrulous* mean? (*Too fond* of chattering.) Abstr. subst. from *credulous*? (credulity.) Not-ready-to-believe? (incredulous.) Abstr. subst. from *incredible*? (incredibility.) One-who-trusts? (a creditor.) Of which kind of *believer* or *truster* is *creditor* used? (Of one who lends a man money on trust.) What is the person called to whom a *creditor* has lent money? (His *debtor*.)

- 108 Ods. *Creditor* and *debtor* are called *correlative* words; that is, they are so *related together* that each implies the existence of the other: there cannot be a *creditor* without there being one who is his *debtor*. Mention some other *correlative* terms. (*Father* and *child*; *husband* and *wife*; *sovereign* and *subject*; *master* and *servant*.)

- 109 To believe, from r. *crēd-*? (to credit.) Proper-to-be-believed or trusted? (creditable<sup>8</sup>.) How is *creditable* used in English? (Of persons or things that may be trusted as *really respectable*.) Is *credit* used in this way? (Yes; we speak of such a thing

<sup>7</sup> Credere (credidi, creditum), to believe. Creare, to make, to create.

<sup>8</sup> Also in the *passive* sense, which indeed is its *proper* sense, of being believed; as in 'to be deserving of credit.'



being to a man's *credit*, of its *doing him credit*, &c.) Has *credit* any other meaning or meanings in English? (Yes; (1) *belief*, as in 'to attach *credit* to any thing'; and (2) it is used in the sense of 'a *sum due*' to anybody; as in 'to place a sum to his *credit*' = 'to set it down as *owed* to him.') The opposite of *creditable*? (discreditable.) One-who-creates? (creator.) Act of creating? *or*, thing-created? (creation.) To create-forth? (to procreate.) Abstr. subst. from *procreate*? (procreation.) Adj. from *r. crea-*? (creative.) To create-again? (to re-create.) How is to *re-create* used? (Of making oneself a new man in spirits; of renewing or *refreshing* one's mind and spirits.) Abstr. subst. from re-create? (recreation.) How is *recreation* used? (Of amusement used to *refresh* oneself after work.) Not created? (un-created.)

---

110 *Créd-*: (1) *Credentials*: the documents given to an ambassador, &c., to prove that he may *be trusted*.

(2) *To ac-credit*: to give an ambassador documents addressed to a particular court: he is *accredited* to *that court*. So an *accredited* agent is one who is furnished with full authority from his employers.

(3) *-creant* (for *credent*, through the French *croyant*, where the *d* has disappeared), '*believing*': a *mis-creant*, a *misbeliever*, a *misbelieving* dog. A *re-creant* (*back-believing*): a denier of the *faith*, a cowardly unbelieving person, a *renegade* [from *re-* and *negare*, to *deny*]. These words were coined, when the connexion between *right-belief* and *right-conduct* was fully acknowledged.

## LESSON XXXII.

*Key-words.**Latin Roots<sup>9</sup>.*

- 111 A DIS-CREPANCE : a difference ; properly, a difference in *sound*.  
 crēpa-, } to rattle, to make  
 crepit-, } any loud noise.

The CRESCENT moon : cresc-, } to increase (intrans.)  
 the moon when *wax-* crēt-, }  
*ing* : that is, *increas-*  
*ing* to its full size.

A CRIME. crimīn-, a charge or accusa-  
 tion.

## EXERCISE 32.

- 112 Sounded-away ? (de-crepit.) What does a *decrepit* person mean ? (One who makes no sound ; whose boisterous mirth has gone by, so that he creeps about *noiselessly*, like a shadow.) Abstr. subst. from *decrepit* ? (decrepitude.) Sounding-differently ? (discrepant.) What does *discrepant* mean ? (different, inconsistent with.) Is there any form of the substantive besides *discrepance* ? (Yes ; discrepancy.) Grown-together ? (concrete.) Act-of-growing-together ? or, state-of-being-grown-together ? or, mass-formed-of-things-grown-together ? (con-cretion.) Is *concrete* ever used as a substantive ? (Yes ; in building, '*concrete*' is a mass formed of sand, gravel, &c., to form a *dry bed* on which to place a pavement<sup>10</sup>.) Act of growing-to ? (ac-cretion, for ad-cretion.) Adj. from r. *accret-* ? (accretive.) An increasing-out ? (an ex-crescence.) Adj. for *crimin-* ? (criminal.) Abstr. subst. for *criminal* ? (criminality.) To *charge* a man as guilty ? (to criminate him.) To charge a person back-again ? that is, to retort a

<sup>9</sup> Crēpare, crepui, crepitum, to make a loud, rattling noise. Crescere (crēvi, crētum), to increase, to grow. Crimen (criminis), a charge, an accusation.

<sup>10</sup> And so in other instances : 'Gold is a porous concrete.'—Bentley.

charge, or accuse him in his turn? (to re-criminate.)  
 Adj. from *recriminate*? (recriminatory.) Abstr.  
 subst. for *recriminate*? (recrimination.)

113 *Cresc-*, } (1) The English forms end in *-crease* (for  
*Cret-*, } *cresce*).

(2) *Cresciment* is shortened into *crement*, in  
*increment*, *decrement* = *increase*, *de-*  
*crease*; respectively, the portion by  
 which any thing has increased or de-  
 creased.

(3) *-crue*: through the French *crottre* (*crûs*,  
*cru*); as *to accrue*, to come to one's  
 share in *addition*.

*Crep-*: *crēp-* has become *crēv-* in *crevice*, which, like  
 'crack,' properly means a rent that has *burst open*  
 with a *cracking* noise.

### LESSON XXXIII.

#### Key-words.

#### Latin Roots <sup>1</sup>.

114 CRUST.

*crust-*, *rind*, *crust*, the *harder*  
*outside coating*.

TO CRUCIFY: *to fix to* *cruc-*, *cross*.  
*a cross*.

RECUMBENT: *lying* *cuba-*  
*back, lying down*. The *cumb-* }  
 time of a hen's IN- *cubat-* } *to lie down*.  
 CUB-ATION, the time *cubit-* }  
 of her *sitting* (pro-  
 perly *lying*) on her  
 eggs, to hatch them.

CULPABLE conduct: *culp-*, *fault*.  
 conduct with which  
*fault* may properly  
 be found.

<sup>1</sup> *Crusta*, outer coating, *rind*, *crust*. *Crux* (*crūcis*), *f. cross*. *Cūbare*  
 (*cubui*, *cubitum*), *to lie down*. [Re-cumbere, procumbere, succum-  
 bere, &c., all -*cubui*, -*cubitum*.] *Culpa*, *fault*.

## EXERCISE 33.

115 To crust-over, or upon? (to incrust, or encrust.)

Abstr. subst. from *incrust*? (incrustation.) Does this mean only the *act of crusting-over*? (No; like most words of this form, it also means the *thing* formed by incrustation; the *thing* in its *incrusted* form.) Consisting-of-a-crust? having-a-crust? (crustaceous.) What are *crustaceous* animals? (Those that have *jointed* shells, like a *lobster*.) Is an oyster crustaceous? (No.) What is an oyster called with reference to its *shell*? (testaceous.) What is the Latin root from which *fy* in *crucify* comes? (fig- = to *fix*.) Does *fy* generally come from *fig*? for instance, in *mollify*, *pacify*? (No; it usually comes from r. *fāc*-, to *do*, or *make*, shortened to *fi*- in the French.) Abstr. subst. from *crucify*? (crucifixion.) Would the abstr. subst. from a verb ending in *fy* = *make*, end in *fixion*? (No; in *fixation*, or *faction*.) Give an instance of both forms. (*pacification*, from *pacify*; *stupefaction*, from *stupefy* or *stupidify*.) Put *crūc* into its verb-form. (cruciate.) This form has the meaning of *to torture*: to torture-thoroughly? (to ex-cruciate.) Cross-shaped? (cruciform.) One-who-crucifies? (crucifi-er.) Fixed-to-a-cross? (crucifix.) What is '*a crucifix*'? (An image of our Saviour on the cross.) Lying-forward = leaning-forward, from r. *cumb*? (procumbent.) To lie-down-under? (to succumb.) What is *to succumb*? (To yield, to knock under.) Lying-upon? (incumbent.) If I say it is *incumbent* on a man to do so and so, what do I mean? (That the duty of doing so and so *lies upon* him.) What is the *incumbent* of a living? (The person who is then attached to it, who then occupies it.) How does *incumbent* get this meaning? (Incumb- means *to lean upon* or *against*. Sir E. Coke says, 'the *incumbent* is so called because he ought to *bend all* his mind *to* the discharge of his duty.') Lying-on-above? (super-incumbent.) What is a *superincumbent* mass? (A mass *lying upon* any thing and pressing it down.)

Abstr. subst. from *incumbent*? (incumbency.) Abstr. subst. from *culpable*? (culpability, or culpable-ness.) Put *culp-* into its verb-form. (culpate.) To place-*out-of-fault*? (to exculpate.) What does to *exculpate* a person mean? (To clear him of blame.) Act-of-exculpating? (exculpation.) Relating-to-exculpation? (exculpatory.)

116 *Cub-a-*: (1) *In-cūbus, night-mare*: the spirit superstitiously supposed to *sit upon one* and press one down.

(2) *Con-cub-ine*: the *secondary* or *inferior wife*, whom the patriarchs were permitted to have; but whom no Christian is allowed to have. *Concubinage*: the sin of living as *husband* or *wife* with a person to whom you are *not married*.

(3) *Cubit*: properly the part of the *arm* on which one *leans*; *elbow*; arm below the elbow; then the measure of that length; *cubit*.

*Cruc-*: (1) *Cross* comes from this root.

(2) *Crucible*: a little pot used by gold-melters. "So called from being made in the shape of a *cross*; from having a *cross* impressed upon it". Chaucer uses *crosslet*."—*Richardson's Dict.*

117 *Crūd-*<sup>2</sup>: *raw, unripe*. A *crude* thought or project; a *raw, ill-digested* thought or project: hence *crudity, crudeness*.

<sup>2</sup> It is very doubtful whether it does not rather come from some root *krak-*, meaning to *swell out* or *curve*. We have Anglo-Saxon *croch, croc, crog, crot*: hence English *crook, crockery, cruse*. German *Krug, &c.*

<sup>3</sup> *Crudus, raw, unripe*. *Crudēlis, cruel*. *Culmus, halm, stem, stalk*. *Culmen (culminis), roof, top*.

*Crudēl-* : *cruel* (for *cru-d-el*).

*Culm-* : *halm* or *stalk* of corn, &c. : hence (1) the *culm* of grasses, &c., their stalk or stem. (2) Root *culmin-* = *top* (properly a *top* thatched with *straw*) : hence a star is said to *culminate*, when it is at its *highest point*, i. e. on the meridian. This is its *culmination*.

## LESSON XXXIV.

### Key-words.

### Latin Roots <sup>4</sup>.

- 118 An ACCUMULATION of *cumul-*, *heap*.  
difficulties ; a mass  
of difficulties *heaped*  
*one on another*.

ACCURATE : made or *cur-*, *care*.  
done with *care*.

### EXERCISE 34.

- 119 Put *cumul-* into its verb-form. (*cumul-ate*.) Adj. from *cumulate*-? (*cumulative*.) This word is principally used when we speak of '*cumulative* evidence.' What is '*cumulative* evidence?' (A mass of evidence in which the whole is strong from the number of particulars stated, each of which adds *some* force to the rest.) To *heap-to*? (to *ac-cumulate*, for *ad-cumulate*.) Abstr. subst. from *accurate*? (*accuracy*.) Not-accurate? (*in-accurate*.) Abstr. subst. from *inaccurate*? (*in-accuracy*.) Adv. from *accurate*, *inaccurate*? (*accurately*, *inaccurately*.) One-who-takes-care? (a *curator*.) A *curator-for*? *that is*, for-another? (a *pro-curator*.) How is *pro-curator* shortened in English? (*Into* *proctor*.) What is a *proctor*? (It is the name (1) of an attorney who practises in the ecclesiastical or Church courts ; and (2) of the officer who *takes care* of the discipline of a University.) What sort of causes are tried in the

<sup>4</sup> Cumulus, *heap*. Cura, *care*.

*ecclesiastical* or *Church* courts? (Cases relating to wills, divorces, &c., and offences against Church discipline.) Adj. from *proctor*? (proctorial.)

120 *Obs.* Most of the English adjectives, substantives, and verbs from the root *cūr-* end in *cure*. To *cure* a disease (properly meaning to *tend* or *take care* of it, to treat it) has the meaning of, to *heal* it.

121 Without-*care*, as adj.? (secure.) Abstr. subst. from *secure*? (security.) What is '*a security*'? (1) a pledge or safeguard to *secure* a man against loss; (2) the person who gives a security.) Adv. from *secure*? (securely.) What is to *secure* a thing? (To *make sure* of it by getting it into one's possession.) Not-secure? (insecure.) Abstr. subst. and adv. from *insecure*? (insecurity, insecurely.) To *care-for*? (to procure.) Of what kind of *caring-for* is *procure* used? (Of taking such *care* as to get it: hence it means to *provide oneself with*, to *get*.) One-who-procures? (procurer.) Capable-of-being-procured? (procurable.) What is '*a cure*'? (1) healing of a disease; (2) the parish a clergyman has to take care of.) Taken-care-of? (curate.) What is a *curate*? (It seems to mean *one who takes care*, shortened from *curator* by the loss of its distinctive ending.) The charge-[or post]-of-a-curate? (a curacy.) Full-of-care? (curious.) How is *curious* mostly used now? (Of one who is full-of-care or anxiety about *new* or *strange* things, or things that do not properly concern him<sup>5</sup>.) Abstr. subst. from *curious*? (curiosity.) What is a curious thing? (A rare or strange thing that will delight a *curious* person.) What is '*a curiosity*'? (a curious thing.) Not-curious? (incurious.) A *sinecure*? (An office *without care*; one to which *no duty* belongs.) Capable-of-being-cured, i. e. healed? (curable.) Relating-to-curing? (curative.) One-who-cures? (curer.)

<sup>5</sup> The other and rarer meaning (as in '*curious discrimination*') is '*beautifully and minutely accurate*.'

122 *Cumul-*: to *en-cumb-er* (for *en-cuml-er*), to load with a heap of difficulties<sup>6</sup>. Hence *encumbrance*.

*Cūr-*: *proxy* (shortened from *procuracy*), agency for another; the agent substituted by another, or the document that authorizes him so to act.—‘*To vote by proxy*,’ ‘*to give another one’s proxy*.’

### LESSON XXXV.

*Key-words.*

*Latin Roots*<sup>7</sup>.

123 A CURRENT report; a curr-, }  
report that is running curs-, } to run.  
about a town or  
neighbourhood.

A CURVED line; a bent curv-, bent, curved.  
line.

### EXERCISE 35.

124 What is the *current* of a river? (Its stream.) Adv. from adj. *current*? (current-ly.) Abstr. subst. from *current*? (currency.) What is ‘the *currency*’ of a country? (The money that the government coins to run about it, to be circulated in it.) ‘A report has had a general *currency*.’ what does this mean? (That it has been allowed to run about without contradiction.) To run-together? (to con-cur.) What does this mean? (1) Of the meeting together of different causes or things tending to the same end; (2) of the union or agreement in opinion of two or more persons.) Adj. from *concur*? (concurrent.) What is a ‘*concurrent cause*,’ a ‘*concurrent jurisdiction*?’ (A cause or jurisdiction that runs parallel, as it were, with some other cause or jurisdiction.) Abstr. subst.

<sup>6</sup> It might be thought that *encumber* came from *incumbere* (to lie on one with a weight); but the Italian is *ingombrare*, which points to a verb whose root ends in *a*. The change of *r* into *l* is common enough; and *in-comrare*, or *in-gomrare*, would very naturally receive a *b* between the *mr*. Richardson gives *in-cumulare* as the Latin verb.

<sup>7</sup> *Currere* (cūcurri, cursum), to run. *Curvus*, bent, curved.



for *concurrent*? (concurrence.) What is the *con-currence* of two causes? (The meeting together or co-existence of two causes tending to produce the same effect.) 'By the universal *concurrence* of the nobles and the people:' what does this mean? (Their universal agreement or approbation.) What form would express '*runner*' and what '*running*,' as abstr. subst. from *r. curr-, curs-*? (*runner*, *curs-or*; *running*, *cursion*.) A *running-out*? (an *ex-cursion*.) What sort of *running-out* does *excursion* mean? (A short *running-out* into the country; a short *leaving home to take a trip*.) *Running-out*? as adj. (*ex-cursive*<sup>s</sup>.) A *fore-runner*? (a *pre-cursor*.) Adj. from *curs-*? (*cursory*.) What is to read a book in a *cursory* manner? (To *run through* it hastily.) Adv. from *cursory*? (*cursorily*.) What other adj. might be formed from *curs-*? (*-cursive*.) This occurs in *dis-cursive*: what does *dis-* mean? (separation.) What is a *discursive* style? (The style of a writer or speaker who keeps *running away* from his main subject into digressions.) To *run-into*? (to incur.) What sort of things do we *incur*? (We *incur* penalties, debts, guilt, blame, displeasure, and other *bad* things.) Act-of-*running-into*? (an *incursion*.) What sort of *running-into* is an *incursion*? (A *running into a country* with one's army, &c.; an *inroad* or *invasion*.) To *run-against*? (to occur, *for* ob-cur.) What does to *occur* mean? (to happen.) The happening of any thing? (the occurrence of any thing.) What is an *occurrence*? (an event.) To *run-back*? (to recur.) What sort of things *recur*? (Similar events *recur* = happen again; thoughts *recur* to the mind; and the mind *recurs* or *returns to* the same thoughts or subjects that lately occupied it.)

 Many of the English forms from *curr-, curs-*, end in *cour, course*.]

The *course* of events, &c.? (The line in which they run, the line of their progress.) What is a *race-course*, or 'a *course*'? (The field, &c., on which races are

<sup>s</sup> "But why so far *excursive*?"—Thomson.

*run.*) What is to *course*? (To run after; to chase, especially of chasing hares with greyhounds.) To run-under? (to suc-cour.) What sort of *running-under* does to *succour* mean? (The running up to support, or help, or relieve a man.) Is *succour* always a verb? (No; sometimes a substantive.) A running-together? (a concourse.) What kind of *running-together* is a *concourse*? (The running together of people.) A running-back? as subst. (recourse.) What is 'to have *recourse*' to any thing? (To *run back* to it for *help*, or for the *means of accomplishing* any thing.) A runner? (a courser.) Of what sort of *runner* is a courser used? (Of a swift horse.) Bending, as a *continuing* state? (curvature.) Consisting of curved lines? (curvi-linear; *linea* = line.)

---

- 125 *Curr-*: } (1) A *cursitor* (called originally 'a clerk of  
*Curs-*: } *course*): a clerk in the court of  
 Chancery.

- (2) A *curricule*: a sort of open carriage, drawn by two horses.
- 

- 126 *Custōd-*<sup>9</sup>; *guard*: *custōdy*, safe-keeping.

*Cusp-*, } *point*: (1) A *cuspid*, a point or horn of the moon, &c.  
*Cuspid-*, } (2) *Cuspidated* leaves; leaves that have terminating points.

*Cut-, skin*: (1) The *cuticle*, the *skin*.  
 (2) A *cut-aneous* disorder; a disorder in the skin.

---

<sup>9</sup> *Custos* (*custōdis*), a keeper, a guard. *Custodia*, keeping, custody. *Cuspid* (*cuspidis*), sharp point. *Cutis*, skin.

## LESSON XXXVI.

*Key-words.**Latin Roots<sup>1</sup>.*

127 DAMNABLE : deserved damn-, hurt, damage, loss.  
*damnation, or con-*  
*demnation.*

DECOROUS : <i>seemly,</i>	}	{	decē-, to become, to be be- coming.
becoming.			
TO DECORATE : to or- nament.	}		decōr-, ornament, grace.

INDELIBLE : not capa- delē-, to blot out, efface.  
 ble of being *blotted*  
*out.*

A DENSE fog : a *thick* dens-, *thick*.  
 fog.

A DENTIST : a *tooth* dent-, *tooth*.  
 doctor.

## EXERCISE 36.

128 The English form of the verb is *damn*; put the r. into its Latin verb-form. (*damnat.*) Abstr. subst. from r. *damnat*? (*damnation.*) To damn-together? (to condemn.) What does the *con* probably mean in this word? (The *joint* decision of several persons uniting to condemn.) Adv. from *damnable*? (*dam-nably.*) Abstr. subst. from *condemn*? (*condemnation.*) One-who-condemns? (*condemn-er.*) Adj. from r. *damnat-* and *condamnat-*? (*damnatory and condemnatory.*) Not-condemned? (*un-condemned.*) Becoming? (*decent.*) Of what kind of *becoming-ness* is *decent* used? (Of what does not offend against modesty or propriety.) Not-decent? (*indecent.*) Abstr. subst. from *decent*, *indecent*? (*decency, indecency.*) Adv.? (*decently, indecently.*) Act-of-decorating; thing-which-decorates? (*decoration.*)

<sup>1</sup> *Damnum, hurt, damage, loss* [*condemnare, to condemn*]. *Decēre, to be becoming (to).* *Decus, decōris, n. ornament, grace.* *Delēre, to blot out, destroy utterly.* *Densus, thick.* *Dens, dentis, tooth.*

One-who-decorates ? (decorator.) Not-decorous ? (indecorous.) Capable-of-being-blotted-out ? (de-lible.) Abstr. subst. from *indelible* ? (indelibility.) Adv. ? (indelibly.) Abstr. subst. from *dense* ? (density, dense-ness.) To make-completely-thick ? (to condense.) Put *dens-* into its Latin verb-form. (densat-.) Act-of-condensing ? (condensation.) One-who-condenses ? (a condenser.) How is con-denser used ? (It is used of an *instrument* or *vessel* that *condenses* air.) Adj. from *dent-* ? (dental.) Act-of-teething ; time-of-teething ? (dention.) Toothed ? (dentated.) How is *dentated* used ? (In botany, or 'the doctrine of plants,' a '*dentated* root' is a root with *tooth-like* projections.) Put *dent-* into its diminutive form. (dent-i-oul.) Furnished-with-little-teeth ? (denticulated.) What is a *denti-culated* leaf ? (A leaf that is armed with little teeth, as it were.)

---

129 *Damn-*: (1) To *in-demn-i-fy*: to *make* a man without *loss*; to make his loss up to him; or secure him against loss.

(2) *Dam-age*: this is from *damn*, with the barbarous Latin termination (*agium*) *age*, which is very common in the French language. Hence to *endamage*.

*Decōr-*, *decōrum* [the neuter of a Latin adjective]: *seemliness*, propriety, considered as a rule.

*Dent-*: (1) to *indent*, to *cut teeth* in any thing; to notch, jag, &c. (2) Hence an *indenture*, which is a writing containing a contract. It was so called because two copies were written side by side on one paper, and then torn off from each other in a *toothed* or *jagged* line. Each party then took a copy, and the *agreement*, or fitting together, of the two *jagged* edges, was a proof of their being the original documents. To *indenture* an apprentice is to bind him by indentures.

- 130 Act-of-indemnifying; thing-that-indemnifies? (indemnification.) Not-decorum? (indecorum.) What is 'to be guilty of an *indecorum*?' (To be guilty of an impropriety, an indelicacy.) Act-of-indenting, or state-of-being-indented? (indentation.)

### LESSON XXXVII.

#### Key-words.

#### Latin Roots <sup>1</sup>.

- 131 DEXTERITY : *skilfulness*; properly, *right-handedness*. dexter-, } *on the right hand*;  
dextr-, } *right* (opposed to *left*)

The DEITY : the *god-head*; GOD. de-, God.

TO DEDICATE : to *devote to*. dīca-, to *make known, proclaim*; *dedicate to*.

TO CONTRADICT : to *dic-*, } *to say, speak, tell*.  
*speak against*; to *say dict-*, }  
*the opposite of what*  
*another has said*.

#### EXERCISE 37.

- 132 Skilful? (dextrous.) Skilfully? (dextrously.) Skilfulness? (dexterity.) To-make-a-god? (to deify.) The making-of-a-god? (deification.) Act-of-dedicating? state-of-being-dedicated? (dedication.) Act-of-saying, or speaking? (diction, style.) To say-to? (to addict.) How is to *addict* now used? (Chiefly in the passive voice, to be *addicted to*<sup>2</sup> = to be *given up to*, or *inclined*; *mostly to something bad*.) Abstr. subst. from *addict*? (addiction.) Given-up to? (addicted to.) One-who-contradicts? (contradictor.) Act-of-contradicting? (contradiction.) Adj. from *contradict*? (contradictory.) A

<sup>1</sup> Dexter, *on the right-hand*. Deus, GOD. Dīcare, (1) *to make known, to proclaim*; (2) but usually, *to devote to, to consecrate to*. Dīcere (dixi, dictum), *to say, to speak* (as an orator).

<sup>2</sup> To *addict* was originally the act of a judge 'saying a thing to a man,' = *conveying it to him by his words or decrees*.

thing-said-out? (an e-dict.) What is an *edict*? (The decree or proclamation of a governor.) A-thing-spoken-between? a saying interposed? (an interdict.) What is an *interdict*? for instance, in the phrase, 'to lay a country under an *interdict*?' (An *interdict* is a *forbidding order* or *decree*, a prohibition. To lay a country under an *interdict* was a tyrannical act of the popes, when they forbade the clergy to perform divine service in a country.) To tell-beforehand? (to predict.) Act-of-telling-beforehand, or thing-foretold? (prediction.)

---

133 *Dicā-* : (1) To *abdicate*, is to devote oneself back, as it were; to *free* oneself from what one *had been devoted to* : hence to *lay down* an office.

(2) To *indicate* : this verb (which seems to be re-formed from *indic-*, root of *index*) = to *point out*.

(3) To *predicate*<sup>3</sup>: to proclaim publicly. The *predicate* in grammar is the *assertion* made about the thing in question. From *predicate* is formed *preach*, by a *course* of abridgement and change.

*Dic-* : } (1) A *benediction* (bene = *well*); a blessing.  
*Dict-* : } (2) A *malediction* (male = *ill*); a curse.

(3) To *dictate* : (1) to say what others are to write down, or follow; (2) to say authoritatively.

(4) *Dictionary* : collection of words, word-book.

(5) *Ditto* (for *dicto*): the repetition of what was *aforsaid*.

(6) *Jurisdiction* (*juri-*, from *jus*, right, law):

<sup>3</sup> Obs. in *indicate*, *predicate*, *dica* has the meaning of *saying*, and it was another, probably a *strengthened*, form of *dic*.

(1) the power to pronounce the law (i. e. to administer justice); (2) the district in which a person possesses that power.

(7) *Indict* (pronounced *indite*): to accuse of a misdemeanor by a *writing*. It is the privilege of a grand-jury.

(8) *Indite*: to *compose*; commit to writing.

(9) *Valediction* (*vale* = farewell): a *farewell*.

134 One-who-dictates? (dictator.) How used? (Of a magistrate at Rome, chosen, with absolute power, in times of great danger.) Power-of-dictator? (dictatorship.) Act-of-dictating? (dictation.) Act-of-indicating? (indication.) Adj. from *indicate*? (indicatory and indicative.) Bill-by-which-a-person-is-indicted? (indictment.) Adj. from *interdict*? (interdictory.) Adj. from *valedict*? (valedictory.) One-who-indicates? (an indicator.) One-who-preaches? (preacher.)

## LESSON XXXVIII.

### Key-words.

### Latin Roots<sup>4</sup>.

135 A DIGNITY: a post of honour that should be given to the *worthiest*.

A DISCIPLE: one who *disc-*, to learn.  
*learns* from another.

DIVINE: belonging or relating to the *Deity*. *div-*, a god.

DIVISION: the act of *divid-*, } to divide.  
*dividing*. *divis-*, }

<sup>4</sup> Dignus, *worthy, deserving* (of). Discere (didici), *to learn*. Divus, *a god*. Divinus, *divine*.

## EXERCISE 38.

- 136 What is the *opposite* of *dignity*? (in-dignity.) What is an *indignity*? (*Unworthy* treatment, an insult or disgrace.) Put *dign-* into its verb-form. (dignate.) Abstr. subst. from *in-dignat-*? (indignation.) What is *indignation*? (The feeling of resentment caused by *unworthy* treatment.) Feeling-indignation? (indignant.) Thoroughly-worthy? thoroughly-deserved? (condign.) What is *condign* punishment? (Punishment well deserved.) To make-worthy? (to dignify.) Does this *now* mean to make worthy? (No; except in the sense of making a man *worthy* of respect from his outward rank; or a thing worthy of admiration.) Act-of-teaching? *or*, body of instruction given? (discipline.) How is *discipline* now used? (Principally of *training* by *rules* of government and conduct.) One-who-maintains-strict-discipline? (a disciplinarian.) Not-disciplined? (*un-disciplined*.) Abstr. subst. from *divine*? (divinity.) The divinity is the Deity: what is *divinity* as a subject of study? (The study of the Bible and religion.) What is this also called? (theology<sup>a</sup>.) What is *to divine*? (To guess or conjecture, properly by the assistance of some heavenly power.) Abstr. subst. from *divine*? (divination.) What was *divination*? (The art of foretelling the future; especially as practised by soothsayers, &c., by the help of their *false gods*, that is, *devils*.) Capable-of-being-divided? (divisible.) Abstr. subst. from *divisible*? (divisibility.) Not-capable-of-being-divided? (indivisibility.) One-who-divides? (a divider: in arithmetic, a *divisor*.) What is the arithmetical name for the *sum-to-be-divided*? (the dividend.) Has 'a *dividend*' any other meaning? (It is used for the *portion* of the interest *to be divided* [or given after division] to each borrowed *hundred pounds* large sums raised by government or public bodies.) To divide-under? (to sub-divide.) What is to *sub-divide*? (To make a *secondary* division; that is, when a *division* has been made, to *divide further* the

<sup>a</sup> From the Greek.



portions of that principal division.) Act-of-subdividing? or, subdivided-portion? (subdivision.) Capable-of-being-subdivided? (subdivisible.) Is there any form for *not-divided* besides *un-divided*? (*Yes*; individual.) How is the word *individual* now used? (Of one person or thing; as if a multitude were *subdivided* till one *only* was left.)

---

~~EXERCISE XXXVIII~~

---

- 137 *dign-*: (1) to *deign*, to *condescend*, to think a thing *worth* doing by a man like oneself: and (2), with spelling still further altered, *dis-dain*, *disdainful*, &c.

- 
- 138 *di-*, *day*: (1) a *diary*, a book in which the events of each *day* are written down. (2) *diurnal*: 'belonging to the day' (opposed to *nocturnal*, 'belonging to the night'). (3) *Quotidian* (*quotus* = as many as): 'happening every day,' as: 'a *quotidian* ague,' an ague that is without a *free day* between the fits. (4) *Meridian* (for *medi dian*, *medius* = middle): an imaginary line drawn through the *sun's place* at noon, so that he is always at some point of that line at twelve o'clock in the day.

---

## LESSON XXXIX.

### Key-words.

### Latin Roots\*.

- 139 The DATIVE case: the da-, dāt-, } to give.  
 case in which we put d-, dīt-, }  
 the person to whom  
 we give or do any  
 thing.

[This root has in its compounds the meaning of *put*, *place*.]

ADDITION: putting to add-, } to add.  
 something else. addit-, }

### EXERCISE 39.

- 140 Adj. from *addition*? (additional.) To *put*-forth? (to edit.) Of what kind of *putting-forth* is to *edit* used?

\* Dāre (dēdi, dātum), to give. Addere (addidi, additum), to add.

(Of preparing a book to *go forth* into the world.) One-who-edits? (editor.) Abstr. subst. from *edit*? (edition.) Not-edited? (inedited.) Thing-given? (date.) How is *date* used? (Of the notice *given* at the head of a letter, &c., of the *time* when it was written<sup>7</sup>.) Without-a-date? (dateless.) Is *to date* also a verb? (Yes; *e.g.* to date from such a place.) What is the meaning of *to date* in the sentence, 'any thing *dates* from such a time?' (Its beginning is reckoned from such a time.) To date-before? (to antedate<sup>8</sup>.) What is *to antedate* a will? (To *date* it *before* the real time of its execution.) To add-above? to add-beyond? (to superadd.) Abstr. subst. from *superadd*? (superaddition.)

---

[From *dare* we have a great number of derivatives, some of which are very much disguised.]

141 *da-*, } (1) *datum*, pl. *data*, = 'thing given.' "I have no *data* to go upon:" nothing is given me on which I can form an opinion.

(2) *con-dition*, 'the placing together:' used (a) of the limitation or terms which are *added* to an agreement; so that the terms and the engagement are *placed together*, as it were, and proposed together to the acceptance of the person who is to perform the *con-dition*<sup>9</sup>: (b) a person's state or rank in life; the *circumstances* which, when *put-together*, determine who and what he is.

(3) a *man-date* [*manus* = hand]: 'what is given to (or into) a person's hand'<sup>10</sup>: a command *handed* to him.

(4) *re-con-dite*<sup>1</sup>: *put-back-together*: used of what is *rare* and *hidden* from common eyes.

(5) *trāditiō*: 'the handing across,' or 'what is handed across:' used of *knowledge* or *customs* handed down from one generation to another, but not founded on

---

<sup>7</sup> In a letter it is sometimes considered to include the specification of the *place* where it was written.

<sup>8</sup> "To *antedate* the bliss above."—POPE, = to *anticipate* it.

<sup>9</sup> Hence, adj. *conditional*. A conditional promise is one that is not binding unless the condition is performed. Opp. 'an *absolute* promise.'

<sup>10</sup> This is not a certain derivation.

<sup>1</sup> *Condere* (*condidi*, *conditum*), *to hide*.

written commands or documents. Hence, adj. *traditional*.

[65] *sub-due* : to *put-under* = to *conquer* or *subjugate* enemies, is probably derived from *sub-jug-are*, not (as Skinner thinks) from *subdere*. *D* and *j* are readily convertible.]

(6) *perdition* = ('the *putting through*') = *ruin, destruction*.

## LESSON XL.

### Key-words.

### Latin Roots<sup>2</sup>.

142 The DOCTRINE of the doc-ē-, } to teach.  
Apostles: the teach- doct-, }  
ing of the Apostles:  
the truths they  
taught.

DOLOROUS cries : cries dol-ē-, to grieve ; to be in  
expressing grief or pain.

The DOMESTIC animals : dōm-u-, house.  
the animals that live  
tame about our house.

The DOMINANT party : domin-, lord, master.  
the ruling party: the  
party that has the  
ascendency.

### EXERCISE 40.

143 One-who-teaches ? (doctor<sup>3</sup>.) Adj. from *doctrine*?  
(doctrinal.) Teachable? (docile.) Teachableness?  
(docility.) Not-teachable? (indocile.) How is  
*indocile* used? (Principally of those who do not  
choose to be taught.) Abstr. subst. from *indocile*?  
(indocility.) A-thing-which-teaches? (a document.)

<sup>2</sup> Dōcere (docui, doctum), to teach. Dōlère (dolui, dolitum), to grieve, to be in pain. Domus, f. a house. Dominus [probably from the same root as domus], a lord, a master.

<sup>3</sup> There are doctors in law and divinity as well as in medicine. A doctor's degree is a degree or honour conferred by universities.

What do we *now* mean by a *document*? (Some written paper that serves for instruction, evidence, or proof.) Adj. from *document*? (*documentary*.) To grieve-with? (to condole<sup>4</sup>.) Fall-of-grief? (*dole-ful*, *dole-some*.) Adv. from *doleful*? (*dole-fully*.) To make-domestic? (to domesticate.) Abstr. subst. from *domesticale*? (*domestication*.) To lord-before? [that is, *before*, or *more than* others.] (to pre-dominate.) How is to *predominate* now used? (Of prevailing or being ascendant: more commonly of *things* than of persons.) Adj. from *predominate*? (*predominant*.) What is the meaning of ANNO DOMINI? (In the year of our Lord.) What is 'the *dominical* letter' in the Almanac? (The Sunday letter, or letter that stands opposite to, and so marks, *the Lord's* day.) Act-of-dominating? (*domination*.)

---

144 *docē-*: to indoctrinate.

*dolē-*: *indolent*, properly, *not-suffering-pain*: used for a lazy person who will take no pains. Hence *indolence*, laziness.

*domu-*: another form for house is *domicile*. Hence 'a *domiciliary* visit,' a visit to a house for the purpose of searching it, by virtue of a magistrate's order.

*domin-*: (1) *dominion*, sovereign authority: the realm over which such authority extends: (2) *domain*, the territory of a king or lord: (3) to *domineer*, to rule haughtily, like a tyrannical sovereign; to assume a haughty air of superiority.

*doma-*, } to tame. Hence (1) *indomitable*, untamable: (2) to *dōmīt-*, } *daunt* [*domit-*, *dompt-*, (French pronounced nearly like *dent*), *daunt*,] to cow, to dishearten.

---

## LESSON XLI.

### Key-words.

### Latin Roots<sup>5</sup>.

145 A DONOR: a giver.      dona-, to give.

<sup>4</sup> Hence *condolement*, *condolence*; both rare.

<sup>5</sup> Donare, to give, to present (with). Dormire, to sleep. Dūbius, doubtful. Dūcere (*duxi*, *ductum*), to lead. Durus, hard.

A DORMITORY : a *sleeping* room : mostly used of a large room with many beds. dorm-i-, to *sleep*.

DUBIOUS : *doubtful*. dubi-, *doubtful*.

To CONDUCT an affair : dūc-, }  
to *lead* it to its issue. duct-, } to *lead*; to *bring*.

A DUET : a song or air in *two* parts.

An OBDURATE heart : a dūr-, *hard*.  
*hardened* or *hard*  
heart.

#### EXERCISE 41.

- 146 Act-of-giving ? thing-given ? (donation.) Is there any other form for *the thing-given* ? (Yes ; a donative.) Sleeping ? (dormant.) How is *dormant* used ? (Of *claims*, &c., that are allowed to *sleep*; that is, are not *brought forward*, or urged.) Abstr. subst. and adv. from *dubious* ? (dubiousness ; dubiously.) Put *dubi-* into its verb-form. (dubitate.) Not-capable-of-being-doubted ? (indubitable.) Adv. from *indubitable* ? (indubitably.) To bring-to ? (to adduce.) How is to *adduce* used ? (Of bringing forward arguments ; of *bringing* them, that is, to a person or subject.) To lead-together ? (to conduce.) How is to *conduce* used ? (Of *leading* to an object aimed at, *jointly with* other means ; of *assisting* to promote a purpose, &c.) Give an instance. ('This will *conduce* to your happiness.') Is there any form = to *lead-together* ? (Yes ; conduct.) To lead-from, to lead-down ? to draw-from, to draw-down ? (to de-duce.) How is to *deduce* used ? (Of *drawing* consequences from an object ; also of *tracing* something *down* from something else.) Is there any other form meaning to *draw-from* ? (Yes ; to deduct.) How is to *deduct* used ? (Of *subtracting* or *taking-off* a smaller sum from a larger.) To lead-forth ? (to educe.) To lead-into ? to bring-into ? (to induce.) How is to

*induce* used ? (Of leading a person into one's views ; of bringing him to accede to a proposal, or to act in a particular way.) To lead-within ? to bring-within ? (to introduce.) How is to *introduce* used ? (Of *bringing* a person *within* the *circle* of one's acquaintance, of making him known to us ; of bringing customs, before unknown, into fashion, &c.) To bring-forth ? (to produce.) To produce-again ? (to re-produce.) To lead-back ? to bring-back ? (to reduce.) What is to *reduce* shillings to pence ? (To bring them back to pence.) To *reduce* things to order ? (To bring them back to an orderly state.) To *reduce* a nation ? (To bring it back to obedience and submission.) What is 'to be *reduced* ?' (To be weakened ; to have lost strength ; to be pulled down.) Does *re-* mean '*back*' here ? (One may suppose that the more vigorous state was a state of *progress*, and that we are *pulled back* to our former weakness.) To lead-aside ? (to seduce.) How is to *seduce* used ? (Of leading a person aside from the path of virtue ; or, generally, from what is right.) Form the substantives from *adduce*, *deduce* or *deduct*, *reduce*, *produce*, *seduce*, &c. (adduction, deduction, reduction, production, seduction.) To lead-across ? (to traduce.) What does to *traduce* mean ? (To calumniate or vilify.) How does it get this meaning ? (Persons disgraced were *led across* some public place, to be gazed at<sup>6</sup>.) That-which-induces ? (inducement.) What is *induction* ? (It is the *drawing-in* or *collecting* a great many things of which something holds good, and then concluding, that, since it holds good of *so many*, and none of the kind are found of which it does *not* hold good, it holds good of all<sup>7</sup>.) Adj. from *induct* ? (inductive.) Abstr. subst. from *obdurate* ? (obduracy.) Put *dur-* into its verb-form. (*durate*, or *dure*.) Hardened-in ? (*indurated*.) What is to *endure* ? (to last.)

<sup>6</sup> Delatores—traducti per amphitheatri arenam.

<sup>7</sup> Thus, if *all* the animals that we *know* to chew the cud have *divided* hoofs, we conclude (*till* we find any that have not) that *all* animals that chew the cud have divided hoofs.

What is *endurance*? (The power of *holding out* under difficulties, &c.)

147 *duc-*: (1) *conduct*: the manner in which a person *leads* or *guides* himself through life; his *behaviour*. (This is not regularly formed.)

(2) *con-duit* (*duct* softened into *duit*): a channel by which water is *conducted*.

*du-*<sup>2</sup>, *two*: hence *du-plicate* [*plicare* = to fold], *duplication*, &c.; and the Eng. *double* = *duple*. *Duodecimo* [*decimus* = ten], when a sheet is folded into twelve pages.

*dur-, durance*; *prison*: *durable* = *lasting*.

## LESSON XLII.

### Key-words.

### Latin Roots<sup>1</sup>.

148 The *ELEMENTS* of literature: the first *principles* of literature. *element-, element, first principles*.

To *RED-DEM*: to *buy back*; to purchase the freedom of a slave; or pay the price of what has been pawned. *ēm-, im-,* } *empt-, take back, buy.*

### EXERCISE 42.

149 What are 'the *four elements*'? (Earth, air, fire, water.) Why were they so called? (Because they were supposed to be the *first principles* of which all other things were made.) Adj. from *element-*? (*elementary and elemental*.) What is the difference in their use? (*Elementary* relates to the first principles or beginnings of knowledge, &c.; *elemental*, to

<sup>1</sup> A *duel* is not a battle of *two* persons (as might be thought), but *duell-* is an old root = *bell-*, war.

<sup>2</sup> *Elementum, element*. *Emo* (*ēmi, emptum*), *to take, to buy*. *Sub-merē* = *sub-īmere*, for *sub-emere*, will be found in a later lesson.

the four elements, as in: 'the *elemental* strife.') Taken-out-of? (ex-empt.) What does *exempt* mean? (Free from.) Is *exempt* always an adj.? (No; it is also a verb.) What is to *exempt* a man from any thing? (To *free* him from the necessity of doing or suffering it.) Abstr. subst. from *exempt*? (exemption.) Abstr. subst. from *redeem*? (redemption.) One-who-redeems? (redeemer.) Who is our Redeemer? (Our Saviour JESUS CHRIST.) From what has he *redeemed* us? (From the power of sin and Satan.) Capable-of-being-redeemed? (redeemable.) Not-redeemable? (irredeemable.) Buying-before? (pre-emption.) What is the right of *pre-emption*? (The right of purchasing before any body else.) What is to *redeem* a promise? (To make good one's *pledged* word.)

- 
- 150 *em-, empt-*: (1) *per-empt-ory*: taking a man through; destroying all opposition: *positive, dogmatical*. A *peremptory* tone. [*Per-imere* (to take through =) to destroy.]  
 (2) *prompt* (= *pro-empt*) = taken forth: hence of what was 'visible,' 'ready at hand;' and then 'ready to do any thing;' 'quick to act and decide.'

- 
- 151 Adv. from *prompt*? (promptly.) Abstr. subst. from *prompt*? (promptness, promptitude.) What is to *prompt* a man? (When he is *not ready*, to *make* him *ready*, by telling him what to say or do.) Abstr. subst. from *peremptory*? (peremptoriness.)

- 
- 152 *extra*: without, on the outside (from *ex*): *external, exterior*; on the outside: the exterior, the outside; *extreme*, quite on the outside. The *extremity*, the most outside (= furthest) point.

*egē-*, } to want, need; *ind-ig-ent*, *needy*; very poor. Hence  
*igē-*, } indigence.

*ebri*<sup>1</sup>: drunk: to *inebriate*, to intoxicate. *Inebriety*, drunkenness.

---

<sup>1</sup> Extra, without, on the outside. Egēre, indigēre, *t* need. Ebrius, drunk.



## LESSON XLIII.

*Key-words.**Latin-Roots<sup>2</sup>.*

- 153 A TRANS-IT-ION from i-, }  
 hot to cold: a *going-* it-, } *to go*.  
*across* from hot to  
 cold [*trans* = *across*].

(*Verbs derived from EO, IT-.*)

- 'The AMB-I-ENT air:' ambi-, }  
 the air that *goes a-* ambit-, } *to go around*.  
*round* or encompasses  
 the world.
- 'Post-OB-IT bonds:' obi-, } *to go to or against*;  
 bonds that are due obit-, } *to die*<sup>3</sup>.  
 after a man's *death*.
- 'Their EX-IT:' their exi-, }  
*going out.* exit-, } *to go forth*.
- TO IN-IT-IATE: to make ini-, }  
 a man *go into* the imit-, } *to go into, to begin*.  
 knowledge or prac-  
 tice of any thing; to  
 introduce him into its  
 secrets, niceties, &c.
- SED-IT-ION: the *going* sed-it-, *sedition*.  
*apart* from one's fel-  
 low - citizens; the  
 forming a *separate*  
 and *illegal* party [*se*,  
 before a vowel *sed-*,  
 = *apart*].
- The PRÆTER-ITE: the præteri-, }  
 tense in which we præterit-, } *to go by*.  
 relate things that are  
*gone by*.

<sup>2</sup> Eo (ivi, itum), *to go*. Ambire, *to go round, to canvass*. Obire (= obire diem supremum), *to die*. Exire, *to go forth*. Inire, *to go into*. Seditio, *sedition*. Præterire, *to pass by*.

<sup>3</sup> The full phrase in Latin was, '*to go to one's last day*;' and then '*to go to*' alone was used in the same sense = *to die*.

## EXERCISE 43.

154 Adj. from *transi-*? (transient.) What does *transient* mean? (Passing over rapidly; of short duration.) Adj. from *transit-*? (transitory.) What is 'this *transitory* life?' (This life, that soon *passes over* into death; is soon over.) Is there any other form than *transition* for a *going across*? (Yes; a *transit*.) Is *transitory* the only adj. from *transit-*? (No; there is *transitive*.) What is a *transitive* verb? (A verb that denotes an action done to some person or thing, so that the action *passes over*, as it were, to the object that *suffers* it.) Abstr. subst. from *ambit-*? (ambition.) What does *ambition* mean? (Properly the *going round* to canvass for places of honour, &c.; then the *desire* of obtaining honours; the wish to distinguish oneself.) Full-of-ambition? (ambitious.) A going-round? (a circuit<sup>4</sup>.) What is a judge's *circuit*? (His *going round* to try prisoners and decide law-suits, at different county towns.) Adj. from *circuit*? (circuitous<sup>5</sup>.) Adj. from *initi-*? (initial.) What is the *initial* letter of a word? (The letter with which it *begins*.) Act-of-initiating? the being-initiated? (initiation.) Relating-to-initiation? (initiatory.) A collection-of-deaths? (an obituary.) What does an *obituary* mean? (A list, register, or account of deaths that have taken place.) Adj. from *sedition*? (seditious.) Adv. from *sedition*? (seditiously.)

155 *ambi-*: } sometimes *circum-ambient* is used for *am-*  
*ambit-*: } *bient*, it having been forgotten that the  
*amb* already expressed *around*.

*ambi-*, *ambul-*: *to walk*. Hence '*to perambulate*' a town, &c.; *to walk through* or *about* it.

*com-it-a*<sup>6</sup> (= *con-it-a-*): *to go together, to accompany*. Hence '*concomitant* circumstances' (= *accompanying* circumstances); and the substantives *concomitance*, *concomitancy*.

<sup>4</sup> Pronounced *surkit*.

<sup>5</sup> Pronounced *sur-kú-etüs*.

<sup>6</sup> Comitari, *to accompany*.

*peri-*: } to go through [that is, through their whole  
*perit-*: } existence =] to perish; which word is derived from *perire*.

*transi-*: } a trance [= *transit*, *transit*] probably comes  
*transit-*: } from this verb. Hence it is a *passing over* to what is as good as another state of existence.

*præi-<sup>1</sup>*: } to go before. Hence *prætor* (= *prætor*,  
*præit-*: } one who goes before): a high magistrate of Rome, who presided over the administration of justice, &c.

## LESSON XLIV.

## Key-words.

Latin Roots<sup>1</sup>.

156 A good EQUESTRIAN: a equ-, a horse.  
 good horseman.

To ERR: to wander; erra-, to wander.  
 to go wrong.

EXEMPLARY conduct: exempl-<sup>2</sup>, example.  
 conduct that is an example to be imitated.

## EXERCISE 44.


157 Is *equestrian* a substantive in '*equestrian exercises*?' (No; an adj.) Is the termination *-estrian* properly that of a subst. or of an adj.? (Of an adj.) Explain '*an equestrian*.' (An *equestrian person*.) A going- astray? (an error.) Why is it proper to write this word with *our*? (Because it comes to us from the French *erreur*.) Is it *usually* spelt with or without the *u*? (Without.) Adj. from *r. err-*? (erroneous.) Put *erra-* into its verb-form. (errāte.) A wandering-from? (an aberration.) What was a knight-errant? (A knight who *wandered* about in search of

<sup>1</sup> Prætor, a general; a prætor.

<sup>2</sup> This (like *exempt*) is probably from *exim-ere* (see *em-*, above), to take out = that which is taken out or selected as the best.

adventures.) *Arrant* is thought to be only a different form of *errant*; if so, what is 'an *arrant* rogue,' &c.? (A rogue who wanders about, not living like a steady citizen at home.) A thing-erred? (an erratum.) What is an *erratum*? (A mistake, especially in *printing*; a misprint.) Incapacity-of-erring? (inerrability.) Not-erring? (*un-erring*.) In an unerring-manner? (*unerringly*.) Abstr. subst. from *exemplary*? (exemplariness.) Having-no-example? (unexampled.) To make-an-example? (to exemplify.) What does to *exemplify* mean? (To give an *instance* of one's meaning.) Act-of-exemplifying? (exemplification.) Past participle of *exemplify*? (exemplified.) What is 'to *make an example*' of a person? (To punish him, for a warning to others.)

---

 *Equerry* = 'the officer who has the care of a prince's horses,' probably comes, not from *equus*, but from *scutum*. See *scut*-below.

158 *exempl-*: *sample* comes from this word [*exempl-* = *ecsembl-, esempl-, sempl-, sampl-*].

---

## LESSON XLV.

### Key-words.

### Latin Roots\*.

159 A **FABRIC**: a *building* *fabr-, work-man.*  
or *structure*.

**FACT**: a thing really *faci-, fact-,* } *to do, to make.*  
done; an event that *fici-, fect-,* }  
really happened.

### EXERCISE 45.

160 One-who-does? (a factor.) What is a *factor*? (An *agent* who *does* business for merchants.) What is the place called where *factors* reside and store their goods? (a factory.) Has a *factory* any other mean-

\* *Faber, workman.* *Facere* (*feci, factum*), *to do, to make.*

ing? (Yes; it is also used for *manufactory*, the building where goods are *made*.) What is a *factor* in arithmetic? (Either of the two numbers which are multiplied together to *make* the whole sum; *i. e.* the multiplier or multiplicand.) '*Made*,' in a bad sense = *artificial* or *got-up*? (factitious.) To do-to? (to affect, *for* ad-fect.) What is to *affect* any body? (To have some *influence* upon him; to do him some good or harm.) What is to *affect* to do or be any thing? (To try to *do* or *get* it *to* one; that is, to *pretend* to something that does not belong to one. Hence to pretend; to give oneself airs.) Abstr. subst. from *affect*? (affection and affectation.) Which of these is used in the sense of *pretence*, and giving oneself airs? (affectation.) What is an *affection* of the brain? (Some injury that it has suffered.) What is *affection* as a quality or state of mind, as in, 'to feel an *affection* for'? (Regard, fondness, love.) In-an-affected-manner? (affectedly.) Full-of-affection, disposed-to-affection? (affectionate.) *Bene* means '*well*:' form *doing-well*. (beneficent.) Of what sort of *well-doing* is this word used? (Of bountifulness.) Abstr. subst. from *beneficent*? (beneficence.) Is there any other adj. from *benefici*-? (beneficial.) What does *beneficial* mean? (Working-well; salutary.) What are the substantives from *benefici*-? (benefice and benefit.) What is *benefice*? (The *good-deed* done to a Christian minister by giving him a house and maintenance: hence = a *living*.) What is 'a *beneficed* clergyman'? (A clergyman who holds a *benefice* or living; opposed to one who is only a curate, or performs no clerical duty.) What is a *benefit*? (A good deed done to a person; a kindness.) One-who-does-good? (a benefactor.) The making-together? (confection.) What are *confections*? (Compositions of fruits and sugar, &c.; sweet-meats.) One-who-prepares-confections? (a confectioner.) Confectioner's-goods, collectively? (confectionary.) *Facile* = do-able = *easy*: abstr. subst. from *facile*? (facility.) What is the opposite of *facility*? (difficulty.) Making-from? (deficient.)

What does *deficient* mean? (Making a thing less perfect instead of more: acting as a drawback from any thing: hence, *wanting*, coming-short-of.) What is 'to be *deficient*' in any thing? (Not to possess a proper supply of it.) Abstr. subst. from *deficient*? (deficiency *and* deficiency.) Made-from? made-down-from? (defect.) What is a *defect*? (That by which any thing is deficient; blemish, fault, &c.) Having-defects? relating-to-defects? (defective.) The doing-from? (defection.) What is the *defection* of any body? (His falling away from a party to which he belonged, or from a person with whom he had sided<sup>1</sup>.) Capable-of-defection? (defectible.) Incapable-of-defection? (indefectible.) What does *indefectible* mean? (That cannot fail or prove deficient.) Making-out-and-out? making thoroughly? (efficient, *for e- or ex-*efficient.) What is *efficient*? (Doing its work well.) What adjectives are there of nearly similar meaning from *r. effic-*, or *effect*? (Effective, efficacious, effectual.) From what abstr. subst. does *efficacious* come? (From *efficacy*.) Form abstr. substantives from *effective* and *efficient*? (effectiveness *and* efficiency.) In-an-effectual-manner? (effectually.) In-an-efficient-manner? (efficiently.) Not-effectual? (ineffectual.) Not-effective? (ineffective.) Not-efficacy? (inefficacy.) Not-efficient? (inefficient<sup>2</sup>.) To do-in? to make-in? (to infect.) How is to *infect* used? (Of *doing* a disease *into* one: of making a man catch a contagious disorder.) Act-of-infecting? (infection.) Done-through? done-thoroughly? (perfect.) Abstr. subst. from *perfect*? (perfection.) Not-perfect? (imperfect.) Not-perfection? (imperfection.) The making-back-again? (refection.) How is *refection* used? (Of a *repast* that makes one as strong as before; that brings back one's strength.) Making-forwards? (proficient.) Abstr. subst. from *proficient*? (proficiency, or proficience.) What is *proficiency*? (One's *advance*, *progress*, or *forwardness*

<sup>1</sup> 'Our *defection* from God.' 'The *defection* of the nobles.'

<sup>2</sup> Form the adverbs and abstr. substantives from these adjectives.

in a study or branch of learning.) Made-before? (*pre-fect.*) What is a *prefect*? (The governor of a province.) Doing-enough? (satisfaction.) How is *satisfaction* used? (Of what is *enough* to content or *satisfy* a man.) To make-under? (To suf-fice, *for* sub-fice.) How does to *suffice* get its meaning of *to be enough*? (It probably meant originally to *make* something *under* what required support: hence, to be *adequate to support* the thing in question.) What is the adj. from *suffice*? (sufficient.) Abstr. subst. from *sufficient*? (sufficiency.)

161 NOTE. There are a *whole* host of other compounds, many of which will appear elsewhere.

- (1) Those ending in *-fy*, *-fiable*, *-fication*, *-ficient*, *-ficator* (justify, justifiable, justification, significant, pacificator: satisfy).
- (2) ————— *-feit* (through the French *fait*, for *fact*), *forfeit*, *counterfeit*.
- (3) ————— *-fic* (*horrific*, making or causing horror; *terrific*).
- (4) ————— *-fit* (*profit*, *profitable*: *comfit*).
- (5) *Feasible* [French, *faisible*], *do-able*, *that can be done*. Hence *feasibility*.
- (6) *Fac-totum* (= 'do the whole'): a person who does every thing for any body.
- (7) *Fac-simile* (= 'do the like'), but it means a *likeness done*: an exact copy of writings, paintings, &c.
- (8) *Faction*, *factionous*: relates to *doing* or *making* parties, disturbances, &c., in a state.
- (9) *Pontiff* (for *pontifex*): a chief priest. Hence *pontifical*.

- (10) *Faculty* : *power of doing*. ‘The mental *faculties*’ = the active powers of the mind.
- (11) *Face* : properly, the shape or thing *made*<sup>3</sup>. Hence, the *surface*<sup>4</sup>, the *upper face* or *side* of any thing.
- (12) To *deface* : to take *from* the *face* of any thing ; to diminish its pleasing appearance. To *efface* : to do *out* ; that is, to *erase* ; to *blot* or *rub out*.

## LESSON XLVI.

*Key-words.**Latin Roots*<sup>5</sup>.

162 FALSE : <i>deceitful, untrue.</i>	fall-, } fals-, }	<i>to deceive.</i>
FAMILY.	fām-, } famili-, }	<i>family, household.</i>
PROFANE : such as should be kept <i>before</i> (not admitted <i>into</i> ) a <i>temple</i> .	fān-,	<i>temple.</i>
AF-FABLE : ready to <i>speak</i> to other persons, who are one's inferiors in rank.	fa-, } fat-, }	<i>to speak (to).</i>
(From root <i>fa</i> -.)		
FABLE.	fabul-,	<i>fable.</i>
FAME.	fām-,	<i>report ; what people say.</i>
FATE.	fat-,	<i>fate.</i>

<sup>3</sup> So *figura*, from *ingo*.<sup>4</sup> The adj. belonging to *surface* is *superficial* (from the Latin *superficies*), on the *surface only* ; not deep, &c.<sup>5</sup> Fallere (fefelli, falsum), *to deceive*. Familia, *household, family*. Fanum, *temple*. Fari, *to speak*. Fabula, *fable*. Fatum, *fate*. Fama, *report*. Fateri (fessus sum), *to confess*. Confiteri (confessus sum), *to confess*. Fatuus, *foolish*.



To CONFESS.

fate-, fass-, }  
fite-, fess-, } *to confess.*

To INFATUATE : to fatu-, *foolish.*  
*make foolish, infect*  
*with folly.*

## EXERCISE 46.

- 163 Deceitful? (fallacious.) Adj. from *famili-*? (familiar.) Abstr. subst. from *familiar*? (familiarity.) To make-familiar? (to familiarize.) Is *profane* always an adj.? (No; it is also a verb: *to profane*.) Subst. to express the act from *to profane*? (profanation.) A *fanatic* properly meant a person under the influence of a heathen *temple*; hence, wild and almost *frenzied* in religious opinions: what is the subst. from *fanatic*? (fanaticism.) Is *fanatic* only a subst.? (No; it is properly an adj., 'a *fanatic*' being 'a *fanatic* person.') Is there any other adj.? (Yes; fanatical.) Abstr. subst. from *affable*? (affability.) Adj. from r. *fabul-*? (fabulous.) Adj. from *fame*? (famous.) The opposite of *famous*? (infamous.) What is the subst. to which *infamous* belongs? (infamy.) What is to *de-fame*? (To take away from a person's *fame*; to lessen his good reputation.) Abstr. subst. from *defame*? (defamation.) Abstr. subst. from r. *fatu-*? (fatuity.) To make-foolish? (to infatuate.) Of what kind of *folly* do we use *fatuity*, *infatuate*, &c.? (Of extreme, unaccountable *folly in conduct*, that is blind to the suggestions of common sense.) Abstr. subst. from *infatuate*? (infatuation.) Abstr. subst. from *confess*? (confession.) One-who-confesses? (confessor.) What is a *confessor* in the Roman Catholic church? (The priest to whom a penitent *confesses* his sins: the regular *confession* of sins being prescribed as a duty by the Church of Rome.) What do we mean when we call an eminent Christian a *confessor*? (We mean that the person so called has *confessed* Christ in much suffering and persecution, but has not been called to undergo

martyrdom. A *confessor* has a martyr's spirit, but has not died a martyr's death.) Adv. from *confessed*? (confessedly.)

164 *Fām*-<sup>6</sup> [not to be confounded with *fām*-]: *hunger*. Hence to *famish*, to starve, to kill with hunger. *Famine*, scarcity of food, when many must *hunger*.

*fæc* : *dregs* : (1) *seculent*, having dregs, having a thick sediment. Abstr. subst. *feculence*. (2) To *defecate* : to clear off from the dregs.

*falc*- : *sickle* or *scythe*. Hence, *falcated*, curved like the crescent moon.

*farr*- : *wheat corn* : } (1) *farinaceous* food ; food consisting  
*farin*- : *meal* of wheat, &c. } of the *meal* or *flour* of corn and  
 other grains. (2) A *farrago*, properly 'mixed corn for cattle :'  
 hence, 'a *farrago* of nonsense' = a *mass* or *medley* kneaded, as  
 it were, together.

*Farci*- : to *stuff* : hence, (1) *farcing*, stuffing. (2) A *farce* : a sort of comic play, *stuffed up* with highly-seasoned nonsense.

## LESSON XLVII.

### Key-words.

### Latin Roots<sup>1</sup>.

165 FASTIDIOUSNESS : *disdainfulness* ; the *being over-nice* in *rejecting* what is not to one's taste ; the *being difficult* to *please*.

TO FATIGUE.

*fatiga*-<sup>2</sup>, to *fatigue*, to *weary*.

TO FAVOUR.

*favē*-, to *favour*.

<sup>6</sup> *Fames*, *f. hunger*. *Fæx* (*fæcis*), *dregs*. *Falx* (*falcis*), *reaping-hook*, *sickle*, *scythe*. *Far* (*farris*), *bread-corn*. *Farina*, *flour*, *meal*. *Farcire* (*farci*, *fartum*), to *stuff*.

<sup>7</sup> *Fastidium*, *pride*, *disgust*. *Fatigare*, to *weary*, to *fatigue*. *Favēre*, (*favi*, *fautum*), to *favour*. *Defendere* (*defendi*, *defensum*), to *ward off*, to *defend*. *Offendo* (*offendi*, *offensum*), to *dash against* ; to *offend*.

<sup>8</sup> *Fastidium* (= *fatis* *tædium*) and *fatigo* are thought to come from *fatis*, an old word = 'enough,' 'satiety.'

(From *fend-*, *fens-*, [an obsolete verb, meaning *to strike* or *thrust*<sup>9</sup>] come—)

TO DEFEND.                      defend-, } *to strike* or *ward*  
   defens-, } *off*; *defend*.

TO OFFEND: *to strike*      offend-<sup>1</sup>, } *to dash against*; *to*  
   against; *to hurt* a      offens-, } *offend*.  
   person's feelings or  
   prejudices.

#### EXERCISE 47.

- 166 Adj. from r. *fastidi-*? (*fastidious*.) Abstr. subst. and adv. from *fastidious*? (*fastidiousness*; *fastidiously*.) Able-to-be-fatigued? (*fatigable*.) Does this adj. exist? (No.) An old adj. of this meaning is *defatigable*: form from this r. not-able-to-be-fatigued? (*in-defatigable*.) Why should *favour* be spelt with *u*? (Because it comes to us through the French *fa-vueur*.) Should *favorable* have the *u* or not? (It should not have it.) Why? (Because the French *favorable*<sup>2</sup> has no *u*<sup>3</sup>.) One-who-favours? (a favourer.) One-who-defends? (A defender, or defendant.) What difference in use is there between *defender* and *defendant*? (A *defendant* is one who has to *defend himself* in a court of justice.) To what is a *defendant* opposed? (To a *plaintiff*.) What are *plaintiff* and *defendant* called with reference to each other? (*Correlative* terms.) What is the subst. meaning the *thing*? (*defence*.) Without-defence? (*defence-less*.) Capable-of-being-defended? (*defensible*.) Not-defensible? (*in-defensible*.) Relating-to-defence? (*defensive*.) To what is *defensive* opposed? (To *offensive*.) What is a *defensive* war? (One in which we are attacked, and only *defend* ourselves<sup>4</sup>.) One-who-offends? (an offender.) What is the subst. from *offend* to denote the *thing*? (*offence*.) Relating-to-offence? giving-offence?

<sup>9</sup> *Fence* probably comes from this root.

<sup>1</sup> For *ob-fend*.

<sup>2</sup> Pronounced nearly *fävörab'l*.

<sup>3</sup> See Part I. 142.

<sup>4</sup> So 'weapons of *defence*' are opposed to 'weapons of *offence*.'

(offensive.) Adv. from *offensive*? (offensively.)  
 Not-offensive? (inoffensive.) Not-defended? (un-  
 defended.)

167 *Fascin*-<sup>5</sup>: *enchantment*; especially by the eye. Hence *to fascinate*, to enchant by attractive looks, words, &c. Subst. *fascination*.

*Fauc*-: *throat*. Hence *suf-focate* [for *sub-fauc-ate*], to throttle, to destroy the power of breathing by closeness, heat, &c.

*Fēl*-: *cat*. Hence the *feline* race = 'the cat kind,' the genus *Felis*.

### LESSON XLVIII.

[From old root *fe*- = *to make fruitful*; *to bring forth fruit*.]

*Key-words.*


*Latin Roots*<sup>6</sup>.

168 **FECUNDITY**: *fertility*. *fecund*-, *fruitful*, *fertile*.

**FELICITY**: *happiness*. *felic*-, originally *fruitful*; then *prosperous*, *happy*.

**FEMININE**: *relating to* *fēmin*-, *woman*.  
*women*.

**FERTILE**: *bearing much* *fēr*-<sup>7</sup>, *to bear*, *to carry*.  
*produce*.

 *Fēr*- borrows the root *lāt*- for the *t* forms (i. e. for those forms whose terminations begin with *t*, or are added on to the root of the verb augmented by *t*: e. g. *t-ion*; *t-or*; *t-able*).

### EXERCISE 48.

169 What is the opp. of *fecundity*? (*infecundity*.) To make-fruitful? (*fecundate*.) Act-of-making-fruitful? (*fecundation*.) Adj. from *felicity*? (*felicitous*.) Of what is the rare adj. *felicitous* used? (Of happy combinations in art, poetry, &c.; of happy or lucky

<sup>5</sup> *Fascinum*, *enchantment*. *Fauces* (*pl.*), *throat*. *Felis*, *cat*.

<sup>6</sup> *Fecundus*, *fruitful*, *fertile*. *Felix* (*felicitis*), *prosperous*, *happy*. *Femina*, *woman*. *Ferre* (*tūli*, *lātum*), *to bear*, *to carry*.

<sup>7</sup> *Fēr*- is probably itself connected with *r. fe*-.

notions, &c.) To make-happy ? (to felicitate.) How is to *felicitate* used ? (In the sense of *making* a man *happy* by *pronouncing* him so ; that is, of congratulating him.) Congratulation ? (felicitation.) What is the opp. of *felicity* ? (infelicity.) Opp. of *felicitous* ? (infelicitous.) Made-out-and-out-like-a-woman ? (effeminate, *for* ex-feminate.) Is *effeminate* always an adj. ? (No.) What other part of speech is it ? (A verb.) Abstr. subst. from *effeminate* ? (effeminacy.) To bear-down ? (to defer.) What are the two meanings of *defer* ? (1. To carry a thing further *down*, with reference to time ; i. e. to *delay* it : 2. To *bear* one's own feelings *down* before another person ; to *bear* oneself *lowly* towards him.) How is *defer* used in the latter sense ? (With the preposition *to* : to *defer* to a man.) Abstr. subst. from to *defer* ? (dêference.) What is *deference* ? (The *respectful submission* of one's judgement or will to that of another person.) Adj. from *deference* ? (deferential.) To bear-in-different-directions ? (to differ.) What is to *differ* ? (Properly, to *bear* oneself or any thing in a different direction : hence, not to be like ; to vary from ; to be distinct from.) *Differing* as adj. ? (different.) Abstr. subst. from *differ* ? (difference.) Is there any other form for to bear-[or *carry*-] in-different-directions ? (Yes ; to *dilate*, from the borrowed root *lât*-.) What is 'to *dilate* upon a subject ?' (To enlarge upon it.) What is to *dilate*, when we say, 'air *dilates* the lungs ?' (To swell any thing *out* ; to expand it.) Of what is *dilate* the opp. ? (Of to *contract*.) Capable-of-being-dilated ? (dilatable.) Abstr. subst. from *dilatable* ? (dilatability.) To carry-together ? (to confer.) Of what kind of carrying together is *confer* used ? (Of *carrying* together one's *counsels* ; of meeting to talk over plans, &c.) Abstr. subst. from *confer* ? (conference, *or* collation.) What is a *conference* ? (A meeting for deliberation.) What is a *collation*, when we speak of a 'cold *collation* ?' (A *repast* ; food brought together.) What is the 'collation of manuscripts ?' (The *bringing together*

for the purpose of comparison ; the comparison of a manuscript with another, or with the usual text.) A carrying-around ? (circum-ference.) What is the *circumference* ? (The line that is *carried round* a circle, that bounds a circle.) Borne-out ? (elate, or elated.) What does *elated* mean ? (Elevated with joy or pride ; set up ; puffed up.) To bear-in, or carry-in ? (to in-fer.) How is to *infer* used ? (Of *carrying-in* a conclusion ; of *gathering* or *drawing* a conclusion.) Act-of-infering ? or thing-inferred ? (inference.) To carry-against ? to carry-to-meet ? (to offer.) Act-of-offering ? or thing-offered ? (offering or oblation.) How is *oblation* now used ? (Only of a sacrificial offering<sup>1</sup>.) To bring-forwards ? (to pro-f-fer.) How is to *proffer* used ? (In the sense of offering a thing to any body for his acceptance.) Is *proffer* always a verb ? (No ; sometimes a substantive, as in, 'to make a proffer<sup>2</sup> of any thing.') To carry-back ? (to re-fer.) What is to *refer* a question to a person or court ? (To *carry it away* [properly, *to carry it back*] to him or it for decision.) What is 'to *refer* any thing to a cause ?' (To *carry it back*, as it were, to that cause ; to *trace it back* to it.) Is to *refer* ever used intransitively ? if so, give an instance. (Yes<sup>3</sup> ; as in, 'this refers to any thing ;' 'will refer to my friend.') Subst. to express the *act* from *refer* ? (reference.) Mention some of the forms derived from *re-* and *lat-* ? (relate, relation, relative ; relational ; cor-relative.) What is to *relate* a tale ? (To *bring it forth again* from the silence in which it slept, or from the memory of the narrator.) Is to *relate* ever used intransitively ? (Yes<sup>1</sup> ; to *relate to* is used in the same sense as 'to *refer to*.) Subst. to express the *act* or *state* from *relate* ? (relation.) What is 'to be *related*' to any body ? (To be connected with him by blood.) What is the abstr. subst. to express the *state-of-being-related* ? (relationship.)

<sup>1</sup> " By His one oblation of himself once offered."

<sup>2</sup> Rare.

<sup>3</sup> As in, " All negative words *relate* to positive ideas."—Locke.

Should we call 'those who *are related to us*' our *relatives* or our *relations*? (our *relations*?.) What is the *relative* pronoun? why so called? (*Who, which*, and sometimes *that*; -they are so called because they *relate* to a person or thing before mentioned, or easily understood, called the *antecedent*.) What are *relative* terms? (Terms of which one always implies the other; as a *father* implies a *son* or *daughter*; a *child*, a *parent*; a *king*, some *subjects*, &c.) What are such terms called with reference to each other? (cor-relative terms, *for* con-relative.) Adj. from *relate*? (Relative, *and* relational.) What is 'the *relative* magnitude' of two bodies? (Their magnitude considered, not *absolutely*, but *relatively*; that is, with *reference* to each other, or to the usual magnitude of such things, &c.) To what is *relative* in this sense opposed? (To *absolute*.) One-who-relates? (relater.) Capable-of-being-referred? (referable, *or* referrible.) What is a *referee*? (The person to whom a cause or question is *referred* for decision.) To bear-under? (To suffer, *for* sub-fer.) How is to *suffer* used? (For to endure *or* bear; *and for* to allow *or* permit.) Explain the phrase 'to do any thing by *sufferance*.' (To do by *permission*—often by *tacit* permission—what one has *no right* to do.) Capable-of-being-suffered? (sufferable.) Not-sufferable? (insufferable.) Adj. from *super-* and *lat-*? (supérative.) What is *superlative*? (*Carried above* others; pre-eminent; pre-eminently good, &c.) What is 'the *superlative* degree?' (The highest degree; that form of an adjective, which denotes the person or thing which possesses the quality in a higher degree, than any of those persons or things with which he or it is compared.) To bear-across? *to* carry-across? (to transfer; to translate.) Abstr. subst. from *transfer*? (transference.) From *translate*? (translation.) What kind of *carry-*

<sup>2</sup> See Horne Tooke's condemnation of the ridiculous affectation of the false and unfounded accuracy of using 'relatives,' at p. 75 (art. 262) of "English Grammar for Classical Schools." It is unfounded, because in every language many *abstract* substantives have come to be used *concretely*; i. e. to denote *persons* or *things*.

*ing-across*, or *carrying-over*, do *translate* and *translation* mean? (The *carrying across* to one language the meaning of what was written or spoken in another.) Capable-of-being-transferred? (transferable.) Capable-of-being-translated? (translatable.) Not-translatable? (untranslatable.) One-who-translates? (translator.) Act-of-translating? (translation.) Does *translation* always mean the *act of translating*? (No; it also means the *result* of that act.)

- 170 *Fer-* } (1) *Collation* is the act by which a Bishop at  
*Lat-* } once *presents* and *institutes* a clergyman  
to a living of which he (the Bishop) has  
the patronage.
- (2) There are many compounds in *ferous* (= *bearing*), as *umbelliferous* [plants], &c.
- (3) To *voci-ferate* [*vox, vocis* = voice], to *carry out* one's *voice* loudly; to shout out; clamour.

### LESSON XLIX.

#### Key-words.

#### Latin Roots<sup>3</sup>.

171 FEROCIOUS : savagely *ferōc-*, *savagely fierce*.  
*fierce*.

FERVENT *charity: warm* *fervē-*, *to be hot*.  
*ardent charity*.

A FESTIVAL : *a holiday*. *fest-*, *festal*, *festive*.

FIDELITY : *faithfulness*, { *fīd-e-*, *faith*.  
*trustworthiness*. { *fīd*, *to trust*.

TO FIX. { *fig-*,  
*fix* (*for fig-s*), } *to fix*.

<sup>3</sup> *Ferox* (*ferōcis*), *savagely fierce*. *Fervēre* (*ferbui*), *to be hot*. *Festus*, *festal*. *Fides* (*fīdei*), *faith*. *Fidere*, *to trust*. *Figere* (*fīxi*, *fixum*), *to fix*. *Ferrum*, *iron*.



## EXERCISE 49.

172 Abstr. subst. from *ferocious*? (ferocity.) Abstr. subst. and adv. from *fervent*? (fervency, fervently.) Is there any other abstr. subst. besides *fervency*? (Yes; fervour.) Is there any adj. besides *fervent*? (Yes; fervid.) What is the difference in use between *fervid* and *fervent*? (*Fervent* is more commonly used of moral qualities, as *piety*, *charity*, *zeal* in a good cause; *fervid*, of a speaker's style, &c.) Abstr. subst. from *festive*? (festivity.) What is the opp. of *fest*? (in-fest.) What is to *infest* a country? (To make it any thing but a *happy* country, or country in a *holiday* mood: hence, to *infest* = to *trouble*, *annoy*, *harass* by its presence.) What form from *ferve*- would mean to *begin* to be hot? (fervesc-.) What is to *effervesce*? (To *begin to boil up*, as it were; of a liquid that begins to be in violent commotion by some action within itself.) What is the adj. from *effervesce*? (effervescent.) Abstr. subst. from *effervescent*? (effervescence.) To *ferment* also comes from *ferve*-: form *act-of-fermenting*. (fermentation.) To trust-thoroughly? (to confide.) Adj. from *confide*? (confident.) Abstr. subst. and adv. from *confident*? (confidence, confidently.) The opp. of *fidelity*? (infidelity.) What is an *infidel*? (an unbeliever.) What is a *confidant*? (One to whom a person imparts his secrets.) To fix-to? (To affix, *for* ad-fix.) To fix-in? (to in-fix.) To fix-before? (to prefix.) To fix-through? (to transfix.) What does to *transfix* mean? (To fix by piercing through.)

- 
- 173 *Fid-e*: faith. (1) *Diffident*; distrustful of oneself;  
*fīd-*: to trust. *timid*, from shyness and self-distrust.
- (2) *Perfidy* (*per* here has a *bad* meaning = *mis*, &c.); *treacherous breach of faith*: hence, adj. *perfidious*.

(3) *Affiance*, to *defy*, *defiance*, are all from r. *fid-*, shortened into *fi-* in French, by dropping the *d*.

(4) An *affidavit* (for *ad-fidavit*) is a *written declaration confirmed by an oath*.

*Fig-* : } to *fix*. (1) A *cruci-fix* : a representation of our  
*Fix-* : } Lord JESUS CHRIST *fixed to the cross* [*crux*,  
*crucis*, *cross*]. (2) A *fixture* : an article of  
 furniture, which must not be moved by a  
 tenant when he leaves a house.

174 *Ferr-* : *iron*. Hence (1) *ferruginous*, (a) containing particles of iron; (b) of the colour of iron. (2) *Farrier* (for *ferrier*), a maker of *iron shoes* for horses. [*Ferrum*, *iron*.]

## LESSON L.

### Key-words.

### Latin Roots<sup>4</sup>.

175 A *FISSURE* : a *cleft*.

*find-*, }  
*fiss-*, } to *cleave*.

FICTITIOUS : *feigned*,  
*imaginary*; not real.

*finger-*, } to *feign* (which is the  
*fict-*, } same word differ-  
 ently spelt).

TO FINISH : to *end*.

*fin-*, *end*; *boundary*, *limit*.

FIRM.

*firm-*, *firm*.

### EXERCISE 50.

176 Capable-of-being-cleft? (*fissile*.) Doubly-cleft? or  
 cleft-into-two-parts? (*bifid*.) Cleft-into-three-  
 parts? (*trifid*.) Feigning? as subst. (*fiction*.)  
 Does *fiction* ever mean the *thing feigned*? (Yes.)  
 Is there any other term for the *thing feigned*? (Yes;  
*figment*.) Not-feigned? (*un-feigned*.) Adj. from  
 r. *fin-*? (*final*.) Not-bounded? (*infinite*.) Abstr.

<sup>4</sup> Findere (*ſidi*, *ſiſſum*), to *cleave*. Fingere (*ſinxi*, *ſictum*), to *feign*.  
 Finis, *end*. Firmus, *firm*.

subst. from *infinite* ? (infinity.) To bound-together ? (to confine.) How is to *confine* used ? (Of restraining a person or thing within limits ; of shutting him or it up.) Abstr. subst. from *confine* ? (confinement.) What are ' the *confin*es of a country,' with accent on the *con* ? (The borders of a country, &c.) To limit-from ? (to define.) How is to *define* used ? (Of determining and marking the limits of any thing.) What is to *define* in words ? (To give such an accurate description of any thing, that the notion of it may be *separated* and *distinguished* from all other notions.) How does *defining* differ from *describing* ? (To *define* a thing, we select only *such particulars* as will best distinguish it from all other things, and make it known for what it is ; so that we *leave out* much that we should take in if we were *describing*.) Abstr. subst. from *define* ? (definition.) What is the opp. of *well-defined* ? (ill-defined.) Of what are *well-* and *ill-defined* mostly used ? (Of *visible* objects, whose *limits* are *well* or *ill* marked out.) Capable-of-being-defined ? (definable.) Incapable-of-being-defined ? (indefinable.) *Defined*, as adj. ? (definite.) What does *definite* mean ? (Determinate, exact, precise.) Not-definite ? (indefinite.) Adv. from *indefinite* ? (indefinitely.) Abstr. subst. from *definite* ? (definitiveness.) Is any other adj. formed from *definite* ? (Yes ; definitive.) What is a *definitive* sentence or decree ? (A *final* sentence or decree.) Adv. from *definitive* ? (definitively.) To strengthen-to ? (To *af-firm*, *for* *ad-firm*.) How is to *affirm* used ? (Of adding *strength* to an assertion ; of asserting positively.) Abstr. subst. from *affirm* ? (affirmation.) To affirm-again ? (to re-affirm.) Adj. from *affirm* ? (affirmative.) To what is *affirmative* opposed ? (To *negative*.) To strengthen-together ? or strengthen-completely ? (to confirm.) What is to *confirm* a report ? (To strengthen it ; to add fresh grounds for believing it.) Abstr. subst. from *confirm* ? (confirmation.) What is *the confirmation* of a Christian ? (The solemn rite by which he *confirms*, that is, *ratifies*, the promise made for him in his

Baptism.) In what sense does the Bishop *confirm* him? (By the laying on of his hands, with prayer, he *strengthens* his Christian faith and Christian power of fighting against the world, the flesh, and the devil.) What adjectives are formed from *confirm*-? (confirmative and confirmatory.) Not-firm? (infirm.) Abstr. subst. from *infirm*? (infirmity.) What is an *infirmmary*? (A place where *infirm* persons are taken in to be cured.) That-which-makes-firm? (firmament.) How is *firmament* used in the Bible? (Of the heaven.) Adj. from *firmament*? (firmamental.)

177 *Fili*-' : son : 'filial affection,' the affection a son *feels*, or should *feel*, for a parent.

*Fin*-. It is doubtful whether the English adj. *fine* (with its derivatives *finely*, *fineness*, to *refine*, &c.) comes from *finis*, 'end,' or not. If it does, *fine* is properly what is *ended* or *carried to its extreme point*; after which it becomes appropriated to the notion of *thinness*, *delicacy*, &c.<sup>5</sup>

## LESSON LI.

### Key-words.

### Latin Roots<sup>1</sup>.

178 A CONFLAGRATION : a flagra-, to take fire, to be great fire; the burning down of an edifice, on fire. &c.

FLAME.

flamm-, flame.

FLEXIBLE : bendable.

flect-, } to bend.  
flex-, }

TO IN-FLATE : to swell any thing out by blowing into it.

flā-, to blow.

<sup>5</sup> Filius, son. Finis, end.

<sup>6</sup> So Schwenk; but it is more probably connected with *thin*; Germ. *dünn*; Swedish, *fin*; Danish, *fün*; French *fin*. *Fein* is also German.

<sup>7</sup> Flagrare, to burn, (intrans.) be on fire. Desflagrare, to be burnt down. Flamma, flame. Flectere (flexi, flexum), to bend. Flare, to blow. Fligere, (fixi, fixum, only used in the compounds, *infligere*, *affligere*, &c.) to strike violently.

A CONFLICT : the *dash-  
ing together* or *colli-  
sion* of two hostile  
parties ; *contest*.

## EXERCISE 51.

- 179 Burning ? (flagrant.) What is 'a *flagrant* offence ?'  
(An offence that it is a *burning* shame to commit.)  
Abstr. subst. and adv. from *flagrant* ? (flagrancy,  
*flagrantly*.) To *inflamm* is to *set fire to* : form, capa-  
ble-of-being-inflamed. (inflammable.) I cannot  
say to *inflamm* a house, but I can say to *inflamm* a  
wound ; a person is *inflamed* by passion : how is  
*inflamm* used ? (Only in a *figurative* or *improper*  
sense.) Does not *improper* sense mean a *wrong*  
sense ? (No ; it means a sense *not proper* to the  
word ; not its *peculiar, original* and, as we should  
say, *literal* sense.) *Obs.* A figurative or improper  
meaning always implies a *comparison*. A *burning*  
pain is a pain *like that* which the application of *fire*  
would produce : hence, to *inflamm* a wound, is to  
make it *smart*, &c., as if it were *burnt*.—Abstr. subst.  
or subst. to denote the *thing* or *state* from to *in-  
flame*. (inflammation.) Abstr. subst. to denote the  
property-of-being-inflammable ? (inflammability.)  
Abstr. subst. to denote the property-of-being-flexi-  
ble ? (flexibility.) Not-flexible ? (inflexible.) Abstr.  
subst. from inflexible ? (inflexibility.) To *bend-  
back* ? (to reflect.) Act-of-reflecting ? (reflexion.)  
What is to *reflect* upon a thing ? (To *bend* one's  
thoughts *back* to it : hence, to *think it over*, to *me-  
ditate* upon it, or *ponder* it.) One-who-reflects ?  
(reflector.) What is a metallic *reflector* ? (A met-  
allic plate of such a shape, as to *reflect* or *bend  
back* the sun's rays.) A bending ? (a flexure.)  
Act-of-inflating ? (inflation.) Abstr. substantive  
from *flatulent* ? (flatulence.) To *strike-to* or at ?  
(To *af-flict*, *for ad-flict*.) How is to *afflict* used ?  
(Of striking a man with sorrow.) Abstr. subst.  
from *afflict*. (affliction.) Adj. from *afflict* ? (afflict-

<sup>2</sup> *Flatulent*, affected with air generated in the stomach and intestines.

ing, afflictive.) To strike into *or* against? (to inflict.) How is to *inflict* used? (Of *causing* some pain to a person.) What substantives is to *inflict* very commonly used with? (With *punishment, pain, &c.*) Act-of-inflicting, *or* thing inflicted? (infliction.)

- 180 *Flagiti*<sup>9</sup>: great crime: *flagitious*, atrociously bad, *flagitiousness*.  
*Fistul*:- pipe: a *fistula*, a long, callous, narrow ulcer.

## LESSON LII.

### Key-words.

### Latin Roots<sup>1</sup>.

- 181 A FLORIST: one who cultivates *flowers*. flor-, *flower*.

A FLUID body: a body flu-, }  
 which *flows*; a *liquid* flux-, } *to flow*.  
 body.

CONFEDERATES: persons *fœder*-, *treaty*.  
 bound *together* by a  
*treaty*.

### EXERCISE 52.

- 182 Relating-to-flowers? (floral.) Flowery? (florid.)  
 How is *florid* used? (Of a *flowery* style; and of a *healthy red*.) Put r. *flor*- into the form that would mean 'to begin to flower.' (flor-esce.) To begin-to-flower-forth? (to ef-floresce.) Abstr. subst. or subst. to denote the *thing* from *effloresce*? (efflorescence.) What is *efflorescence*? (A sort of *white dust* or other *flower-like* formation on the surface of any thing; e. g. eruptions on the skin.) Abstr. subst. from *florid*? (floridness, floridity.) Adv. from *florid*? (floridly.) Flowing? (fluent.) What is a *fluent* speaker? (One whose speech *flows* readily.) Adv. and abstr. subst. from *fluent*? (fluently, fluency.) Flowing-to? (af-fluent, for ad-fluent.) Abstr. subst. from *affluent*? (affluence.) What is the meaning of *affluent*? (One to whom wealth

<sup>9</sup> Flagitium, *dreadful crime*. Fistula, *pipe*.

<sup>1</sup> Flos (floris, m.), *flower*. Fluere (fluxi, fluxum), *to flow*. Fœdus, (fœderis, n.), *treaty*.

*flows-in*: hence, rich, &c.) A flowing-together? (a confluence, and conflux.) Distinguish between *confluence* and *conflux*. (The *confluence* of two rivers; a *conflux* of people, i.e. a multitude that has *flowed* or *streamed* together.) The flowing-in, as substantive? (influence.) How is *influence* used? (Of weight or authority; as if something *streamed in* or *against*, to turn the *machinery* of people's wills or minds.) Adj. from *influence*? (influential.) Is *influence* always a subst.? (No; sometimes a verb.) Opposite-influence? (counter-influence.) A flowing-out? (an *effluence*, or *efflux*.) How are *effluence* and *efflux* used? (Of supposed invisible *emanations*, flowing or streaming from a body or mind.) That-which-flows-out? (effluvium.) A flowing? (a flux.) A flowing-back? (a re-flux.) Flowing-with-honey? flowing-like-honey? [mell-r. of *honey*] (mell-i-fluous, mell-i-fluent.) Flowing-over? (super'-fluous.) What does *superfluous* mean? (Not only *full*, but *flowing over*: hence, *too much*.) Abstr. subst. from *superfluous*? (superfluity.) Adj. from *fœder*-? (federal.) Abstr. subst. from *confederate*? (confederation and confederacy.)

---

183 *Flor*-. Hence, *deflour*, *defloration*; *to flourish*, with its compounds.

---

184 *Foli*-<sup>2</sup>: (1) *Exfoliation*: the coming-away of *leaves*, as it were, or *scales*; e.g. of pieces of *unsound* bone after an injury.

(2) A *folio*: a *leaf* of paper: hence, a *book*, when each *leaf* is of the full size of the original paper.

(3) A *port-folio* (portare, *to carry*): = a leaf-carrier; a *paper-case*, to carry *paper*, *drawings*, &c.

*font*-. : *fountain*. Hence, *font*, *fount*, *fountain*, &c.

*fœtē*-. : *to stink*. Hence, a *fetid* odour.

*foris*-. : *abroad*. Hence, *foreign*, &c.

---

<sup>2</sup> Folium, leaf. Fons (fontis, m.), fountain. Fœtère, to stink. Foris, abroad, from home.

## LESSON LIII.

<i>Key-words.</i>	<i>Latin Roots<sup>9</sup>.</i>
185 FORM.	form-, <i>form</i> .
TO PER-FORATE: to bore through.	fora-, forat-, to bore.
FORTITUDE: strength to bear evil.	fort- <sup>1</sup> , <i>brave</i> .
A FRACTURE: a break-age.	frag- frang- fring- } fract-, to break.
FRATERNAL affection: brotherly affection.	frat-, fratr- } brother.
FRAUD.	fraud-, <i>fraud</i> .

## EXERCISE 53.

- 186 Adj. from *form*? (formal.) Not-formal? (informal.)  
 Abstr. substantives from *formal*, *informal*. (formality, informality.) What is a *formal* person? (One who adheres stiffly and unnaturally to *forms* of behaviour: hence, stiff in manner, precise.) What are *formal* and *informal* when spoken of proceedings? (Done or not done according to the *regular forms* provided for the case in question: hence, *formal* = regular; *informal* = irregular.) Is there any other adj. from *form*? (Yes; formative.) What does *formative* mean? (Giving form, forming.) An observer-of-forms? (a formalist.) Abstr. subst. from *formalist*? (formalism.) To form-with? (to conform.) What is to *conform* to any thing? and how is the verb then used? (To comply with; to follow or obey. The verb is then used intransitively.) What is to *be conformed* to any thing? (To be made like any thing, or brought into agree-

<sup>9</sup> *Forma*, *form*. *Per-forare*, to bore through. *Fortis*, strong to endure; strong; brave. *Frangere* (*fregi*, *fractum*), to break. *Frater* (gen. *fratris*), a brother. *Fraus* (gen. *fraudis*), *f. fraud*.

<sup>1</sup> From *fer-re*, to bear.



ment with it.) How is the verb then used ? (transitively.) One-who-conforms ? (conformer or conformist.) One-who-does-not-conform ? (non-conformer ; non-conformist.) Who are *non-conformers* or *non-conformists* ? (Those who do not conform to the doctrine or discipline of our Church : dissenters.) Adj. and adv. from *conform* ? (conformable ; conformably.) Abstr. subst. from *conform* ? (conformity, conformation.) What do these mean ? (*Conformity* means the *act* of conforming, or *state* of being conformed ; *conformation* means the *formation altogether*, the whole manner in which a body is formed, its structure, &c.) The act of not conforming ? (non-conformity.) A little form ? (a formula.) How used ? (of small prescribed forms.) To form-away from ? (to deform.) Past participle from *deform* ? (deformed.) What does *deformed* mean ? (*Formed-away-from* the right pattern, misshapen.) Abstr. subst. from *deform* ? (deformity.) To form-in ? (to in-form.) How is to *inform* now used ? (Of *forming* a person's mind to the knowledge of something ; of communicating some knowledge to him.) By what preposition do you govern the person to whom you communicate the intelligence ? (By *of* : to inform a person *of* any thing.) Abstr. subst. from *inform* ? (information.) One-who-informs ? (informer, informant.) What is a *common informer* ? (One who tries to make money by *informing* against persons who, advertently or inadvertently, break laws.) To form-through ? or form-thoroughly ? (to perform.) What does to *perform* an action mean ? (To carry it through, to *do* or *execute* it.) Act-of-performing ? or thing-performed ? (performance.) One-who-performs ? (performer.) To form-back ? or form-again ? (to re-form.) Abstr. subst. from *re-form*. (reformation.) Adj. from *re-form* ? (reformative.) One-who-reforms ? (reformer.) What is to *reform* ? (to bring a thing back again to its original, uncorrupted state.) To form-across ? (to transform.) What does to *transform* mean ? (To make a thing's form or shape

*cross over* to the *form* of something else.) Abstr. subst. from *transform*? (transformation.) Not-formed? (unformed.) Not-informed? (uninformed.) One-formed? (uniform.) Abstr. subst. from *uniform*? (uniformity.) Two-formed? (biform, or bi-formed.) To make-strong? (to fortify.) Act-of-fortifying? or thing-fortified? (fortification.) Not-fortified? (unfortified.) To make-strong-altogether? (to com-fort.) How is to *comfort* used? (Of making a man's mind *strong* by offering him consolation.) Is *comfort* only a verb? (No; it is also a subst.) Without-comfort? (comfortless.) One-who-comforts? (comforter.) What is the opp. of *comfort*? (discomfort.) Act-of-breaking? or thing-broken? (fraction.) What is a *fraction* in arithmetic? (A *broken* number, opp. to a *whole* number; a certain part of a whole.) Adj. from *fraction*? (fractional.) Liable-to-be-broken? (fragile.) Abstr. subst. from *fragile*? (fragility.) What expresses *thing broken* besides *fraction*? (fragment.) Adj. from *fragment*? (fragmentary.) To break-into? (to infringe.) How is to *infringe* used? (Of breaking-into a law, rule, &c. or violating a person's rights.) Act-of-infringing? or instance-of-infringing? (infraction, or infringement.) To break-back? (to re-fract.) How is to *refract* used? (Of *breaking* back the rays of light; of bending them from their straight course.) Act-of-refracting? (refraction.) Incapable-of-being-broken-back? (ir-re-frag-able.) How is *irrefragable* used? (Of arguments, the force of which cannot be *broken back*; of irresistible or incontrovertible arguments.) Given-to-break-back? (refractory.) Abstr. subst. from *refractory*? (refractoriness.) What does *refractory* mean? (It is used of one who *breaks back* all attempts to make him obey; obstinately disobedient, &c.) A band-of-brothers? (a fraternity, or con-fraternity.) A murderer-of-his-brother? (a fratri-cide.) Full-of-fraud? (fraudulent.) Abstr. subst. and adv. from *fraudulent*? (fraudulence, fraudulently.) To take-fraudu-

lently-from ? (to defraud.) One-who-defrauds (a defrauder.)

187 *Frang-*: (1) *suf-frage*: a vote; right of voting. *Suf-frago*: the pastern joint of a horse. Bits of bone were used as voting-balls or tickets.

(2) *Saxi-frage* [*saxum, stone, rock*]: a plant that breaks through stony ground.

*Form-*. From this root are many compounds with other substantives: *cruciform*, in the shape of a cross. *Cuneiform*, wedge-shaped, &c.

188<sup>2</sup> *formid-a-*: to fear: *formidable*, &c.

*for-*: the public place at Rome where markets were held, causes pleaded, &c. (1) Hence *forensic*, relating to barristers, or the bar. (2) *Circumforaneous*, walking about market-places, &c. as 'circumforaneous wits.'—ADDISON.

*foment-* (for *foviment*): that which cherishes, keeps alive. (1) To foment disturbances: a fomentor of disturbances. (2) A fomentation: a soothing application to inflamed places, &c.

## LESSON LIV.

### Key-words.

### Latin Roots<sup>2</sup>.

189 FREQUENT.

frequent-, being often at a place: also thronged (of a place).

The FRIGID zone: the cold zone.

a) frig-ē-, to be cold.

b) rigor-, cold (subst.).

FRUGAL: economical.

frug- } fruit.

To FRUCTIFY: to bear fruit.

fruct- }

<sup>2</sup> Formidare, to dread. Forum, market-place, bar. Fovēre (fovi fotum), to cherish, to nourish. Fomentum (= fovimentum), that which cherishes or nourishes.

<sup>2</sup> Frequens, (1) often with a person or at a place: (2) thronged; full (rigēre), to be cold. Frigus (gen. frigoris; n.), cold. Frustrari, to frustrate. Frugis (a genitive from an old nom. frux), properly 'of fruit;' 'of profit:' then used as an adj. for profitable, prudent, &c. in pl. fruits (of the earth), fruit. Fructus (gen. ūs), fruit. Fugere (fugio, fugi, fugitum), to fly from.

A FUGITIVE: one who } *fūg-* } *to fly.*  
                   is *flying* away. } *fūgīt-* }  
 REFULGENT: reflecting } *fulgē-*, *to shine.*  
                   a *bright* light.

- a) To REFUND money: to } *fund-*, } *to pour.*  
       *pour it back*: i. e. } *fūs-*, }  
       pay back what one  
       has improperly re-  
       ceived, &c.
- b) PROFUSELY: in a *pour-*  
       *ing forth* manner;  
       lavishly, abundantly.

## EXERCISE 54.

- 190 Abstr. subst. from *frequent*? (frequency.) Is *frequent* only an adj.? (The same word, but with a different accent [*frequent'*], is a verb.) One-who-frequents? (a frequenter.) Not-frequent? (infrequent.) Abstr. subst. from *infrequent*? (infrequency.) Not-frequented? (un-frequented.) What does *unfrequented* mean? (Not often visited:—of *places*.) Coldness? (frigidity.) Coldly? (frigidly.) Cold-making? (frigor-i'-fic.) Abstr. subst. from *frugal*? (frugality.) Not-frugal? (infrugal.) Abstr. subst. from *fructify*? (fructification.) Much-given-to-flying-away? (fugacious.) Flying-back-to? (refuge.) What is a place of refuge? (A place to which we can *fly back* for protection.) A flying-under? (a *subterfuge*.) What is a *subterfuge*? (An *escaping* in an *underhand* way; a mean shift or evasion.) Shining-forth? (ef-fulgent.) Abstr. subst. from *effulgent*? (effulgence.) Shining-back? (refulgent.) Abstr. subst. from *refulgent*? (refulgence.) Pouring-together? (confusion.) What does *confusion* mean? (the *producing* of *disorder*; also the *state* of disorder.) Disordered? (confused.) In-a-confused-manner? (confusedly.) To pour-apart? To pour in different places? (to diffuse.) Act-of-diffusing? state-of-being-diffused? (diffusion.) In *diffuse* the *s* is pronounced like *z*: what is *diffuse* with the *s*?

sound? (It is an adj. applied to *style*, &c., meaning *poured-out-too-widely*, i. e. *copious*, *prolix*; not sufficiently compact and condensed.) In-a-diffuse-manner? (diffusely.) Having-the-nature-of-diffusing? (diffusive<sup>4</sup>.) A-pouring-out? (an effusion.) To-pour-in? (to infuse.) Abst. subst. from *infuse*? (infusion.) Poured-forth? (profuse.) How is *profuse* used? (Of a *copious* perspiration; *lavish* expenditure, &c.) Abstr. subst. from *profuse*? (profusion.) How is *profusion* used? (Of a great abundance; a *lavish* supply.) To pour-under? (to suffuse.) Abst. subst. from *suffuse*? (suffusion.) How is to *suffuse* chiefly used? (Of *pouring a blush under* the skin; of pouring a liquid or colouring-matter under a surface.) To pour-across? (to transfuse.) Abstr. subst. from *transfuse*? (transfusion.) What is to *transfuse*? (To pour from one vessel into another; and then, fig., to spread a feeling, &c., from one nation or person to another or others.) What is to *fuse* metals? (to *melt* them.) Abstr. subst. from *fuse*? (fusion.)

- 191 *Fug-*: (1) A *refugee*, one who has *fled* from his own country. (2) *Centri-fugal*, flying from the centre. (3) A *febri-fuge*, a draught to put a *fever* to *flight*.

*Fruct-*: Hence the English *fruit*, softened by *fruct* by the ejection of the *k* sound.

*Fund-*: Hence the English *-found*, in *confound*.

- 192 *Fren-*<sup>5</sup>: *rein*. To *refrain*, to pull back the reins: to abstain from doing what is tempted to, &c.

<sup>4</sup> Also used = *extended*, *diffused*; as, '*diffusive* charity.'

<sup>5</sup> *Frenum*, *rein*. *Fricare* (fricui, frictum), to rub, to rub down to a powder. *Frons* (frontis), *f. forehead*. *Frustrari*, to make vain, frustrate, disappoint. *Fumus*, smoke. *Fulcire* (fulsi, fultum), to prop. *Fundus*, the bottom (of a cask, &c.); an estate. *Fungi* (functus), to go through or perform (a task, &c.). *Funus* (funeris), *n. death, funeral*. *Furia*, a fury. *Furca*, a fork. *Futare*, obsolete (in *refutare*, *confutare*), to argue. *Future*, to pour forth (idle chattering talk); to babble forth.

*Frica-*, } to rub. (1) *Friction*, rubbing, especially as what *retards*  
*Frict-*, } the motion of machinery. (2) *Dent-i-frice*, powder  
 to rub the *teeth* with [*dens, dentis, tooth*].

*Fria-*: to rub to powder. *Friable*, capable of being rubbed to powder.

*Front-*: forehead, front. (1) *Front-i-spice* (properly *front-i-spice*), picture to be seen at the front (= beginning) of a book. (2) To *af-front* a man; to strike at his forehead, i.e. insult him to his face: to give him some open cause of offence. (3) To *confront* witnesses, &c., to bring them face to face for examination and the discovery of the truth.

*Frustra-*, *frustrat-*: to frustrate. Hence *frustration*, the defeating of a plan, &c.

*Fum-*: smoke. (1) To *fumigate*, to produce smoke, e. g. to purify an infected room. *Fumigation*. (2) To *perfume*, to send a vapour, an exhalation through: used of filling with an odour. Subst. a *perfume*.

*Fulc-i-*: to prop up. *Fulcrum*, prop or support: that by which a lever is sustained.

*Fund-*: bottom. *Pro-found*, deep, the bottom of it being removed to a far point. *Profundity*, depth.

*Fung-*, } to perform a task, office, &c. A *function*, an office to be  
*Funct-*, } performed. A *functionary*, an officer: a state-officer.

*Funer-*: death, funeral. Hence *funeral*, *funereal*, &c.

*Furi-*: a fury. *Furious*: to in-fur-iate, &c.

*Furc-*: a fork (not that which keeps company with a knife, but such as is formed by two lines placed like the top of a Y). *Bi-furcated*, doubly-forked.

*Futa-*, *futat-*: to argue. To *re-fute* (refutation). To *confute* (confutation) = to take off an argument: to answer a person or argument triumphantly. [Probably this root is allied to *fund-*, *fus-*.]

*Futi-*: to pour-out talk. *Futile*; of trifling, trivial discourse that is not to the purpose: *futility*. This root also is probably allied to *fund-*, *fus*.

## PART II.

## LESSON LV.

*Key-words.**Latin Roots.*

1. GALEATED (in Botany): *helmeted*; having a covering like the *Monkshead*.
  2. GARRULOUS: *chattering*.
  3. To CONGEAL, to *freeze together*, to cool into a semi-solid state.
  4. GENU-FLECTION, act of *bending the knee* in adoration.
  5. a) GEN-IT-IVE case: the case in which that which GENERATES or *produces* is placed: so 'the heat of the sun,' or 'the sun's heat;' the sun *generates* or *produces* the heat, 'a father's son,' &c.
  - b) A GENER-IC difference; a difference belonging to the whole *race (class)*.
  - c) The GENT-ILES; the *nations* of the world, as opposed to the people of God.
  6. A GERM: a bud.
  7. A GESTURE: an act or movement of the body: properly, a *bearing* (of the body).
  8. GLADIATOR: a *sword-player*, such as fought in the Roman amphitheatre armed with a *sword*.
- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <p>gale-, <i>helmet</i>.</p> <p>garrul-, <i>chattering</i>.</p> <p>gēlu-, <i>frost</i>.</p> <p>genu-, <i>knee</i>; (genicul- r. of dimin. <i>little knee</i>.)</p> <p>a) gen-, genit-, to <i>beget, produce, bring forth</i>.</p> <p>b) (1) gen-, gener-, <i>race, generation</i>. (2) genera-, generat-, to <i>beget</i>.</p> <p>c) gent-, <i>nation, family (= clan)</i>.</p> <p>germin-, <i>bud, shoot</i>.</p> <p>ger-, } to <i>carry</i>.</p> <p>gest-, }</p> <p>gladi-, <i>sword</i>.</p> | <p>gale-, <i>helmet</i>.</p> <p>garrul-, <i>chattering</i>.</p> <p>gēlu-, <i>frost</i>.</p> <p>genu-, <i>knee</i>; (genicul- r. of dimin. <i>little knee</i>.)</p> <p>a) gen-, genit-, to <i>beget, produce, bring forth</i>.</p> <p>b) (1) gen-, gener-, <i>race, generation</i>. (2) genera-, generat-, to <i>beget</i>.</p> <p>c) gent-, <i>nation, family (= clan)</i>.</p> <p>germin-, <i>bud, shoot</i>.</p> <p>ger-, } to <i>carry</i>.</p> <p>gest-, }</p> <p>gladi-, <i>sword</i>.</p> |
|---|---|

1. galea, *helmet*. 2. garrulus, *chattering*; garrire, to *chatter*. 3. gelu, n. *frost*. 4. genu, n. *knee*. 5. a) genus, generis, n. a *race*; gignere (for gen-ere), genui, genitum, to *beget, to bring forth*. b) gens, gentis, f. a *race, family, a nation*. 6. germen, germinis, n. a *bud*. 7. gerere, gessi, gestum, to *bear or carry*. 8. gladius, a *sword*.

## Key-words.

## Latin Roots.

9. The oak is a **GLAND-I-FEROUS** gland-, *acorn*.  
tree; an *acorn-bearing* tree.
10. **GLOBE**, around body, a sphere. glob-, *a globe, a sphere*.
11. **GLORY**, honour, renown. glori-, *glory*.
12. **GLUTEN** (in Chemistry), the glutin-; *gluten, glue*.  
viscous or sticky portion in  
animal and vegetable matter.
2. *Garrulity* (chatteringness).
3. *Con-gel-a-tion* (act of freezing together; of being changed by cold  
from a fluid to a solid state). *Jelly* (for gelly).
4. *Geniculated* ('knee-jointed'); of the stem of a plant having joints  
a little bent.
5. (a) *Gender, genial, congenial*. *Genuine* (possessing the characteristic  
properties of a race; belonging to the true nature of a thing; real,  
not spurious). *Genius, ingenious, ingenuity, ingenuous, ingenuousness*.  
*Primogeniture* (the being the first-born). *Progeny, ungenial*. (b)  
*Degenerate* (having receded from the perfection of the race). *Gene-  
ral* (including the whole sort or race). *Generality*. *Generic* (opposed  
to *specific*, that comprehends or relates to the whole genus or race,  
and is therefore not confined to a single species). *Generation*.  
*Generous* (belonging to the race, implying that it is a good race).  
*Generosity*. *To regenerate* (to renovate a race; to give, as it were,  
*a new birth*). *Regeneration* (the new birth: *e.g.* that of Holy Bap-  
tism). *Unregenerate*. (c) *Genteel* (of or belonging to a race or  
family, implying that it is a *good family*). *Polite* (courteous, gentle-  
manly). *Gentle* (mild, quiet, inoffensive). *Gentleman* (one of a race  
or family, implying that it is a *good family*). *Gentry*.
6. To *germinate* (to bud or shoot). *Germination* (the act of budding).
7. To *gesticulate* (to signify by movement of the body). *Bel-li-gerent*  
(carrying on war). *Vicegerent* (one who bears office in place of  
another; a *vicarious* governor). To *digest* (to carry the food into  
different parts of the body). To *suggest* (to carry under; to carry a  
thing to any body, and put it under his notice: hence, to *hint it*  
*to him*).
8. *Gladiolus* (the name of a plant of sword-like form).
9. *Glandular* (pertaining to, or having the nature of glands). *Glanders*  
(a disease of the glands to which horses are subject).
10. *Globule* (a minute globe).
11. To *glorify* (to pay honour).
12. *Glutinous* (hence the English word *glue*).

---

9. glans, glandis, *f. an acorn*. 10. globus, *a globe*. 11. gloria,  
glory. 12. gluten (gen. glutinis), *visciduity, stickiness*.



## LESSON LVI.

## Key-words.

## Latin Roots.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. GRADE: step, rank, caste.             | grad-, gress-, to <i>step</i> , to <i>walk</i> . |
| 2. GRAND: great, lofty.                  | grand-, <i>large</i> , <i>great</i> .            |
| 3. GRANARY: a place where grain is kept. | gran-, <i>grain</i> .                            |

4. GRATITUDE: thankfulness, gratefulness. grat-, *agreeable*, *grateful*.

A GRAVE discussion; properly a *weighty*, then a *serious* discussion.

6. GREGARIOUS birds: going in flocks. greg-, *flock*.

7. A GUTTURAL letter: one pronounced in the *throat*. guttur-, *throat*.

From *gubernare*, to *rule*, comes our English word *govern*, with its derivatives.

1. To *degrade* (to bring down a step lower, to place lower). To *graduate* (to mark with steps or degrees). *Gradual* (by steps or degrees). *Retrograde* (stepping back, moving backwards). *Gradation*, *gradient*. *Degree* (a step or preparation to any thing). An *ingredient* (a substance that enters into the composition of any thing). An *aggression* (the coming to attack one; unprovoked attack). *Digression* (the act of stepping aside). *Ingress* (stepping in, entrance). *Egress*. *Progress* (stepping on, advancement). *Transgression* (the act of stepping beyond, a violation). To *transgress*.

2. *Grandeur* (greatness, loftiness). A *grandee* (a great man, one in an exalted station). To *aggrandize* (to make great). *Grandfather*, *grandchild*.

3. *Granulous* (full of small grains). To *granulate* (to divide into grains). *Granite* (stone composed of grains or particles). *Pomegranate* (a fruit with many small stones: pomum, apple).

4. To *gratify* (to make grateful). *Gratification*, *ungrateful*, *congratulate*, *gratuitous*, *gratis*. Hence the English *grace* (favour, thanks). *Graceful*, *disgrace*, *gracious*. *Agree*, *agreeable*.

5. *Gravity* (seriousness, weightiness). To *gravitate* (to tend to the centre of attraction, as a suspended weight does to the centre of the earth). *Gravitation*. To *aggravate* (to make serious or heavy, to make any thing worse). *Grief* (heaviness, sorrow). *Grievous*, *grievance*.

6. To *congregate* (to flock together). *Congregation* (the assembling together of a portion of Christ's flock). *Egregious* (out of, not belonging to, the flock; remarkable).

---

1. gradus, a *step*. gradiri, gressus sum, to go *step by step*; to *step forward*. 2. grandis, *great*. 3. granum, a *grain* of corn. 4. gratus, *grateful*. gratia, a *favour*, *grace*. 5. gravis, *heavy*. 6. grex, gregis, a *flock*. gubernare, to *govern*.

## LESSON LVII.

## H.

*Key-words.**Latin Roots.*

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. A <i>habit</i> , a property one <i>has</i> .                    | hab-e-, habit-, to <i>have</i> .                  |
| 2. <i>ADHERE</i> , to stick to.                                    | hære-, hæe-, to <i>stick</i> , to <i>cleave</i> . |
| 3. <i>EXHALE</i> , to breathe out.                                 | hala-, halat-, to <i>breathe</i> .                |
| 4. <i>EXHAUST</i> , to draw out, to spend.                         | haur-, haust-, to <i>draw</i> (like water).       |
| 5. <i>HERB</i> , grassy vegetable produce.                         | herb-, <i>herb</i> .                              |
| 6. <i>HEIR</i> , one who is to succeed to the property of another. | hērēd-, <i>heir</i> .                             |
| 7. <i>HERO</i> , a brave man.                                      | hero-, <i>hero</i> .                              |
| 8. <i>HILARITY</i> , cheerfulness, gaiety.                         | hilar-, <i>cheerful</i> , <i>mirthful</i> .       |
| 9. <i>HISTORY</i> , narration of events.                           | histori-, <i>history</i> .                        |
| 10. <i>HOMICIDE</i> ,  | hom-, homin-, <i>man</i> .                        |
| 11.  | human-, <i>human</i> .                            |
| 12. <i>HONOUR</i> , dignity, respect.                              | honor-, <i>honour</i> .                           |

1. To *inhabit* (to hold in possession ; to  *dwell in*). *Inhabitant* (one who holds a place in possession, one who lives in it). *Habitation*.
2. *Adherence*. To *cohere* (to stick together). *Incoherent* (loose, unconnected, not adhering to). *Incoherence*. *Adhesive*, *cohesive* ; *adhesion*, *cohesion*. (2) To *hesitate* (to stick at, or pause, as if in doubt). *Hesitation*.
3. To *inhale* (to draw in with the breath). *Exhalation*. (2) *Anhelation* (the act of breathing short, panting).
4. *Inexhaustible* (that cannot be drawn out, or spent). *Exhaustion*, *unexhausted*.
5. *Herbage* (herbs collectively). *Herbaceous* (belonging to herbs). A *herbalist* (one skilled in herbs).
6. *Hereditary* (relating to an heir). *Heritage*. An *inheritance* (that which will belong to the heir). *Hereditary* (descending by inheritance). To *inherit*, *disinherit*. *Heirship* (the privileges of an heir). *Heirloom* (any furniture decreed to descend by inheritance, the property of heirs in succession). *Heirless* (without an heir).
8. To *exhilarate* (to make cheerful).
7. *Heroic* (relating to a hero). A *heroine* (a female hero). *Heroism* (the qualities or character of a hero).

1. habēre, habui, habūtum, *I have*. 2. hærēre, hæsi, hæsum, *to stick, to adhere*. (2) hæsitare, *to hesitate*. 3. halare, *to breathe*. (2) anhælare, *to pant*. 4. haurire, hausi, haustum, *to draw*. 5. herba, *grass*. 6. heres (heredis), *an heir*. 7. heros, *a hero*. 8. hilaris, *cheerful*. 9. historia, *history*. 10. homo, hominis, *man*. 12. honor, honos, *honour*. (2) honestus, *honorable*.

9. *Historical* (pertaining to history). An *historian* (a writer of history), story.
11. *Humanity* (the kind feeling which should distinguish *man*). To *humanize* (to make *human*, to inspire with the proper feeling of a *man*, as opposed to a *beast*).
12. *Honorable* (conferring honour). *Honorary* (done in honour; conferred as an honour). To *dishonour* (to deprive of honour). (2) *Honest, honesty, dishonest.*

## LESSON LVIII.

### Key-words.

### Latin Roots.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. ABHOR, to hate, to loathe, to dread.                                      | horre-, to <i>shudder</i> .             |
| 2. EXHORT, to incite by words, to encourage.                                 | horta-, hortat-, to <i>exhort</i> .     |
| 3. HORTICULTURE, the art of cultivating gardens.                             | hort-, <i>garden</i> .                  |
| 4. HOSPITABLE, performing the part of a host, kind to visitors or strangers. | hosp-, hospit-, <i>host, guest</i> .    |
| 5. HOSTILE, relating to a host or army; adverse, suitable to an enemy.       | host-, <i>enemy</i> .                   |
| 6. HUMID, moist, wet.  | humid-, <i>moist</i> .                  |
| 7. EXHUME, to take out of the ground.  | hum-, <i>ground</i> .                   |
| 8. IGNITE, to set on fire.   | ign-, <i>fire</i> .                     |
| 9. IMAGE, a corporeal representation of any thing to the mind, an idea.      | imag-, imagin-, <i>imagine; image</i> . |
| 10. IMITATE, to copy.  | imit-, imitata-, to <i>imitate</i> .    |
| 11. INFERIOR, lower in place.  | infer-, <i>low</i> .                    |
| 12. INSULAR, belonging to an island.   | insul-, <i>island</i> .                 |
1. *Abhorrence* (the act of hating or loathing). *Abhorrent*. (2) *Horrid, horrible*. (3) *Horror*. (4) To *horrify, horrific*.
2. *Exhortation* (verbal incitement to good). *Hortatory, hortative*. To *dehort* (to dissuade, to incite against). *Dehortatory*.

1. *horrēre, horrui, to be rough; to shudder*. (2) *horridus, rough*. (3) *horror (horrōis), horrōis, dread*. (4) *horrificari, to horrify*. 2. *hortari, hortatus sum, to exhort*. 3. *hortus, a garden*. 4. *hospes, hospitā, a host or guest, a stranger*. 5. *hostis, an enemy, an army*. 6. *humēre, humui, to be wet*. (2) *humor, moisture*. 7. *humus, the ground*. (2) *humilis, low, lowly*. 8. *ignis, m. fire*. 9. *imago, imaginis, f. an image*. 10. *imitari, imitatus sum, to imitate*. 11. *inferus, below, beneath (as adj.)*. 12. *insula, an island*.

3. *Horticultural*. A *horticulturist* (one who cultivates a garden). *Hortulan* (belonging to a garden). Hence *orchard*. A 'hortus-siccus' a collection of dried plants.
4. *Hospitality* (a host's entertainment of strangers). *Hospital* (a building in which the sick are hospitably received). *Hotel* (from *hostel*). *Host*, *hostler*.
5. *Host* (an army). *Hostility* (the state or feeling of an enemy).
6. *Humidity* (wetness). (2) *Humour* (moisture, more particularly that which is secreted in the human body. General turn or temper of mind. A peculiar sort of *pleasantry*, relating more to the *manner* than to the *matter* [Taylor]). *Humorous* (full of humour). A *humorist* (one who gratifies his own humour: also, a *humorous* writer).
7. *Exhumation* (the act of taking out of the ground). To *inhume* (to bury in the ground). *Posthumous* (done, had, or published after death, after a man is placed in the ground). (2) *Humility* (the being near the ground; freedom from pride).
8. *Ignition* (the act of setting on fire).
9. To *imagine* (to represent in the mind).
10. *Imitation* (the act of copying, or imitating).
11. *Inferiority*.
12. To *insulate* (to make an island of; hence to *detach* from all other persons or things). Another form is, to *isolate* (from the Italian, *isola*).

## LESSON LIX.

### Key-words.

### I.

### Latin Roots.

1. To INTERPRET, to explain in a man's own language what was uttered in a foreign language. interpret-, an interpreter.
2. An INTERNAL complaint; an INWARD complaint. int-, within.
3. To INVITE; to bid, to ask to any place. invita-, invitat-, to invite, to solicit.
4. His hot IRE; anger, wrath. a) ir-, anger.  
b) irasc-, irat-, to be angry.
5. RE-ITERATED attempts; repeated attempts, again and again. { iter-, a second time, once more.  
itera-, iterat-, to repeat.

### J.

6. The ADJACENT countries; the countries lying close by; the bordering countries. jac-, e-, to lie.
- 7 a) To EJECT a tenant; to cast him out of his holding. a) { jaci-, jact- }  
{ jici-, ject- } to cast.

1. interpres (interpretis), an interpreter. 2. intus or intra, within. intimus, innermost. intestinus, inward. 3. invitare, to invite, to entice. 4. ira, anger. (2) irasci, iratus sum, to be angry. (3) irritare, to irritate, provoke. 5. iterum, a second time; once again. 6. jacere, jaculi, to lie. 7. jacere (jacio), jeci, jactum, to cast. jaculari, to hurl.

*Key-words.**Latin Roots.*

- b) ANEJACUL-ATION, a prayer or exclamation *darted out*.  
 8. A JOKE, a jest.  
 9. To effect a JUNCTION with a person; to succeed in *joining* him.  
 10. IN-JUR-IOUS, prejudicial to a man's *rights*.  
 b) jacula-, jaculat-, to *dart*.  
 joc-, *joke*.  
 a) jung-, junct-, to *join*.  
 b) juga-, jugat-, to *yoke together*.  
 a) jūr-, *right*.  
 b) jūra-, jurat-, to *swear* (to the *rights* of a question).  
 c) judic-, *judge*; judicat-, to *judge*.


Note. 1) dic-, dict- (in jur-i-dic-al, juris-dict-ion) = to *say*, to *utter*.  
 See p. 63.

2) fici-, fica-, ficat- = to *do*, to *make*. Hence the English *-fy*.

11. JUVENILE, belonging to youth, youthful.  
 12. AN ADJUTANT, one who *helps* the major in a regiment.  
 a) juven-, *young man*.  
 b) juni-, *younger*.  
 juva-, juta-, to *help*, to *assist*.

1. An *interpreter* (one who explains). *Interpretation* (the act of interpreting or explaining). To *misinterpret* (to translate amiss, falsely).  
 2. Interior (inner). *Intimate* (inmost, familiar). *Intimately*. *Intimacy*. To *intimate* (properly, to put a thing inside a man, i.e. to fix it as a notion in his mind; to hint, suggest). *Intimation*. *Intrinsic* (internal, real, true). *Intrinsically*. *Intestine*; an intestine war (a war in the interior or heart of a country; a civil war). *Internal*. *Intestines* (the internals, the bowels). *Intestinal*.  
 3. *Invitation* (the act of inviting or bidding). *Invitingly*, *uninvited*.  
 4. *Ireful* (full of anger). (2) *Irascible* (easily made angry). *Irascibility*. (3) To *irritate* (to make angry, cause anger). *Irritation*. *Irritable* (easily angered).  
 5. *Iteration*. To *reiterate*. *Reiteration*.  
 6. *Jacent* (lying at length). *Subjacent* (lying under). *Circumjacent* (lying around).  
 7. To *ejaculate* (to throw out a word or words; to call out). To *eject* (to throw out). *Ejectment*. An *object* (something thrown down before, presented, to the senses). To *object* (to throw against, to make an objection). An *objection* (a reason opposed to an argument or plan; a difficulty in the way). To *inject* (to throw in). To *reject* (to throw back; to refuse to accept). An *adjective* (a word thrown to, or added to, a substantive). To *conjecture* (to throw together in the mind, to guess). A *conjecture* (a guess). *Conjectural* reasoning. To *deject* (to cast down; to depress). *Dejection*, *dejectedness* (the condition of being cast down; sorrow). *Disjection* (the act of being thrown apart). To *project* (to throw forward; to throw out a plan). A *project* (something thrown out or proposed). *Projection* (the act of throwing forward). A *projection* (an object jutting out). A *projec-*

8. *jocus*, a *joke*, a *jest*. 9. *jungere*, *junxi*, *junctum*, to *join*. (2) *jugum*, a *yoke*. 10. *jus*, *right*, *law*, *justice*. (2) *jurare*, to *swear*. (3) *justus*, *just*. 11. *juvenis*, *youth*. 12. *jūvare*, *juvi*, *jutum*, to *help*.

- tile* (a body thrown forward; *hurled* or *shot* into the air). A *projector*. To *subject* (to throw or put under; to subdue). A *sub'ject* (as person, one thrown or put under another). A *subject*, as a *notion* (a thought, notion, or question, *placed under* a person's consideration). *Subjection* (the act or condition of being thrown or put under). An *interjection* (a little word *thrown between* other words as an *exclamation*).
8. *Jocose, jocular* (full of, or given to, jokes). *Jocularity* (disposition to jokes).
9. *Jung-, junct-*, take as their *English* forms *join, joint*. *Junction* (a joining). *Conjunction* (a joining together). *Conjointly* (in union with). A *conjuncture* (a combination or joining together of circumstances). To *disjoin* (to separate, un-join). *Conjunctive* (having the power of *joining notions together*). *Disjunctive* (having the power of *disjoining notions*; of keeping them separate. Thus, in "*A. and B.*" A. B. are *joined* together by '*and*,' which is a *conjunctive* particle or conjunction. "*Neither A. nor B.*" A. B. are *kept separate* by the *disjunctive* particles, *neither—nor*). A *joiner* (one who joins, a carpenter who *joins neatly*). *Joinery* (the work of the *joiner*). To *rejoin* (to reply to an answer, to *join* an answer to an attack). To *subjoin* (to add at the end, to join afterwards). A *joint* (the point of union or joining of parts). *Joint*, for joined (shared among many). A *jointure* (the property that is *settled* on a woman when she is *joined* in marriage). *Jointly* (together, in a state of union). *Subjunctive* (*subjoined* to something else). The *subjunctive* mood (the mood of a verb which generally *follows* another verb; because it is used, not in a *principal*, but in a *secondary* clause). To *conjugate* a verb (to go through the forms of a verb one after another in a regular *connected* series). *Conjugation*. *Con'jugal* (belonging to the *yoking* or *joining* together in marriage). To *sub'jugate* (to subdue, to bring *under* the *yoke*).
10. An *injury* (a hurt contrary to justice). *Injurious*. *Juridical* (belonging to the trying of questions, to giving sentence in causes). *Jurisdiction* (the administering of justice). *Jurisprudence* (the science of justice). A *jurist* (one who professes the science of justice). (2) To *abjure* (to *swear off*, reject; to *retract* or *recant* upon oath). *Abjuration*. To *adjure* (to charge by oath). *Adjuration*. To *con'jure* (to entreat under an oath, to entreat earnestly). To *con'jure* (to play tricks, pretended to be by magic). *Conjuror*. To *injure*. A *jury* (a company of men bound by oath in the cause of justice). *Juror*. *Juryman* (one of a jury). *Perjury* (the act of *swearing* *perversely*, or against the truth; a falsehood confirmed by an oath). To *perjure* oneself. A *non-juror* (one who refuses to swear). *Just* (upright, lawful). To *justify* (to make just, to clear from imputed guilt). *Justification* (the making just; clearing from imputed guilt). *Justice* (agreeableness to what is just). A *justice* (one who has to administer justice). *Justly*. *Unjust, injustice*. To *adjust* (to regulate, to make conformable to what is just). *Adjustment*. *Unjustifiable* (not in accordance with justice).
11. *Juvenility* (the state of youth). *Junior* (more youthful).
12. A *coadjutor* (a fellow-helper).
- [ 'Jocund' is from the Latin *jucundus*, pleasant, not from *jocus*.]

## LESSON LX.

## L.

## Key-words.

## Latin Roots.

1. A living LAPSSES to the Bishop; *falls* to him from the neglect of the patron to fill it up within the time allowed by the law. lab-, laps-, to *glide*; to *slip*; to *fall*.
2. LABOUR; toil, work. labor-, labour, *toil*.
3. His LACERATED limbs; his lacera- lacerat-, to *tear*, to *mangle*. *torn or mangled limbs*.
4. To LAMENT, to *bewail*, to be lamenta-, lamentat-, to *lament*. *sorrowful*.
5. The plants LANGUISH for want of water; grow feeble, droop, &c. languē-, to *languish*.
6. I will ask a LAPIDARY how much this jewel is worth; a dealer in, or cutter of, precious stones. lapid-, a *stone*.
7. LARGE, big, great. larg-, *large*.
8. LATIN; belonging to the Latins; as the Latin language. Latin-, *Latin*.
9. What is LATERAL pressure? later-, *side*. *Sidewards pressure*; that part of a superincumbent weight which tends to *push out the sides* of what supports it.
10. LATITUDE; broadness, width. lat-, *broad*.
11. LAUD ye the name of the LORD! praise it. a) laud-, *praise*. b) lauda-, laudat-, to *praise*.
12. To LAVE; to wash. { lava-, }  
{ lavat-, } to *wash*.  
{ lot-, }
1. To *elapse* (to *slip away*; used of the *passing of time*). To *collapse* (to *fall together*; of what had been *distended, blown out*, e. g. a balloon). To *relapse* (to *fall back again*; of an *invalid*). A *relapse*.
2. *Labourer* (one who *toils*). *Laborious*. To *elaborate* (to *work a thing thoroughly out*; to *finish it with much care and labour*).

---

1. labi, lapsus sum, to *fall*, to *slip*. 2. labor, labour. 3. lacerare, to *lacerate*. 4. lamentari, lamentatus sum, to *lament*. 5. languēre, languui, to *languish*. (2) languidus, *languid*. 6. lapis, lapidis, m. a *stone*. 7. largus, *large*. 8. Latinus, *Latin*. 9. latus, lateris (n.), s *side*. 10. latus, *wide*. 11. laus, laudis, f., *praise*. 12. lavare (lavi), lavatum (lautum), lotum, to *wash*.

- Elaboration.* A *laboratory* (in chemistry, a place where the work or labour is carried on).
3. *Laceration* (the act of tearing).
  4. *Lamentable* (to be lamented; distressing). *Lamentation* (the act of bewailing). *Unlamented*.
  5. *Languishment* (state of pining). (2) *Languid* (feeble), *languidness*.
  6. *Dilapidations* (lit. the separation of the stones; the required repairs, the estimated amount of which is due to an in-coming incumbent).
  7. To *enlarge* (to make bigger). *Largeness* (bigness, size). *Unenlarged* (not made any bigger). *Largely*. A *largess* (a sum distributed by a general to each of his soldiers; by a chief to his retainers, &c.).
  8. A *Latinism* (a Latin idiom), *Latinity*. To *Latinize* (to give words a Latin termination).
  9. *Collateral* (placed by the side). The *collateral* branches of a family (the side branches, not the main branch). *Equilateral* (having equal sides). *Quadrilateral* (having four sides). *Multilateral* (having many sides).
  10. To *dilate* (to make wide; to speak at length on a subject) *Dilatation* (the act of dilating, or widening), *dilatable*. A *latitudinarian* (one whose opinions are loose from their wide extent: one who, from wishing to take in as many persons as possible, gives up all definite creed).
  11. *Laudable* (praiseworthy), *laudably*. *Laudatory* (bestowing much praise).
  12. A *laundress* [lavandress] (a female who washes). A *laundry* [lavandry] (the place where clothes are washed). *Lavatory* (a wash, a vessel in which washing is performed). A *laver* (a washing vessel). *Lotion* [lavation] (a medicinal wash).

## LESSON LXI.

### Key-words.

### Latin Roots.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. A <b>LAX</b> method of proceeding; a loose method.                                     | <b>lax-, lix-, loose.</b>   |
| 2. <b>LEGATE</b> ; one sent on an embassy. (2) The Pope's <b>LEGATE</b> , his ambassador. | <b>lega-, legat-,</b> (1) to send on an embassy or mission. (2) to leave by will. |
| 3. <b>LASCIVIOUS</b> , is for <i>lax-ivious</i> , loose in morals; wanton.                | <b>lasciv-, wanton.</b>   |
| 4. To <b>COLLECT</b> ; to gather together.  | <b>leg-, lect- } gather, choose, read.</b><br><b>lig-, lict- }</b>                |
| 5. You have no <b>LEGAL</b> authority; no authority given you by the law.                 | <b>lēg-, law.</b>   |
| 6. <b>LENIENT</b> measures; mild measures; measures of clemency.                          | <b>len-, gentle, mild.</b><br><b>leni-, lenit-, to soften.</b>                    |

(1) *laxus, lax, loose.* 2. *lēgare, to send as an ambassador; to delegate.* 6. *lēnis, mild, gentle.*



## Key-words.

## Latin Roots.

7. A DE-LET-ERIOUS substance, a substance of a *destructive* nature. a) le-, let-, } to *daub*, to *smear*.  
 b) lin-, lit-, }  
 c) liter-, letter. (The ancients wrote on tablets *smeared* over with wax.)
8. To ELEVATE, to *raise up*; to make light. leva-, levat-, to *raise*, or *lift up*.  
 (Eng. form, *lieft*, *lieve*.)
9. To pour out a LIBATION; a portion of the liquid one is going to taste: it was a custom with the ancients to pour such a portion out to the gods before tasting wine on solemn occasions, such as ratifying treaties, &c. liba-, libat-, to *pour out* a *libation*.
10. To LIBERATE; to *set free*. libera-, liberat-, to *set free*.  
 (Eng. -*liver*.)
11. A LIBRARY; a collection of books. libr-, *book*.
12. What is the meaning of the zodiacal constellation LIBRA? The constellation of the SCALES. libr-, a *balance*.
13. AN ILLICIT distillery; a trade that it is *not lawful* to carry on. lice-, licit-, to *be lawful*.
14. A LIGATURE; a *band* or *bandage*. liga-, ligat-, to *bind*.
15. LIBIDINOUS; *lustful*. libid-in-, *lust*.
1. *Laxity* (looseness). *Lazily*. *Laxative* (having the power to *loosen*; *aperient*). To *relax* (to *loosen back*; to *unbend* the mind when *overstrained*). *Relaxation* (the act of *loosening*; the act of *diminishing the intensity* of any thing; an *unbending* of the mind). *Prolix* (lengthy; of a speech or style). *Prolixity*.
2. *Legation* (an *embassage sent*). To *relegate* (to *send away*, to *banish*). *Relegation*. To *delegate* (to *send with a commission*, to *depute*). A *delegate* (one sent or *deputed*), *delegation*. A *legacy* (a *sum left by will*). A *legatee* (a person to whom money is left). A *colleague* (a person *commissioned with oneself*; one who holds the same office as oneself).
4. A *collector* (one who *collects*, *gathers together*). *Collection*, *collective*. *Di-lig-ent* (properly, one who *gathers* things into *separate heaps*; hence, one who does not *pass by* what deserves *attention*; does not *shirk* what should be done; or perhaps, one who *divides his time* and work well; *assiduous*, *industrious*). *Diligence*. To *elect* (to
7. linēre, lēvi or livi, litum, to *smear*, to *daub*. delēre, delevi, deletum, to *blot out*. 8. lēvis, light. 9. liber, free. 10. liber, a *book*. (2) also, a *pound*. 11. libra, a *balance*. 12. licet (licuit), it is *lawful*. 13. ligare, to *bind*. 14. libet (libuit), *impers. it is agreeable or to one's mind*. libīdo, libidinīa, *f., lust*.

- choose out of a number). *Election*, *elector*. *E-leg-ant* (properly, *selecting out*; but used also of the thing so *selected*; beautiful, &c.). *Neg-lig-ent*, for *nec-lig-ent* (not gathering together; but allowing the thing in question to be wasted from *inattention*). To *neglect*, *negligence*. To *select*, *selection*. A *lecture* (a *reading*; an *instructive address read to an audience*; a *reprimand*). A *lecturer*. *Re-lig-ion* (perhaps the *gathering up* indications of the Divine will. It may, however, belong to *lig-a* [14]: = the *unbinding* a man; the making him *free* before God). *Religious*. A *legion* (a Roman regiment; the men being *picked men*). *Leguminous* plants (those that have a *shell*, *husk*, or *pod* to be *picked off*; whose fruit must be *shelled*; beans, peas, &c.).
5. *Legality*. *Legitimate*. A *legitimate* son (one whom the law acknowledges).
6. *Lenity* (mildness, softness). To *lenify* (to soften). *Lenitive* (softening).
7. *Deletion* (the act of blotting out). *Indelible* (that cannot be *blotted out*), *indelibly*. A *liniment* (an ointment for sprains, &c.). The *literal* meaning (the exact meaning, according to the letter of what is said). *Literature*. A *literary* man. To *obliterate* (to blot out; properly [see 7, c], by *smearing the wax over the traced letters*, so as to *oppose the reading*).
8. *Elevation*. *Elevator*. To *alleviate* (to lighten). *Alleviation*. To *levy* troops (to raise troops). *Levity* (lightness). To *relieve* (to raise up again one who is down; hence, to assist, &c.). *Relief*. *Relevant* (raising up again: hence, perhaps, helping a disputant when he is *down*. Then, *dearing upon the subject*). *Irrelevant* (not relieving a difficulty; not relating to the subject). *Re-lieving* (lending aid, support). A *lever* (a mechanical instrument for raising weights).
10. *Liberation*, *liberator*, *liberal* (free). *Liberality*, *illiberal*, *illiberally*. To *deliver* (to set free). *Deliverance*, *delivery*. *Liberty* (freedom). A *libertine* (one who has freed himself from all moral restraint). *Libertinism*.
11. *Librarian* (one who has the care of books). A *libel* (properly, a little book; but used of a little book of a *defamatory* character; and then of any published statement of a *defamatory* character).
12. *Libratory* (playing like a balance). *Libration* (a balancing motion or trepidation; a term used in astronomy). *Equilibrium* (equality of balance). To *deliberate* (to weigh a resolution, &c.). *Deliberation*. To *equilibrate* (to balance equally). *Equilibration*, *libral*.
13. *Illicitly*. A *license* (a making lawful: then an *unauthorized* making lawful; an unrestrained liberty). *Licensor*. A *licentiate* (one whose occupation is made lawful; who has a *license* to practise). *Licentious* (going beyond what is lawful). *Licentiousness*.
14. A *ligament* (a strong cord that binds the bones together). *Ligamental*. *League* (a binding). A *league* (Fr. *lieue*), = three miles, is from a root meaning to *lay*. [But for *colleague* see 2.] To *oblige* (to bind a man; also to force; to bind). *Obligingly*. To *obligate* (to bind). *Obligation*, *obligatory*.

## LESSON LXII.

*Key-words.**Latin Roots.*

1. To LIMIT, to confine within bounds. limit-, boundary.
  2. LINEN, flaxen cloth. lin-, flax; thread.
  3. A LINE. line-, a line.
  4. A good LINGUIST; a person able to speak several foreign tongues. a) ling-, linct-, to lick.  
b) lingu-, tongue; language.
  5. He RELINQUISHED the practice of intemperance; he left it off. linqu-, lict-, to leave.
  6. LIQUID; not solid, flowing; hence melted (of things that are naturally solid). liqu-e-, to be fluid, to be clear.
  7. To LITIGATE; to contest in law. a) lit-, strife.  
b) litiga-, litigat-, to strive (at law); to contest.
  8. The LOCAL militia; the militia that is confined to one place: that is called out there occasionally for training, but is not regularly under arms. a) loc-, place.  
b) loca- locat-, to place.
  9. LONG. long-, long.
  10. A LOQUACIOUS person; a talkative person. loqu-, locut-, to speak.
  11. He has some LUCID intervals; some intervals during which his intellect is clear, not darkened by insanity. a) lucē-, to shine.  
b) lucid-, bright, clear.
  12. To ILLUMINE; to throw light upon; to light up. lūmin- (for luc-min-), light.
  13. A LUNAR rainbow; a sort of rainbow formed round the moon. lūn- (for lucn-), the moon.
  14. To IL-LUST-ATE a subject; to throw light upon it. lustra- (for luc-i-stra-), lustrat- to light; to survey.
  15. A RE-LUCT-ANT witness, a witness who struggles against the necessity of giving his evidence; an unwilling witness. lucta-, luctat-, to wrestle; to struggle.
1. A limitation (a restriction; the limiting of a notion, &c.). "Proud liminary Cherub" (placed at the boundaries, as a guard). Unlimited (not bounded). Illimitable (that cannot be bounded).

---

1. limes, limitis, a bound, a limit, a path. 2. linum, flax. 3. linea, a line. 7. lis, litis, strife, contest in law. litigare, to litigate. 8. locus, a place. locare, to place. 9. longus, long. 10. loqui (locutus), to speak. 12. lumen, luminis (n.), light. 13. luna, the moon.

2. A *lineal* heir (an heir in the direct line). *Linear* perspective (the science of drawing *lines* according to the rules of perspective). *Lineally*. *Lineament* (assemblage of lines, or *outlines*: hence, *feature*). To *delineate* (to sketch the lines of: hence, to depict, to describe). *Lineage* (belonging to a genealogical *line*: hence, *family*; the *stock* one belongs to).
4. Hence *lickerish* (dainty); *language*, &c.
5. *Relinquishment* (the act of leaving behind). A *delinquent* (one who leaves duty undone; an offender). *Delinquency*. *Relict* (one left behind, a widow). *Dereliction* (a leaving or omitting of duty). A *relic* (something left after the loss of all the rest).
6. *Liquidness* (quality of being liquid). To *liquidate* (to *dissolve* from the obligation of payment; to pay). *Liquidation*. To *liquefy* (to make liquid, dissolve). *Liquefaction*. *Liquescent* (becoming liquid; able to become liquid). A *liquor* (a liquid substance).
7. *Litigious* (given to contest in law). *Litigiousness*. *Litigation* (a contesting in law).
8. *Locality* (existence in place, position). *Locally*. To *collocate* (to place together). *Collocation*. *Interlocation* (a placing between). To *dislocate* (to place apart; i. e. to put out a bone). *Dislocation*. *Translocation* (a reciprocal removal of things to each other's places). *Locomotion* (changing of place). *Locomotive* (having the power of changing place). To *locate* (to place).
9. To *elongate* (to lengthen out, to make longer). *Elongation*. *Long-shanked*, *long-suffering*, *long-winded*. *Oblong* (long in front, longer than broad). To *prolong* (to lengthen forwards, to extend). *Pro-longation*.
10. A *colloquy* (a speaking together). *Colloquial* (used in conversation). *Eloquence* (a speaking out; the power of speaking with fluency and elegance). *Eloquent*. *Grandiloquent* (using big words). *Obloquy* (a speaking against; reproach). A *soliloquy* (a speaking to oneself alone). To *soliloquize*. A *ventriloquist* (one who speaks, or seems to speak, from his stomach; ventr-, stomach). *Circumlocution* (a speaking in an indirect manner, a round-about way of expressing oneself, from not being able or not wishing to use a term that directly expresses one's meaning). *Elocution* (the art of speaking or pronouncing with clearness, fluency, &c.). An *interlocution* (interchange of speech, dialogue. In law, an intermediate decree). The *prolocutor* (the speaker of a convocation).
11. To *elucidate* (to make a thing shine out; to explain). *Elucidation*. *Pellucid* (shining through, transparent). *Semipellucid* (half shining through, half transparent). *Luciferous* (light-bearing). *Lucifer*. *Lucent* (shining).
12. *Illumination* (a lighting up). A *luminary* (a body that gives light). *Luminous* (full of light).
13. *Sublunary* (under the moon). *Interlunar* (belonging to the time between the old moon and the new). *Semilunar* (in the form of a half-moon). A *lunatic* (one who is moon-struck, is under the supposed influence of the moon). *Lunacy*.
14. The *illustration* of a subject. *Illustrative* remarks. *Illustrious*.
15. *Re-luctance* (unwillingness).

## LESSON LXIII.

## M.

*Key-words.**Latin Roots.*

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. An EMACIATED body; a body worn, or wasted away; hence, thin, lean.   | macr-, lean, thin.<br>maci-e-, leanness.  |
| 2. A MACHINE; an instrument contrived for facilitating labour; hence, the figurative application of the word <i>machinations</i> to "devices," "plots." | machin-a-, a machine, machinery.  |
| 3. The IMMACULATE conception; the false doctrine of Romanists, that the Blessed Virgin was conceived without any spot of original sin.                  | macula-, maculat-, to spot, to stain, to defile.  |
| 4. A MAGIC lantern; a lantern that exhibits pictures as if by enchantment.  | magic-, magical.  |
| 5. A MAGISTERIAL voice; such a voice as a master should have, as being fit to strike awe into pupils.   | magister-, magistr-, a master.  |
| 6. A "MAGNUM bonum;" a great and good plum.   | magn-, great, big.<br>magnitud-, greatness, size.   |
| 7. The Queen's MAJESTY; her rank and dignity as greater than that of others; her high office.   | majestat-, majesty.   |
| 8. "The MALEVOLENT sentiments;" the sentiments that lead us to wish a person ill; to desire his hurt.   | mal-, bad, wicked, evil.  |
| 9. To COMMAND (literally, to give into the hand), to order; to charge; hence, to command an army; to govern it by one's commands.                       | <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;">           manda-, mandat-<br/>menda-, mendat-         </div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle; font-size: 3em; margin: 0 10px;">}</div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;">           to put into<br/>the hand; to<br/>charge; to com-<br/>mission.         </div> |
| 10. "The upper MANDIBLE of a bird;" its upper jaw.  | mand-, mans-, to chew.  |

1. macêre, to be thin, to be lean. macerare, to soak in water (till its substance is diminished), to make lean, to waste or wear away. 2. machîna, a machine. 3. macula, a spot. maculare, to spot or stain. 4. magus, an enchanter. 5. magister (-trî), a master. 6. magnus, great. 7. majestas (-atis), majesty. 8. malus, evil, bad. malignus, scanty: then malignant. malitia, wickedness. 9. mandare, to charge, to commission. 10. mandêre, mandi, mansum, to chew.

## Key-words.

## Latin Roots.

11. A PERMANENT council; a council that is to *continue* without breaking up its sittings, or without any periodical change of its members. mane-, mans-, to remain.
  12. To MANAGE; literally, to *guide* or direct by the *hand* [*agere*, to drive, to do]. manu-, the hand.
  13. The mammi-ferous animals, animals that have breasts or dugs, and so *suckle* their young. mamm-, breast.
1. To *emaciate* (to make lean, to wear away). *Emaciation*. Hence the English *meagre* (lean, poor), *meagerness*, *meagerly*. To *macerate* (to make lean; to wear away by steeping in a fluid). *Maceration*.
  2. A *machinist* (a maker of machines). To *machinate* (to devise, to plot). *Machinations* (devices, plots).
  3. *Immaculateness* (the condition of being free from spot or stain).
  4. A *magician* (one who professes the art of magic). *Magically*.
  5. A *magistrate* (one who is placed by a king as a *master* over some of his *servants*; a *justice*, &c.). A *magistracy* (1. the office of magistrate. 2. the body of magistrates).—Hence, the English *master*, *mastery*, *masterful*, &c.
  6. To *magnify* (to make great; to represent as great). *Magnificent*, *magnificence*. *Magnanimous* [*animus*, *mind*] (having a *great soul*; high-spirited, generous). *Magnanimity*.
  7. *Majesty* (*maj*. is properly the comparative of *mag*-, *magn*-). *Majestic*, *majestically*.
  8. A *malefactor* (one who does evil). *Malediction* (denunciation of evil). A *malcontent* (one who is ill-content; discontented). *Maladministration* (an evil administration of affairs). A *malpractice* (a bad practice). To *malign* (to regard with an evil disposition; then to *vilify*). *Malignant* (ill-disposed towards another; spiteful). *Malignancy*. *Malice* (spiteful *ill-will*). *Malicious* (full of malice). *Maliciousness*.
  9. A *mandate* (an order committed to the charge of any one). A *commandment*, *commander*. To *commend* (properly, to *put* a person *into the hands* of another, to be kindly received, &c. by him; = to *recommend*. Hence, also, to *praise*), *commendation*. *Commendable*. To *recommend*, *recommendation*. To *countermand* (to issue a *contrary command*; to *undo* something that had been ordered). A *mandatary* (a person who holds a *mandate* from the Pope, entitling him to claim admission to a benefice).
  10. *Mandibular* (belonging to the jaw [of a *bird*]). To *manducate* (to *chew*). *Manducation*. To *masticate* (to *chew repeatedly*; to grind well with the teeth). *Mastication*.
  11. *Permanence* (*continuance*, *durability*). *Permanency*, *permanently*.
11. *manère* (*mansi*, *mansum*), to remain, abide. 12. *manus*, -ūs, *f. a hand*.

*Immanent* (abiding in). To *remain* (to be left, as one out of a greater quantity or number; to continue). *Remainder, remnant.* *Manse* (the house in which a Scotch minister *resides*). A *mansion* (a residence; a dwelling-house).

12. A *manager* (one who directs). *Management, manageable.* To *e-man-cipate* (to take out from a person's hand, to *set free* [capi-, cipi-, cipat-, to *take*]). *Emancipation.* A *manufacture* (work done by hand [faci-, fact-, to *do*, to *make*]). A *manuscript* (that which is written with the hand [scrib-, script-, to *write*]). A *manacle* (a chain for the hand). An *amanuensis* (one who writes with the hand what another dictates). *Manu-* becomes *main* in French: hence to *maintain* (to hold by the hand; to uphold; to support; to assert an opinion). *Maintenance* (a holding up by the hand, a sustentation).

## LESSON LXIV.

### Key-words.

### Latin Roots.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. A MARINE villa; a villa on the sea-side.  | mar-, sea.<br>marin-, sea (as adj.); marine. |
| 2. MASCULINE, pertaining to a male.  | a) mar-, male.<br>b) mascul-, masculine.     |
| 3. A MARGINAL reference; a reference set down in the margin of a book; for instance, in the margin of a Bible. | margin-, edge, margin.                       |
| 4. A COURT-MARTIAL; a court for offences against the laws of war; against the military code.                   | Mars, Mart-, the heathen god of war.         |
| 5. His MATERNAL aunt; his aunt by the mother's side.   | mater- } mother.<br>matr- }                  |
| 6. MATERIAL; belonging to matter or substance.   | materi-, matter.                             |
| 7. In the MATURITY of his intellect; in its ripest state.  | matūr-, ripe.                                |
| 8. A MEDIATOR; one who goes between two parties, to reconcile them; an intercessor.                            | medi-, middle; midst.                        |
| 9. The MEDICAL art; the healing art.   | medic-, physician.                           |
| 10. To MEDITATE; to revolve in the mind.   | medita-, meditat-, to meditate.              |

---

1. mare, -is, n., the sea. 2. mas, a male. masculus, of the male kind, manly. māritus, a husband. 3. margo, marginis, margin, edge. 4. Mars, Martis, Mars. 5. māter, a mother. 6. māteria, matter. 7. matūrus, ripe. 8. medius, middle. 9. mederi, and medicare, to heal, to cure. 10. meditari, meditatus sum, to meditate.

11. To AMELIORATE; to make melior-, better.  
*better.*
12. A MELLI-FLUOUS discourse; mell-, honey.  
a discourse flowing with the  
*sweetness of honey.*
13. The MEMORY; the faculty by memor-, mindful.  
which we remember.
1. A mariner (a sea-faring man). A marine (a sea-soldier). Maritime (relating to, or bordering on the sea). Submarine (under the sea). Transmarine (on the other side of the sea). Ultramarine (beyond the sea). Ultramarine blue (a deeper blue than that of the sea).
2. To emasculate (to deprive of the proper strength of a man, or male). Marital (pertaining to a husband). Hence, to marry, marriage, marriageable.
4. Martial becomes in English marshal. A field-marshal (an officer of the highest military rank). To marshal (to range in order; properly, of troops).
5. Maternity (the character or relation of a mother). A matricide (a mother-killer). Matron. To matriculate (to enrol a person's name on the books of a university, which is to be the mother of his intellectual and moral character). Matriculation. Matrimony (marriage; properly, of the woman, the future mother of the family). Matrimonial.
6. To materialize (to form into matter). A materialist (one who believes in the eternity of matter). Immaterial (of no matter, or importance). Immaterially.
7. To mature (to ripen). Immature (not ripe). Immaturity. Premature (ripe too soon; before it is ripe). Prematurely, prematurity.
8. Medium (the middle place or degree; the point between too much and too little). Mediation, mediatorial, mediatory. Mediocrity (middle rate). Intermediate (in the middle, between). Intermediately. Mediety, more commonly moiety (middle state; a half). The Mediterranean (the sea that is cooped up in the middle between several lands). Immediate (without the intervention of a middle state or time). Immediately.
9. Medicine (the medium or art of healing). Medicinal (belonging to, or having the power of healing). Medicinally. A remedy, (the means of healing). Remediable (capable of being healed). Unremediable, irremediable. A medicament (any thing used in healing). Medicamental. To medicate (to tincture with any thing medicinal). Medication.
10. Meditation (a revolving in the mind). Meditative. Premeditation (a previous revolution in the mind). Unpremeditated (not considered or resolved upon beforehand).
11. To ameliorate (to make better). Amelioration.
12. Oxy-mel [oxys = sharp], (a mixture of vinegar and honey). Hydromel [hydor = water], (a mixture of water and honey).  
But Philomel (a lover of song, a nightingale), is from the Greek *melos*, a song.

---

11. melior (comp. of bonus, good), better. 12. mel-, mellis (n.), honey.



13. *Memory* (the power of retaining in the mind). *Memorable* (worthy of memory). *Memorably*. *Remembrance* (retention in the memory). *Remembrancer* (one that brings to the memory). *To commemorate* (to relate; properly, the *several particulars* of any thing; to keep up the recollection of). *Commemoration*, *commemorative*.

## LESSON LXV.

### Key-words.

### Latin Roots.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. An E-MEND-ATION, the (proposed) correction of a fault.                                       | mend-, fault.   |
| 2. MENTAL arithmetic; arithmetic performed in the mind.   | ment-, mind.  |
| 3. The art of MENSURATION; the art of measuring land, &c.                                       | a) mensur-, measure.<br>b) meti-, mens-, to measure.                              |
| 4. MERIT, excellence deserving of reward.   | merē-, merit-, to deserve.  |
| 5. IM-MERS-ED in business; plunged in business; head over ears in business.                     | merg-, mers-, to plunge.  |
| 6. Do these birds MIGRATE? do they remove from one place to another? are they birds of passage? | migra-, migrat-, to migrate; to change one's place of abode.                      |
| 7. The MILITARY profession; the profession of a soldier.  | milit-, soldier.  |
| 8. The MILL-ENNIUM, the reign of a thousand years (as predicted in the Revelation of St. John). | mill-, mille-, a thousand.  |
| 9. To MIMIC: to imitate as a buffoon.   | mim-, buffoon (properly Greek).   |
| 10. To MENACE, to threaten.   | mina-, minat-, to threaten. (To menace comes through the French <i>menacer</i> .) |
| 11. A MINISTER, one who serves.   | minister-, ministr-, servant, administrative agent.                               |
| 12. To DIMINISH; to make less: to become less.  | a) minor-, less.<br>b) minu-, minut-, to lessen.                                  |

---

1. mendum, a fault. 2. mens, mentis, f. mind. 3. metiri, mensurum, to measure. mensura, a measure. 4. merēre, merui, meritum, to earn, to deserve. 5. mergere (mersi, mersum), to plunge. 6. migrare, to migrate, to remove from one place of abode to another. 7. miles, militis, a soldier. 8. mille, a thousand. 9. mimus, a mimic, a buffoon. 10. minae, threats. 11. minister, a servant. 12. minor, less. minuire, minui, minūtum, to lessen.

1. Hence, to *mend*, a *mender*. To *amend* (to turn from what is faulty; to improve; to correct). *Amendment*.
2. *Mentally* (in the *mind*). To *comment* (properly, to *think over with the mind*; then to state the *result* of such thinking; mostly with reference to one's thoughts, or the meaning of another person's works). A *commentation*, a *commentary*. *Demented* (deprived of one's *right mind*).
3. *Immense* (unmeasured, unbounded). *Immensity*. *Immensurable* (that cannot be measured). To *commensurate* (to reduce to some common measure). *Commensurable*, *commensuration*. *Incommensurable* (not capable of being measured together; incapable of being compared together by measurement). *Dimension* (measurement in a *diverging direction*; the dimensions of a body are its *length, breadth, &c.*).
4. *Meritorious* (deserving reward). *Meritoriously*. *Demerit* (the opposite of merit; a condition or quality that is not deserving of reward). *Unmerited*.
5. To *e-merge* (to *plunge out of*; to come suddenly out of). *Emer-sion*. To *immerse* (immersion). An *emergency* (the sudden coming forth, as it were, of a state of things: a sudden conjuncture).
6. *Migratory* (changing residence). To *emigrate* (to go out of a country in changing one's residence). *Emigrant*, *emigration*. To *immigrate* (to come into a country in changing residence). *Immigrant*, *immigration*. *Transmigration* (passage from one place to another). *Transmigratory*.
7. *Militia* (a body of soldiers. In England the *militia* is opposed to the *regular* soldiers. It is the body of *citizen-soldiers* occasionally called out to be ready to defend the country). To *militate* (to *fight against*; to *make against*; or be at variance with a nation). *Militant* (generally applied to the Church on earth, as contrasted with, or opposed to, the *Church triumphant* in heaven).
8. *Milfoil* (the name of a plant which is supposed to have a thousand leaves). *Millesimal* (consisting of a thousand parts). *Milleped* (name of an insect with a thousand feet; the wood-louse). *Mil-lenarian* (from *millenarius* [= containing a thousand]; one who looks for a *literal* reign of a thousand years; the *millennium*).
9. *Mimicry* (burlesque). *Imitation*. *Minical*. *Mimographer* (a writer of plays of a burlesque character). *Pantomime*.
10. *Commination* (a *threat*; a recital of God's threatenings; a service for the first day of Lent). *Comminatory*.
11. *Ministerial* (pertaining to a minister). To *minister* (to serve). *Ministration* (service). *Ministry*. To *administer* (to serve to). *Administration*, *administrator*.
12. *Diminution* (a making less). *Diminishable*. *Diminutive* (very little). *Minute* (very little). A *min'ute* (a very small portion of time; a short note of a debate, &c.). *Minutely*, *minuteness*. A *minor* (one who is under twenty-one years' old). *Minority* (the smaller number; the state of being under age). *Minikin* (small). A *miniature* (a representation in a small compass; a likeness much less than the original). A *minion* (a little being; a despicable little favorite). *Comminution* (the act of grinding into small parts).

## LESSON LXVI.

*Key-words.**Latin Roots.*

1. To ADMIRE, to regard with wonder. mira-, mirat-, to wonder.
  2. A strange MIXTURE; a strange mass of things mixed together; or a strange substance formed by things mixed together. misce-, mixt-, mist-, to mix.
  3. MISERY, wretchedness, piti-fulness. miser-, wretched, miserable.
  4. To MITIGATE pain; to make it more mild; to soften (lessen, alleviate) it. mitiga-, mitigat- to alleviate.
  5. His MISSION; his sending; the business on which he is sent. mitt-, miss-, to send.
  6. A new MODE; a new method, manner, way. mod-, measure, degree, manner.
  7. To IMMOLATE a victim; to kill it in sacrifice, because meal from the mill was sprinkled on the victim's forehead. mol-, mill; coarse ground corn.
  8. MOLEST (literally, to heap a weight upon), to vex, to annoy. mol-, mass.
  9. To MOLLIFY a person, to soften him. a) moll-, soft.  
b) molli-, mollit-, to soften.
  10. To ADMONISH him, to put in mind, to warn. mone-, monit-, to warn.
  11. To DEMONSTRATE a proposition; to show its truth; to prove it. monstr-a, monstrat-, to show.
  12. The Mount of Olives, the hill so called. mont- (in English, mount), mountain.
1. Admirable (of power to excite wonder). Admirably. Admirableness (admiration).
  2. A miscellany (a collection made up of mixed materials). Miscellaneous. Promiscuous (mixed confusedly). Promiscuously, promiscuousness. Mixture (the state of being mixed). Commixture (a

1. mirus, wonderful. mirari, miratus sum, to wonder. 2. miscere, miscui, mistum, and mixtum, to mix. 3. miser, wretched. 4. mitis, mild, soft, gentle. mitigare, to tame, to soften, to mitigate. 5. mittere, misi, missum, to send. missio, a sending. 6. modus, a due proportion, measure, rule. molere, molui, molitum, to grind in a mill. emolumentum, gist of a mill, toll, profit. 8. moles, a mass or heap. molestus, troublesome. moliri, to set (a mass) in motion; to undertake (a laborious plan). 9. mollis, soft. 10. monere, monui, monitum, admonish. 12. mons, montis, a mountain.

- mixing together). *Admixture* (an addition to the mixture). *Intermixture* (a mixing between, i. e. one with the other). *Unmixed*.
3. To *commiserate* (to pity, to compassionate). *Commiseration*.
4. *Mitigation* (a softening). *Mitigable* (that can be softened). *Unmitigable*.
5. A *missive* (a thing sent; a letter). A *missile* (a weapon of offence sent or thrown by the hand, or otherwise). A *missionary* (one sent to propagate religion). *Immission* (the act of sending in). To *transmit* (to send across). To *admit* [to to-send], (to allow to enter). *Admission*, *admissible*, or *admittible*. *Admittance*. To *commit* (lit. to send together: hence, to send an action to join the thought of it; to bring the deed and thought together; to do a crime, &c.). But what is to *commit* a thing to a person's care (to bring that thing and the person into connexion: hence, to give it up to him)? *Commission*. *Demise* (a person's being sent down to his grave; his decease). To *dissmiss* (to send a person away; to discard him, &c.). *Dismissal*. *Dismissal* (the sending a person away from an office). To *e-mit* light (to send or give out light). The *e-mission* of light (the sending it forth). A person's *e-missaries* (those whom he sends out as scouts, or other agents). An *intermittent* fever (a fever that sends intervals between its attack; that has intervals). To *intermit*. To *manumit* a slave (to send him from one's hand [*manus* = hand], to set him free). To *o-mit* (to leave out; to leave undone). Then what does the *o* mean? The *o* is for *ob*, 'against,' in the direction 'to meet.' Hence, to *o-mit* a thing, is properly to send it from me against some other person or thing). *Omission*. To *per-mit* (to send a man through; to tell him to go through: hence, to allow). *Permission*, *permissive*. To *promise* (to send forth a notion; to make an intention known; to give one's word, &c.). A *promise*, *promissory*. To *re-mit* (to send something back; to give back a part of the price of any thing; to send back what was going rapidly and vigorously on: hence, to slacken, abate.) The remission of sins (the sending them back unpunished; their forgiveness). To *sub-mit* (to send under). To *submit* my will to his (to make mine knock under to his). To *submit* to a thing (to place myself quietly under it; to yield to it). *Submission*, *submissive*. To *trans-mit* (to send through, or across; to transmit intelligence; to transmit the light). *Transmission*. A *surmise* (a suspicion or conjecture: *sur*, French for *super*).
6. To *modify* (to make a measure). To *modify* a notion (to qualify its unlimited meaning; to give it a particular shape). *Modification*. *Commodious* (of a suitable form or measure). *Commodiousness*, *commodiously*. To *ac-com-mod-ate* (to bring the measures of two things together; to fit one to the other; to oblige a person). *Accommodation*. To *incommode* (to disturb or disarrange the form, to make uncomfortable). *Discommodious*, *incommodious*. To *moderate* (to conform to rule, to restrain). *Moderation*, *moderately*. A *moderator* (one who limits to a rule; one who presides at a disputation). *Modern* (according to the rule or method of our own times). *Modernize*, *modernness*. *Modish* (in conformity with the method or manners of the present time). To *modulate* (to form by the laws of sound). *Modulation*. To *model* (to form by rule). *Modeller*, a *model*. *Modest*.

7. *Immolation* (the slaughtering of a victim). *Emolument* (originally, the profits derived from a mill: hence, profits of any other kind).  
 8. *Molestation, unmolested*. To *demolish* (to throw down in a heap).  
*Demolition. Mole* (a mound or heap of earth or stones).  
 9. *Mollification* (the act of softening). *Mollient* and *emollient* (softening).  
 10. *Admonition, admonitory*. To *premonish* (to warn beforehand).  
*Premonition, premonitory*. A *monitor* (one who warns). *Monument* (any thing of a permanent character, by which the recollection of a thing or person is preserved). *Monumental*.  
 11. A *demonstrator*. A *demonstrative* proof. A *monster* (a thing that might be shown as a rare sight from its unnaturalness). *Monstrous, monstrosity*.  
 12. A *mountaineer* (one who lives on mountains). A *mound* (a portion of earth, or other substance, raised in the form of a mountain). To *mount* (to ascend). To *dismount*. A *mountebank* (one who mounts a bench; a juggling performer). A *promontory* (a high land jutting out into the sea). To *surmount* (to mount or rise above). *Surmountable, insurmountable. Ultramontane* (being beyond the mountains).

## LESSON LXVII.

*Key-words.**Latin Roots.*

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. A MORBID feeling; a <i>diseased</i> , unhealthy feeling (of the mind). | morb-, <i>disease</i> .   |
| 2. To feel RE-MORSE; to feel the <i>after-biting</i> of conscience.       | morde-, mors-, to <i>bite, gnaw</i> .                                       |
| 3. A MORTAL wound; one that will occasion <i>death</i> .                  | mort-, <i>death</i> .   |
| 4. MORAL, relating to manners.  | mor-, <i>manner, custom</i> .   |
| 5. MOVE and MOTION.   | a) move-, mōt-, to <i>move</i> .<br>b) mōb- (for movib-), <i>moveable</i> . |
| 6. To PRO-MULGATE a law; to <i>publish</i> it.                            | mulga-, mulgat- (not used), to <i>reveal, make known</i> .                  |
| 7. AN E-MULS-ION, a <i>soothing</i> medicine.                             | mulce-, muls-, to <i>soothe</i> .   |
| 8. To MULCT a man, to <i>fine</i> him.                                    | mulct-, or mult-, a <i>fine</i> .   |
| 9. MUNDANE, belonging to the world.                                       | mund-, <i>world</i> .   |
| 10. AMMUNITION, the means of defence; arms, powder, shot, balls, &c.      | muni-, munit-, to <i>fortify</i> with walls.                                |

1. morbus, *disease*. 2. mordere, momordi, morsum, 'to bite. 3. mors, mortis, *f. death*. mortalis, *mortal*. 4. mos, moris, *a manner*. 5. mōvere, mōvi, mōtum, *to move*. 6. mundus, *world*. mundus, *clean, to cleanse*. 7. munire, *to fortify*.

11. A **MUNIFICENT** present, such a gift as is worthy of one who is *making a gift*. a) mun-, muner- (1) *gift*; (2) *task, office*.  
b) munera-, munerat-, to reward.
12. To **IMMURE** a prisoner; to *enclose him within walls*; to shut up. mur-, wall.
1. **Morbific** (causing disease). **Morbidness**. **Morbose** (proceeding from disease).
2. **Mordacity**. A *morsel* (a piece fit for the mouth). **Remorseful**, *remorseless*.
3. **Mortality** (subjection to death). A *mortgage* (a dead pledge; the grant of an estate by a borrower to a lender; which the lender is to keep, if the interest of the debt is not paid). **Mortgager**, *mortgagee*. To *mortify* (to cause death). What is to *mortify* the sinful desires? (to kill them by steady discipline). To *mortify* a person (to do something which is death to his pride, which greatly vexes him). **Mortmain** (possession by dead hands; such a state of possession as makes it unalienable). **Mortuary**. **Immortal** (not subject to death). *Immortality*, to *immortalize*.
4. **Morality** (the doctrine of manners). A *moralist* (one who treats of manners). To *moralize* (to make some reflection relating to mind or morals). **Immoral** (wanting in manners; contrary to virtue). **Immerality**. To *demoralize* (to destroy good morals). *Demoralization*.
5. **Moveable**, *movement*. **Movingly** (in such a manner as to move or excite the passions). **Commotion** (a moving together, disturbance). **Counter-motion** (a contrary movement). **Emotion** (a movement or disturbance from within; a feeling or passion). **Immoveable** (that cannot be moved). To *remove* (to move back, or away). **Removeable**. To *promote* (to move forward). **Promotion**. **Remote** (moved back). **Remotely**. A *motive* (that which moves the determination). A *mob* (a moving or tumultuous body). **Mobility** (moveableness).
6. The *promulgation* of a law (its publication).
9. **Antemundane** (that which was before the world). **Extramundane** (without the limits of the world). **Intermundane** (subsisting between worlds or planets). **Ultramundane** (beyond the limits of the world).
10. **Muniment** (fortification). **Premunition** (one means of defence in an argument, namely, an anticipation of objections).
11. To *remunerate* (to repay with a gift). **Remuneration**. **Com-munion** the having a *common* office; then, the having a *common* character; the being united together). **Common** (for *commun-*). To *communicate* (to make common). To *communicate* news (to make it *common property*; to tell it). **Im-muni-ty** (the *not* having an office; exemption from a burdensome office, &c.).
12. **Mural** (pertaining to walls).

## LESSON LXVIII.

*Key-words.**Latin Roots.*

- |  |                                 |
|--|---------------------------------|
| 1. MUSCULAR strength; strength of muscle.  | muscul-, muscle.                |
| 2. A MURMUR.   | murmur-, murmur.                |
| 3. A MUSE, one of the heathen goddesses of learning, especially of music and poetry. | mus-, muse.                     |
| 4. To MUTILATE, to maim.   | mutila-, mutilat-, to mutilate. |
| 5. MUTABLE, liability to change.   | muta- mutat- to change.         |
| 6. MUTE, without speech.   | mut-, mute.                     |

## N.

7. He NARRATED a long history; he told or related it. narra-, narrat-, to relate.
8. NATIVE, relating to birth. nasc-, nat-, to be born.
9. The art of NATATION; the art of swimming. na-, nat-, natat-, to swim.
10. To NAVIGATE, to guide a ship to make a voyage. a) navi-, ship.  
b) naut- (for navit-), sailor.
11. A NEBULOUS appearance; a cloudy appearance. nebul-, cloud.
12. This is NECESSARY; this is of necessity, must needs be or be done. necess-, necessary.
3. A museum (a collection of learned curiosities). To muse (to meditate). To a-muse a person (to divert his attention from hard study; to please by something entertaining). Amusement.
4. Mutilation, mutilator. Unmutilated.
5. Mutability (changeableness). To commute (to change one thing for another). Commutation, commutable. Immutable (unchangeable). immutability. Permutation (the exchange of one thing for another). To transmute (to change from one nature or substance to another). Transmutable, transmutation.
6. Obmutescence (loss of speech).
7. Narration (the act of telling). A narrative (a tale, a relation of events). A narrator, narratory.
8. A native (one born in a place). Nativity (birth). Innate (born in one). Innately. Cognate (born together; of the same relationship). Cognation. Renascent (springing again into being). His natal day (his birth day). Hence nation, nature, &c. with their derivatives.

---

1. musculus, muscle. 2. murmur (murmuris), murmur. 4. mutilus, having the horns broken off, broken. mutilare, to maim. 5. mutare, to change. 6. mutus, dumb. 7. narrare, to tell, to relate. 8. nasci, natus sum, to be born.

9. *Supernatation* (the act of swimming on the top of any thing).  
 10. *Navigation* (the act or practice of guiding ships). *Navigable* (that can be passed by ships or boats). *Navigator*. To *circumnavigate* (to sail round). *Circumnavigable*. *Innavigable* and *unnavigable* (on which ships or boats cannot sail). *Navy* (an assemblage of ships). *Naval*. *Nautical* (pertaining to ships or shipmen). *Nautilus* (a little sailor; the name of a shellfish).  
 Hence also *nausea* (sea-sickness); and its compounds *nauseous* (so nasty as to be sickening), &c.  
 11. *Nebulous* (cloudy, misty).  
 12. *Necessity* (state of being necessary). To *necessitate* (to make necessary). *Necessitous* (wanting what is necessary). *Unnecessary*.

## LESSON LXIX.

## Key-words.

## Latin Roots.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. An INTER-NECINE war; a war of extermination; a war to the death.   | nec-, death.  |
| 2. To CONNECT two points; to join them together.  | nect-, nex-, to knit, or join together.               |
| 3. He answered in the NEGATIVE; he said no; he denied the fact.   | nega-, negat, to say no; to deny.                     |
| 4. The NIGER; the black river; that is, the great river in the country of the blacks.                         | nigr-, black.   |
| 5. The NIDI-FICATION of birds; their nest-making, nest-building.  | nid-, nest.   |
| 6. To ANNIHILATE time and space; to reduce them to nothing; to destroy them.                                  | nihil, nothing.                                       |
| 7. In spite of his RENIT-ESCENCE; in spite of his striving against it; in spite of his struggling opposition. | nit-, nis- to strive.                                 |
| 8. To CONNIVE at any proceeding; to wink at it; to pretend ignorance.   | nive-, to wink, connive; to look through the fingers. |
| 9. NOXIOUS weeds; hurtful weeds.  | a) noce-, nocit-, to hurt.<br>b) noxi-, hurt, harm.   |

---

1. nex (necis), *f. violent death*. 2. nectere, nexui or nexi, nexum, *to join*. 3. negare, *to deny*. 4. niger, nigra, nigrum, *black*. 5. nidus, *nest*. 6. nihil, *nothing*. 7. niti, nisus sum, *to strive*. 8. nivĕre, *to wink*. 9. nocĕre, nocui, nocĭtum, *to hurt*. noxius, *hurtful*. 10. nodus, *a knot*. 11. nomen, nominis, *n. a name* [\* noscere, novi, notum, *to know*.]



10. The **MOD-OSITY** of the oak; *nod-*, *knot*.  
its *knottiness*.
11. **NOMINAL**; belonging to names. a) *nomin-* (= *noscimin-*, *name*).  
b) *nomina-*, *nominat-*, to *name*.  
c) *nobil-* (= *noscibil-*), *noble*.  
[These three are from the next root.]
12. **COGNIZANCE** (= *cognos-* *nosc-*, *not-*, } to *know*.  
*cence*), a badge by which a man *nosc-*, *nft-*, }  
is known.
1. Hence *per-nic-i-ous* (hurtful to a *deadly* degree, &c.).
2. *Connection*, or *connexion* (a joining together). *Connectively* (in conjunction). To *disconnect* (to disjoin). *Disconnected*, *unconnected*. To *annex* (to join to). *Annexation*. To *reannex* (to join again).
3. *Negation* (denial). To *abnegate* (to deny). *Abnegation*. A *renegade*, properly *renegade* (one who denies the faith, an apostate).  
Hence the English *de-ny*, &c.
4. *Nigrescent* (growing black).—Hence, a *negro* (a black man).  
*Negress*.
6. *Annihilation* (the reduction to nothing).
8. *Connivance* (the act of winking at, or pretending ignorance).
9. *Innoxious* (not hurtful, harmless). *Innoxiousness*. *Obnoxious* (opposed to hurt; liable or exposed to something bad). *Obnoxiously*. *Innocent* (that does not hurt; free from guilt). *Innocence* (freedom from hurt, harmlessness; state of guiltlessness). *Innocently*. *Innocuous* (not hurtful). *Nuisance*, from the French *nuire* (*nocere*) = *noxiance* (an annoying object). To *an-noy*, &c.
10. A *nodule* (a little knot).
11. To *nominate* (to name, to mention by name). *Nominator*, *nomination*. *Nominative* (in grammar, the case which primarily marks the name of any thing). A *nominee* (the person named by any body). To *denominate* (to give a name to). *Denomination*, *denominative*, *denominator*. *Ignominy* (state of being without or against a name, implying that it is a good name; *disgrace*). *Ignominious*. *Multinomial* (with many names). To *prenominate* (to forename). *Prenomination*. *Cognominal* (having the same name). *Cognomination* (a name added from any accident or quality; a surname). A *note* (a mark by which any thing is known). A *notion* (that which is known about an object; the idea entertained about it). *Notional*. *Noble*, *nobility*, &c.  
“Merely *nominal*” (being the thing it is called not so much in reality as in name, and in that only).  
From *nomen* come *noun*, *name*, *know*, *acknowledge*, &c.
12. To *recognize* [= to *recognosce*], (to *perceive* and *know* that an object is the *same* as one which I saw some time back). *Recognition*.

## LESSON LXX.

## Key-words.

## Latin Roots.

1. NOVEL opinions; *new*, or *new-fangled* opinions. nov-, *new*.
2. NOCTURNAL depredations; depredations committed during the *night*. nova-, novat-, to make *new*.  
noct-, *night*.
3. A NUPTIAL feast; a *marriage* feast. nūb-, nupt-, to *marry*.
4. A state of NUDITY; a state of *nakedness*. nud-, *naked*.
5. To ANNUL; literally, to *make none*: to *abrogate* or *abolish*. null-, *none*.
6. To ENUMERATE all the particulars; to *number* one by one; to *recount* or *relate* them all. a) numer-, *number*.  
b) numera-, numerat-, to *number*.
7. The Pope's NUNCIO; properly, his *messenger*; a *papal ambassador*. a) nunc-, nunci- (or nunti-), *messenger*.  
b) nuncia-, nunciat-, } to an-  
nuntia-, nuntiat-, } *nounce*.
8. NUTRITIOUS food; food that has the quality of *nourishing*. nutri-, nutrit-, to *nourish*, to *nurse*.
9. A NUCLEUS; a central point about which matter is gathered. a) nuc-, *nut*.  
b) nucle-, *kernel*.

## O.

10. To pass away into OBLIVION; into the state of being *forgotten*. oblivisc-, oblit-, to *forget*.  
obliv-, *forgetfulness*.
11. An OBLIQUE course; a course that is *not direct*. obliqu-, *oblique*, *indirect*.
12. An OBSCURE corner; a *dark* corner. obscur-, *dark*.

1. *Novelty* (newness). A *novel* (properly, a *new* work; a tale of fiction so called). A *novelist* (a writer of novels). A *novice* (one who is new to the duties of his office). *Noviciate* (the state of being a novice). To *renovate* (to make new again). *Renovation*. To *innovate* (to bring in something new). An *innovation* (a change; something new that displaces what is old and *valuable*). *Innovator*.

*New* comes from *nov-us*.

- 
1. novus, *new*. novellus, *very young* or *new*. 2. nox, noctis, *night*. 3. nubere, nupsi, nuptum, to *cover with a veil*, to *marry*. 4. nudus, *naked*. 5. nullus, *none*. 6. numerus, *number*. 7. nuntius (1) *tidings*; (2) *messenger*. nunciare, nunciavi, nunciatum, to *tell*, as a *messenger*. 8. nutrire, nutriti, nutritum, to *nourish*. 9. nux (nūcis), a *nut*. 10. oblivisci (oblītus sum), to *forget*. 11. obliquus, *oblique*. 12. obscurus, *dark*.

2. The *equinox* (equal-night, a time of the year when the nights and days are equal). *Equinoctial* (pertaining to the equinox).
3. *Connubial* (relating to marriage).
4. To *denude* (to make naked; to strip or divest of). *Denudation* (the act of making naked).
5. A *nullity* (a thing that is virtually none; that has no substantial existence; a non-entity). *Nullify, disannul* (have the same meaning as *annul*). *Disannulment*.
6. *Enumeration. Numerous* (consisting of numbers). *Numerously. Numeral* (relating to number). *Numeration* (the art of numbering). *Numerator* (he that numbers). *Numerical* (denoting number). *Numerically. Innumerable* (without number). *Supernumerary* (being above a stated number).—Hence *number, &c.*
7. *Announcement* (a telling to). To *denounce* (to threaten by telling, to give information against). *Denouncement, denouncer. Denunciation* (the act of denouncing). To *enunciate* (to tell out, to declare). *Enunciation. To pronounce* (to tell forth, to utter). *Pronunciation. To renounce* (to tell back, to disown). *Renunciation*.
8. *Nutrition* (the act or quality of nourishing). *Nutriments* (nourishment).—Hence *nurture* (= *nutriture*), and to *nourish, &c.*
10. *Oblivious* (forgetful).
11. The *obliquity* of his conduct (its indirect character; its deviation from the straight path).
12. *Obscuration. Obscurity* (a being dark or hidden). *Unobscured, obscurity*.

## LESSON LXXI.

### Key-words.

### Latin Roots.

1. What is an OCTAVE in music? oct-, octo-, *eight*.  
an interval of *eight* sounds.
2. OCULAR demonstration; proof ocul-, *eye*.  
derived from one's own eyes.
3. To incur the ODIUM of doing odi-, *to hate*,  
this; the hatred it will provoke.
4. The ODOUR of flowers; their odor-, *odour*.  
*scent, perfume*.
5. OLEAGINOUS particles; oily ole-, *oil*.  
particles.
6. a) To AB-OL-ISH a custom; a) ol-e, ult-, *to grow, to wax*.  
to make it grow out of use.  
b) The OL-FACORY nerves; b) ol-e, *to smell*.  
the nerves that have to do with [These two roots appear to be  
the sense of *smelling*.] quite distinct in meaning.]

1. octo, *eight*. 2. oculus, *eye*. 3. odisse, *to hate*. odiosus, *hateful*.  
odium, *hatred*. 4. odor, *a scent*. 5. olea, *an olive tree*. 6. ab-olere,  
*to abolish*. olère, *to grow* (obsolete). olère, *to smell*.

*Key-words.**Latin Roots.*

7. A good OMEN; a favorable sign; a token that the thing will end well. omin-, omen.
  8. GOD is OMNI-SCIENT; knows every thing. omni-, all, every.
  9. To EXONERATE a man from a charge; to take its weight off from him; to disburden him of the accusation. oner-, weight, burden.
  10. To OPERATE upon my beard; to set to work upon it. a) oper-, work.  
b) opera-, operat-, to work.
  11. OPINION. a) opinion-, opinion.  
b) opina-, opinat-, to imagine; to be of opinion.
  12. It is quite OPTIONAL; it is left to a person's own choice. a) opta-, optat-, to wish.  
b) option-, choice.
1. Octagon (a figure consisting of eight sides and angles). Octagonal. Octangular (having eight angles). Octant (an eighth part of a circle). Octoedrical (having eight sides). Octopetalous (having eight petals or flower-leaves). Octostyle (the front of a building containing eight columns). Octuple (eight-fold). An octavo (a volume made of sheets folded in eight).
  2. Binocular (having two eyes). An oculist (one who cures diseases of the eye). To inoculate a tree (to insert the eye or bud of one plant into the stock of another). What is to inoculate a person? (To put a small portion of the matter of the small-pox into the veins). Inoculation, inoculator. Monocular (having one eye). Multocular (having many eyes).
  3. Odious (hateful). Odiousness, odiously.
  4. Odorous (scented). Odoriferous (scent-bearing). Inodorous (wanting scent).
  5. Oleaginousness.  
Hence (from oliva), olive, oil, &c.
  6. a) Abolition. An adult (one who is grown up). A word is ob-s-ol-ete (has grown out of use). b) To be red-ol-ent of (to have a smack of; to convey a pleasant notion of proceeding from some source).
  7. Ominous (exhibiting signs, mostly in a bad sense). Ominously. To pre-ominate (to gather from signs any future event). To abominate (to turn from as ill-omened; to hate). Abomination, abominable.
  8. [The compounds omni-scient, omni-potent, &c., will be found under their second roots.] "An omnibus" (a carriage for all).
  9. Exoneration (the act of disburdening). Onerary (belonging to a burden). To onerate (to burden). Oneration. Onerous (burdensome)

7. omen, ominis, *n.* a sign, an omen. 8. omnis, *all*. 9. onus, oneris, *n.* a weight, a burden. 10. opus, operis, *n.* work. 11. opinari, opinatus sum, to believe, to think. 12. optare, optavi, optatum, to desire, to choose.

10. An *operator* (one who does the work). An *operation*. *Operative* (having the power to work). To *co-operate* (to work together with). *Co-operation*, *co-operator*. *Inoperative* (that cannot work; inefficient).  
 11. In French, *œuvre* is the form taken by *oper-*. A *manœuvre* is a *handi-work*, a *trick of the hand*; a *cunning plan*.  
 12. To *opine* (to be of opinion). *Opinionative* (unduly attached to one's own opinion). *Opinionist* (one who is fond of his own opinion).  
 13. *Option* (choice). The *optative* (the form of the verb that expresses a wish). To *adopt* (to choose to oneself; to adopt a son, a plan, &c.). *Adoption*, *adopter*, *adoptive*.

## LESSON LXXII.

### Key-words.

### Latin Roots.

1. The **ORB** of day; the *globe* of the sun that causes it to be day.
  - a) *urb-, orbi-, circle; globe.*
  - b) *orbit-a, the circle in which a race, for instance, is to be run; the proper (circular) course.*
2. **ORDER**; regular disposition; method.
  - a) *ord-, ordin-, order; rank.*
3. a) An **ORAL** discourse; a discourse uttered by the mouth; a *spoken discourse*.
  - a) *or-, mouth.*
  - b) *ora-, orat-, to pray.*
- b) To **AD-ORE**; to *pray to*.
  - c) *oracul-, oracle.*
- c) An **ORACLE**; the mouth-piece of a prophet; a temple where prophecies were supposed to be delivered; and the *prophecy* itself.
  - a) *ordi-, ora-, to begin to weave.*
4. The **EX-ORD-IUM** of his speech was magnificent; its *beginning* or opening.
  - a) *ori-, ort-, to arise.*
  - b) *origin-, origin.*
5. The **ORIGIN** of it all; the *rising* or *springing up* of it all.
  - a) *orna-, ornat-, to adorn.*
6. To **ADORN** the person; to *deck* it out; to *ornament* it.
  - a) *oss-, ossi-, bone.*
7. To **OSSIFY**; to turn into *bone*.
  - a) *oti-, ease.*
  - b) *neg-oti-, not-ease; business; trouble.*
8. To **NEGOTIATE** (or **NEGOCIATE**) a peace; to carry through the *business* of a peace; said of the ambassador who makes, or tries to make, the treaty.
  - a) *ov-, egg.*
9. An **OVAL** leaf; an *egg-shaped* leaf.

1. *orbis, a circle; a globe.* 2. *ordo, ordinis, order.* 3. *os, oris, a mouth. orare, to pray.* 4. *ordiri (orsus sum), to begin to weave.* 5. *oriri (ortus sum), to rise. origo, originis, f. origin.* 6. *ornare, to adorn.* 7. *os, ossis, a bone.* 8. *otium, leisure, ease. negotium, business, labour.* 9. *ovum, an egg.*

## P.

## Key-words.

## Latin Roots.

10. TO PACIFY; to *make peace*; to *pac-, peace.*  
*quiet a person.*
11. The PALATE; the upper part *palat-, palate.*  
of the roof of the mouth; hence,  
the taste.
1. *Orbicular* (in the form of a circle or orb). *Orbicularly.* *Orbit* (a circular track). *Orbiculated* (moulded into an orb). *Disorbed* (thrown out of the proper orbit). *Exorbitant* (going out of the usual orbit; excessive). *Exorbitantly, exorbitance.*
2. *Orderly* (observant of method). *Orderliness.* To *disorder* (to put out of order). *Disorderly.* *Ordinary* (in accordance with established rule). *Ordinarily.* *Co-ordinate* (of the same order). *Inordinate* (not according to order; irregular). *Inordinately.* *Extraordinary* (beyond the common order). To *ordain* (to appoint according to order; often to confer 'holy orders'). *Ordination.* *Ordinal* (noting order). *Ordinance* (an observance ordered). To *pre-ordain* (to ordain beforehand). To *re-ordain* (to ordain again). *Subordinate* (of an inferior order).
3. *Orally.* *Oracular.* *Orator.* *Oration.* *Oratorical.* A *peroration* (the thorough praying for the favour one requires, &c., with which an orator winds up his speech; the end of an oration).  
An *or-i-fice* (a mouth made artificially; an opening). *Adorable, adoration.* *In-ex-orable* (who cannot be prevailed upon by prayer; who can't be prayed out of an intention).
4. *Prim-ordial* (existing from the beginning).
5. *Original, originally.* To *originate* (to cause to rise; to bring into existence). *Origination.* *Ortive* (relating to the rising of a star). *Abortive* (rising in an immature state; failing). *Abortion, abortively.* *Orient* (the part of the heavens where the sun rises). *Oriental* (belonging to those countries which lie towards the sun-rising, or east). An *orientalism* (an eastern mode of speech).
6. *Adornment* (the state of being decked). *Ornate, (bedecked).* *Ornately.* *Ornament* (decoration). *Ornamental.* To *re-adorn* (to deck again) To *suborn* (literally, to deck secretly; to bribe a witness and dress up his evidence). *Suborner, subornation.*
7. *Ossification.* An *ossuary* (a place where bones are kept). An *ossicle* (a small bone). *Ossifrage* (a bone-breaker; a bird so called).
8. A *negotiator.* Hence also *ease, dis-ease, &c.*
9. *Ovarious* (consisting of eggs). *Oviform* (having the form of an egg). *Oviparous* (bringing forth eggs).
10. *Pacification.* Hence *peace*, and all its compounds.
11. *Palatable* (agreeable to the taste). *Unpalatable.*

---

10. *pax, pācis, peace.* 11. *palatum, the arch or roof of the mouth.*

## LESSON LXXIII.

## Key-words.

## Latin Roots.

1. A PALE OF PALLID face; *pale.* a) *palle-, to be pale.*  
b) *pallid-, pale.*
  2. A PALE, PALING; a kind of fence. *pal-, a stake.*
  3. To PALLIATE a fault; to cloak it. *palli-, a cloak.*
  4. The PALM of the hand; the inner part of the hand. (2) The name of a tree. *palm-, hand; palm-, palm-tree.*
  5. A PALPABLE error; one perceptible by the touch. *palpa-, palpat-, to stroke.*
  6. To EXPAND its flowers; to open them out. *pand-, pans-, to open; to expand.*
  7. a) It is very COM-PACT'; very tightly driven together, pressed together, so as to fill a very small compass. a) *pang- } pact-, to strike (fast) in.*  
ping- }  
b) *pacisc-, pact-, to bargain, stipulate.*
  - b) A COM'-FACT; a bargain struck. [*pac- (pax-) belongs properly to this root.*]
  8. By PARITY of reasoning; by similarity of reasoning; by similar reasoning. *par-, alike; equal.*
  9. To PRE-PARE a thing; to procure it beforehand; to get it ready beforehand. *para-, parat-, to prepare; to make ready.*
  10. To APPEAR; to become visible. a) *pare -(obsolete) } to appear;*  
b) *ap-pare-, ap-parit- } to become visible.*
  11. A PARENT; one who brings forth; one who begets. *pari- } part-, to bring forth.*  
peri- }
  12. A PART; a portion less than the whole. a) *part-, part.*  
b) *parti-, partit-, to divide.*
1. *Paleness, pallidness, palely.*
  2. To *pale* (to enclose with pales). A *palisade* (pales set up by way of enclosure or defence). To *empale* (to fence with a pale; also to put a man to death by spitting him on a pale or stake).
  3. *Palliation, palliative.*
  4. (1) *Palmipede* (web-footed). *Palmistry* (action of the hand; for-

---

1. *pallère, to be pale.* *pallidus, pale.* 2. *palus, a stake.* 3. *palla, a long robe; pallium, a cloak.* 4. *palma, a palm.* 5. *palpare, palpavi, palpatum, to touch gently, to feel.* *palpitare, to pant, to throb.* 6. *pandere, pansi, pansum, to open.* 7. *pangere, pepigi, pactum, to fasten; to drive in.* 8. *par, even in number, a match in size.* 9. *parare, paravi, paratum, to prepare.* 10. *parère (obsolete).* *apparère, to appear.* 11. *parère, peperit, partum, to beget, to bring forth.* 12. *para, partis, a part.*

- tune-telling by the marks on the hand). *Palmated* (having the shape of a palm with the fingers spread). (2) *Palmiferous* (bearing palms). *Palmer* (one who carries a palm; a pilgrim). *Palmerworm*.
5. *Palpably, palpability. Impalpable* (that cannot be perceived by the touch). To *palpitate* (to keep striking; to beat or throb in a flurried, fluttering way). *Palpitation*.
6. *Expanse* (a space spread out). *Expansion* (the state of being spread out). *Expansive, expansible. To dispend* (to spread abroad). *Unexpanded*.
7. *Compactness. To impinge* (to strike violent against or into). *Impact*.
8. Their *imparity* of numbers (inequality). *Disparate* (dissimilar). A *disparity* of years (difference of age). To *disparage* (to make or represent a thing as below its real worth; not to consider it equal to its real value). *Disparagement*.
9. *Comparison* (a matching together). *Comparable* (that may be compared). *Comparably. Comparative* (estimated by comparison). *Comparatively. Incomparable* (that cannot be matched together). *Incomparably. Preparation, preparatory. Apparel* (things prepared, as clothing). *Apparatus* (things prepared, as furniture, equipage, &c.). To *repair* (to prepare anew). *Reparation, reparable, unprepared. To separate* (to prepare apart, to disjoin). *Separation, inseparable, separately. Imperative* (having the power of commanding [i. e. of preparing an order against a man]) belongs to this root. So to *repair, reparation, &c.*
10. *Appearance* (the act of becoming visible). To *disappear* (to be no longer visible). *Disappearance. Apparent* (visible). *Apparently. An apparition* (the appearing of something that is usually invisible). *Transparent* (visible through). *Transparency, transparently, untransparent*.
11. *Parentage, parental. Biparous* (bringing forth two at a birth). *Dorsiparous* (having the seed, or that which brings forth, on the back). *Gemelliparous* (bringing forth twins). *Multiparous* (bringing forth many). *Oviparous* (bringing forth eggs). *Puerperal* and *puerperous* (relating to the bringing forth of children). *Uniparous* (bringing forth one at a birth). *Vermiparous* (bringing forth worms). *Viviparous* (bringing forth the young alive, not in an egg). *Parturition* (the state of being about to bring forth). *Parturient*.
12. To *partake* (to take a part). *Partial* (of a part). *Partially. Partner* (one who holds a part; who has a share of a business). *Partizan* (one who takes a warm part). *Party* (an assemblage of persons, each being considered as a part of some whole body). *Particle* (a small part). *Particular* (relating to one part, or thing, as distinct from another). *Particularly, to particularize. Partition* (the act or instrument of making into parts). To *participate* (to bear a part; to share in). *Participation. Bipartite* (having two corresponding parts). *Bipartition. Compartment* (one of several parts, a division). *Copartner* (one who holds a part with others). *Copartnership. Counterpart* (the corresponding part). To *depart* (to part from). *Departure. Department* (place assigned to a separate and particular part). To *impart* (to give a part; to communicate). *Impartial* (not belonging to a part, disinterested). *Parcel* (a part or



portion of any thing). To *parse* (in grammar, to resolve a sentence into its parts or elements). *Portion* (a part or share). To *apportion* (to assign a part). *Apportionment*. *Proportion*.

## LESSON LXXIV.

*Key-words.**Latin Roots.*

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. The good <b>PASTOR</b> ; the good shepherd; one who feeds a flock.   | a) { pasc- } to feed.<br>b) { past- } to feed.  |
| 2. <b>PATERNAL</b> care; <i>fatherly</i> care.  | a) patr-, father.<br>b) patri-, country; father-land.   |
| 3. To act under the influence of <b>PASSION</b> ; from a violent feeling or emotion that we are <i>suffering</i> under.                     | patri-, pass-, to suffer.   |
| 4. A <b>PAUCITY</b> of followers; a <i>fewness</i> ; but a small number.  | pauc-, few.   |
| 5. A <b>PAUPER</b> ; a very <i>poor</i> person; one who is supported by alms.   | pauper-, poor.  |
| 6. The <b>PECCANT</b> humours of the body; the humours that <i>sin</i> against the health; faulty or vicious humours.                       | pecca-, peccat-, to sin.  |
| 7. <b>PECTORAL</b> lozenges; lozenges good for the <i>chest</i> .   | pector-, breast.  |
| 8. a) His <b>PECULIAR</b> care; <i>his own proper</i> care.<br>b) <b>PECUNIARY</b> difficulties; differences with respect to <i>money</i> . | peculi-, private allowance.<br>pecuni-, money.<br>[Both these roots are connected with pecu-, cattle; because the old Roman coins had a sheep on them.] |
| 9. A <b>PEDESTRIAN</b> ; one who travels on <i>foot</i> .   | ped-, foot.   |
| 10. <b>APPELLATION</b> ; a <i>naming</i> ; a calling by name.   | appella-, appellat-, to call (pella-, pellat-, obsolete. Hence the English -peal).  |
| 11. To <b>COMPEL</b> a person; to <i>drive</i> him to do it.  | pell-, puls-, to drive.   |

1. pascere, pavi, pastum, to feed. 2. pater, patris, a father. 3. pati, passus sum, to suffer. 4. paucus (mostly pl., pauci), a few. 5. pauper, poor. 6. peccare, peccatum, to sin. 7. pectus, pectoris, the breast. 8. pecus (-oris), cattle; peculium, private allowance. pecunia, money. 9. pes, pedis, a foot. 10. appellare (pellare not in use), to call, to name. 11. pellere, pepuli, pulsum, to drive.

## Key-words.

## Latin Roots.

12. a, b) To APPEND a note; to hang a note on to it. a) pendē- (intrans.) } to hang.  
 b) pend- (trans.) }  
 c) To COMPENSATE; to weigh one thing with another, and so set one against the other. c) pensa-, pensat-, to weigh.  
 d, e) A PONDER-ous battle-axe; a weighty, heavy battle-axe. d) ponder-, weight.  
 e) pondera-, ponderat-, to weigh.
1. *Pastoral* (belonging to a shepherd's office). *Pasture* (the act of feeding; the ground on which flocks are fed). To *depasture* (to consume by feeding on). *Depascent* (feeding greedily). *Repast* (a feeding). An *antepast* (a foretaste).
2. *Patriarch* (the father and ruler of a family). *Patriarchal*. *Patriarchate* (office of a father and governor). *Patrimony* (estate received from a father). *Patrimonial*. *Patrician* (properly, belonging to the Roman fathers, members of the senate; noble). A *patron* (one who acts the father or protector; the holder of some right of appointment). To *patronize*. A *patriot* (one who is a lover of his country). *Patriotic*, *patriotism*. To *expatriate* (to drive from one's father-land; to exile). *Expatriation*. *Parricide* is for *patri-cide* (one who slays a father).
3. *Passive* (suffering, enduring). *Passionate* (filled with feeling or emotion). *Compassion* (a feeling or suffering with another). *Compassionate*. *Dispassion* (freedom from agitation caused by feeling). *Dispassionate*, *dispassionately*. To *empassion* (to excite through the feelings). *Impassible* (incapable of suffering). *Impassively*. *Impassioned* (disordered by passion, by the feelings). *Patient* (suffering evils without murmuring). *Patiently*. *Patience* (the power of suffering evils with resignation). *Impatient* (unwilling to suffer). *Impatience*.
5. *Pauperism* (the state of being poor). To *depauperate* (to make poor). To *empoverish* (to make poor). *Empoverishment*. *Poverty* (condition of being poor).
6. *Peccable* (liable to sin). *Impeccable* (that is not liable to sin). *Impeccability*. *Peccancy* (habit of sinning). *Peccability* (state of being liable to sin).
7. To *expectorate* (to bring up from the breast, chest, or throat). *Expectoration*. A *parapet* (a wall breast-high, for *para-pect*(?) or more probably from *pet*, root of the Greek *pipto*, I fall: = a wall to prevent a person from falling over).
9. *Pedestrians* (moving with feet and not with wings). *Pedal* (belonging to the foot, moved with the foot). *Pedicle* (in botany; a foot-stalk). A *pedestal* (the foot or base of a column or statue). A *pedometer* (an instrument for measuring one's foot-steps; i. e. the distance one has walked). *Biped* (having two feet). *Bipedal*. *Quadruped* (that which has four feet). *Centipede* (that which has a

---


12. pendēre, pependi, pensum, to hang (trans.). pendēre (intrans.).

hundred feet). To *expedite* (to disentangle the feet, to hasten). *Expeditions, expedition. Expedient* (having the feet extricated, convenient). *Expedience, expediently*. To *impede* (to entangle the feet: hence to hinder progress). *Impediment. Multiped* (having many feet). *Peduncle* (in botany, the stem that supports the fructification of a plant). *Pediment*.

10. *Appellative* (pertaining to a name). To *appeal*. To *repeal* (to recall, to abrogate). *Repealable, unrepealed*.

11. *Compulsion* (the act of driving together, or compelling). *Compulsive, compulsory*. To *dispel* (to drive apart). *Depulsion* (a driving away). To *expel* (to drive out). *Expulsion* (the act of driving out). To *impel* (to drive onward, or upon). *Impulse* (the driving power). *Impulsion* (the act of driving onward). *Impulsive*. To *propel* (to drive forward). *Propulsion*. To *repel* (to drive back). *Repulse* (the condition of being driven back). *Repulsive, repulsion. Pulse* (perceptible motion of an artery, by the blood being driven through it). *Pulsation*.

12. a, b) *Appendage* (something hung to another). *Appendent* (hanging to). *Pendent* (hanging). *Appendix* (something appended, hung to). To *appendicate* (to add or hang to another thing). *Appendication. Pendulous* (hanging). A *pendulum* (the hanging part of a clock). *Pendulosity*. To *depend* (to hang down). *Dependence* (the state of hanging down from a supporter). *Dependent* (hanging down). *Equipendency* (the act of hanging in equipoise). To *inspend* (to hang over). *Impendent. Perpendicular* (hanging at a right angle to something else). To *propend* (to hang towards or incline). *Propense* (hanging forward). *Propension. Propensity* (a hanging forward of the mind; an inclination). To *suspend* (to hang up). *Suspension. Suspense* (hanging on in uncertainty). *Expenditure* (the sum weighed out; the sum spent). *Expensive*. c) To *compensate* (to weigh one thing with another; to weigh out an equivalent). *Compensation, compendium, compendious*. To *dispense* (to weigh out or distribute). *Dispensation. A dispensary* (a place where medicine is weighed out, or distributed). To *dispend* (to spend or consume). *Pension* (allowance weighed out). *Pensioner. To recompense* (to pay back). d, e) *Ponderosity* (weightiness). To *ponderate* (to stand before another in point of weight; to outweigh).

 *Poise, equipoise, and equilibrium, also come from this root.*

## LESSON LXXV.

### Key-words.

### Latin Roots.

1. A PENINSULA; almost an pene-, almost (adverb). island.

2. To PENETRATE; to enter into. penetra-, penetrat-, to penetrate; get into.

---

1. pene, almost. 2. penetrare (= penitus intrare, to enter thoroughly in), to penetrate.

*Key-words.**Latin Roots.*

3. To REPEND; to be sorry for the past, and resolve to amend. pœnitē- to be grieved for; to repent.
4. These leaves are PENNATED; are winged. penna-, wing.
5. He is an EXPERT workman; a well-practised, experienced, and so skilful workman. per-i-, pert- (obsolete), to try.
6. A PEST, a *plague*; an annoyance. pest-, a *pest*; a *plague*.
7. A PETITION to the king; a begging supplication. pet- }  
petit- } to ask.
8. To PILFER; to steal. {pila- }  
pilat- } to rob; to plunder (obs.).
9. A DEPILATORY wash; a wash that it is pretended will remove the hair from the head or face. pil-, hair.
10. The "PICTORIAL Times;" a newspaper so called, which is illustrated with *pict-ures*. pig-, ping- }  
pict- } to paint.
11. A PINNACLE; a turret, when a row of them is arranged like the feathers of a wing. pinn- (wing), feather.
12. A PIOUS man; a religious, devout man. pi-, dutiful; pious.
1. *Peninsulated* (almost surrounded by water). *Penultimate* (almost the last; last but one). *Antepenultimate*.
2. *Penetration, penetrative, impenetrable*.
3. *Repentance* (the act of repenting). *Penitence* (a repenting). *Penitent* (repenting). *Penitential* (expressing repentance). *Penitentiary* (a place where opportunity is given to repent). *Penal* (pertaining to punishment). *Penalty* (punishment). *Penance* (punishment enjoined).
4. *Bipennate* (having two wings). *Impennous* (wanting wings). *Pen-niform* (in the form of a wing or a feather; a pen).
5. *Expertly, expertness. Experiment* (trial of any thing). *Experimental. Experience* (frequent trial). *Peril*.
6. A *pestilence* (a continuing pest). *Pestilential, pestilent*. To *pester* (to plague or tease). *Pestiferous* (bringing a pest). To *feaster* (to rankle like the pest; like a plague-spot).
7. A *petitioner* (one who asks as a suppliant). *Appetite* (an involuntary asking dictated by nature). *Centripetal* (seeking for, having a tendency to the centre). To *compete* (to seek with an-

---

3. pœna, punishment. pœnitet, it repenteth (me). 4. penna, a wing or feather. 5. periri (obs.), to try (πειράω). 6. pestis, a pest; mischief. 7. petere, petivi, petitum, to ask; to beg. 8. pilare, to pillage. 9. pilus, the hair of the head. 10. pingere, pinxi, pictum, to paint. 11. pinna, a (strong) feather. 12. pius, pious. piare, to seek to appease; to expiate.

other with a view to your own success and his defeat). *Competition*, *competitor*. *Competence* (that which has been sought for and deemed sufficient). *Impetus* (violent seeking, or tendency to, any point). *Impetuous* (seeking with violence). *Impetuousness*. *Appetence* (*desire of*). To *repeat* (to ask again). *Repeated*, *repetition*. *Perpetual* (originally meant what goes seeking its object quite through; hence what goes continually on).

8. *Pilferer*. *Pillage* (the act of stealing). To *compile* (originally, to put stolen things together; to heap together). To *compile* a book (to make up a book by taking the matter from different authors). *A compilation*.
9. *Depilatory* (an application for removing the hair). *Depilation*. *Pilose* (hairy). *Pilosity*. A *pillow* (resting-place for the hair; the head; or a case stuffed with hair).
10. A *picture* (a painting or representation of something visible). *Picturesque* (painting-like). *Pigment* (paint). To *depict* (to paint a scene by an animated lively description).
12. *Impious* (not pious; wicked). *Impiously*. *Piety* (the being pious). A *pietist* (one who professes great piety).<sup>\*</sup> *Pietism*. *Impiety* (the reverse of piety; wickedness). To *expiate a sin* (to make a person holy from or after his sin, by atoning for it; to remove the guilt of a sin). *Expiation*, *expiatory*.

## LESSON LXXVI.

### Key-words.

### Latin Roots.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. What is the English name for the sign of the Zodiac called PISCES? The <i>Fishes</i> . | <i>pisc-</i> , <i>fish</i> .<br><i>pisca-</i> , <i>piscat-</i> , to <i>fish</i> .  |
| 2. To PLEASE comes from the Latin <i>placere</i> .  | <i>place-</i> } to <i>please</i> .<br><i>placit-</i> }   |
| 3. He is of a PLACABLE disposition; of a disposition that may easily be appeased.         | <i>plac-a-</i> } to <i>appease</i> .<br><i>plac-at-</i> }  |
| 4. What is a PLAINT? A lamentation.   | [From the same root as the last.]<br><i>plang-</i> } to <i>strike</i> (the breast); to<br><i>planct-</i> } <i>lament</i> . |
| 5. To EXPLAIN a difficulty; to make it smooth, plain, level to the understanding.         | <i>plan-</i> , <i>level</i> .  |
| 6. A PLANT.   | <i>plant-</i> , properly, a shoot for setting or planting; then <i>plant</i> ; and also the sole of the foot.              |

---

1. *piscis*, a *fish*. 2. *placere*, *placitum*, to *please*. 3. *placare*, *placatum*, to *appease*. 4. *plangere*, *planxi*, *plantum*, to *strike*; to *lament*. 5. *planus*, *plain*, *level*. 6. *planta*, a *set* or *slip*; the sole of the foot.

## Key-words.

## Latin Roots.

7. To APPLAUD; to make a sound of approbation by clapping the hands.  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{plaud-} \\ \text{plod-} \\ \text{plaus-} \\ \text{plos-} \end{array} \right\}$  to clap; to make a clapping sound.
8. To COMPLETE; to fulfil; to make up the full measure or number of any thing. a)  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{-ple-} \\ \text{-plet-} \end{array} \right\}$  to fill.  
b) plen-, full.
9. An EX-PLIC-ATION of hard texts; an un-fold-ing of their meaning; an explanation of them. a)  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{plica-} \\ \text{plicat-} \end{array} \right\}$  to fold.  
b)  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{plect-} \\ \text{plex-} \end{array} \right\}$  to twist together; to plait; to interweave.
10. To DEPLORE an event; to lament it. plora- } to deplore.  
plorat- }
11. A PLUME of feathers; one or more feathers. plum-, feather.
12. A PLUMBER and glazier; a worker in lead and glass. plumb-, lead.
1. *Piscatorial* (relating to the art of fishing).  
2. *Placid* (allowing oneself to be pleased: hence calm, gentle, mild). *Placidly*, *placidness*. *Complacence* (sensation of being pleased). *Complacent*. *Complaisant* [through the French *plaisir*], *complaisantly*. *Complaisance* (desire of pleasing).  
3. *Placability*, *implacable*, *implacability*.  
4. *Planet* is in English *plaint*; and hence to *plain* (= to wail), &c. *Complaint*. A *plaintive* cry. *Plaintiveness*. A *complainant* (one that complains or laments).  
5. *Explanation*, *explainable*. A *plane* (a tool for making plain or level). A *plane surface* (a plain or level surface). An *esplanade* (a plain or level walk).  
6. To *supplant* (to trip up a man's heels; hence to get oneself by stratagem into the place now occupied by another). *Supplanter*, *supplantation*.  
7. *Applause* (the act of clapping the hands). *Applausive*. *Plausible* (likely to be applauded; fair-seeming; taking; superficial). *Implausible*, *plausibility*. To *explode* (to burst with a clap). *Explosion*, *explosive*.  
8. *Completeness*. *Completion* (fulfilment). *Complement* (full quantity). *Depletion* (the act of emptying, mostly of emptying the veins by bleeding, and so on). An *expletive* (a little word used for filling out one's discourse). *Implement* (something that fills up or supplies a want. An instrument). *Replete* (filled). *Repletion*. *Supplement* (a filling up of what was wanting). *Supplemental*. To *supply* (to fill up). *Plenary* (full). *Plenariness*. *Plenipotent* (invested with full power). *Plenipotentiary*, *plenipotence*. *Plenitude* (fulness). *Plenty* (the quality of being full). *Plentiful*, *plenteousness*, *plentifully*. To *replenish* (to fill again). *Accomplish* [through the French *ac-*

---

7. *plaudere* (plausi, plausum), to clap. 8. *-plēre* (obsol.), to fill, complete, &c. 9. *plicare*, to fold. 10. *plorare*, *ploravi*, *ploratum*, to wail, to cry out, to lament. 11. *pluma*, a feather. 12. *plumbum*, lead.

*complir*]. From the related Greek word *plē-ōn*, *plē-ōn*, *more*, comes *Pleonasm* (the having *more* words than are necessary). *Pleonastic*.

9. *Duplication* (doubling). *Duplicity* (*double-dealing*; *deceit*). *Complex* (woven intricately together, of many parts or folds, far from *simple*). *Complexity*. The *complexion* (properly, the *folding round* of one thing *with* another; but used of the *whole combination* of the small *interlacing blood-vessels* that form the *tint* of the skin: a person's *colour*, *tint*). To *complicate* (to fold up or *entangle* one thing with another). *Complicated*, *complication*. To *explicate* (to unfold). *Explicative*. *Explicit* (clearly unfolded: hence of *plain*, *clear* statements). *Explicitly*. To be *implicated* in a crime (to be mixed up with it). *Implicit* (infolded. *Implicit*, opposed to *explicit*, is used of principles, and so on, that are *implied* or *virtually* involved in a proof, passage, &c., though not *explicitly* stated). To *imply* (to involve a notion, to convey it as something taken for granted). *Implicitly* (by implication). "To obey *implicitly*" is often used for to obey *absolutely*, *unconditionally*: but this is a *doubtful* use of the word. "*Implicit* obedience" ought to be the obedience which we do not profess to pay, but which is *implied* by our actions. *Multiplication*. To *perplex* (to fold up *thoroughly*, to *entangle*, to *puzzle*). *Perplexity*, *perplexedness*. To *quadruplicate* (to make four-fold). *Simplicity* (= *sine-plic-ity*, *without folding*; singleness; plainness). To *supplicate* (to entreat with bended, *i.e.* folded knee). *Supplication*. *TriPLICATE* (in three folds). *TriPLICITY*. An *applicant* (one who *folds* himself, as it were, to another, *sticks close* to him, and tries to *get round* him, and so obtain his request). Hence to *ap-ply*. *Applicable* (folding to: hence such as can be *suit*ed or *adapt*ed to). *Application*, *applicative*. *Accomplice* (one who is folded up, *i.e.* involved with another in a crime). A *sur-plice*, for *super-plice* (a gown hanging in *folds over* a clergyman).
10. *Deplorable*, *deplorable*ness. To *implore* (to call or address with lamentation). To *explore*.
11. A bird's *plumage* (its feathers). *Plumose* (full of feathers). To *plume* oneself on a thing (to think it a *feather* in one's cap; to *pride* oneself on it). To *deplume* (to strip of feathers).
12. *Plumbiferous* (lead-producing). *Plummet* (a leaden weight). *Plumb-ous* (leaden). *Plumbery* (working in lead).

## LESSON LXXVII.

### Key-words.

### Latin Roots.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. The PLURAL number; the form of a word that denotes <i>more than one</i> . | plur-, <i>more</i> .                   |
| 2. A POET; a maker of verses.  | poet-, a <i>poet</i> .                 |
| 3. A POLITE person; a person of <i>polished</i> manners.                     | poli- } to <i>polish</i> .<br>polit- } |

1. plus (*neut.*), pluris, *more*. 2. poëta, a *poet*. 3. polire, to *polish*.

## Key-words.


## Latin Roots.

4. POLLEN; meal. pollin-, meal.  
 5. EQUI-POLLENT; having equal force or power. polle-, to have power; to avail.  
 6. A POME-GRANATE; the name of a fruit. pom-, apple.  
 7. A man's POSITION in life; the state of life in which he is placed. pon- }  
 posit- } to place.  
 8. The sovereign PONTIFF; the Pope, who considers himself as the head of all *priests* and *bishops*, and is also a sovereign prince. pontific-, a *pontiff* [pont-, bridge: fic- (fac-), to make].  
 9. POPULAR applause; the applause of the *people*. a) popul-, *people*.  
 b) public- (or populic-, poplic-), *public*.  
 10. PORK; the flesh of the *hog*. porc-, *pig*; *hog*.  
 11. To EXPORT provisions; to carry them out of the country. porta-, portat-, to carry.  
 12. The PORTE; the court of Constantinople; the government of the sultan: because the seat of judgement is (as it usually was in the East in old times) by the *gate* of the city. a) port-, *gate*.  
 b) port-u-, a *port*; a *harbour*.

1. *Plurality* (state of being more than one). A *pluralist* (one who holds more benefices than one). *Surplus* and *overplus* (that which is more than the required or allotted quantity).

2. *Poetic*, *poetical*, *poetry*, *poesy*.

3. *Polished*, *unpolished*.

 To *inter-pol-ate* is also connected with the root *pol*. Properly it means to *polish up*, by introducing new portions between the old: then to introduce *false deceptive* additions; principally to introduce *spurious passages* in a written work.

6. A *pomegranate* (a *grained apple*; the name of a fruit). The *pommel* of a saddle, so called from its being an *apple-like knob* or swelling.

7. *Positive* (laid down. "A *positive law*" is a duty which was no duty before the law commanded it: it is opposed to what is *morally* and *essentially* right, and therefore *always binding on the conscience*. "A *positive assertion*" is an assertion strongly laid down. "A *positive man*," a man who lays down the law; who stands to a thing without hesitation, and looks upon all men as bound to believe

---

4. pollen, pollinis, *fine flour*; meal. 5. pollere, to have power. 6. pomum, an apple; fruit. 7. ponere, posui, positum, to lay down; to place. 8. pontifex, pontificis, *high priest*; *pontiff*. 9. populus, *people*. publicus, *belonging to the people*. 10. porcus, *pig*; *hog*. 11. portare, portatum, to carry; to bear. 12. porta, a gate; portus, us, a harbour; a port.



him). *Positively*. *Positiveness*. *Apposite* (placed to; hence, *fitly placed*; appropriate; of remarks, &c.). *Apposition* (the placing of two nouns together, e.g. *King Edward*). *Appositely*. *Circumposition* (the act of placing any thing in a circle). *To compose* (to place together). *Composite* (compounded; not simple). *Composition*. A *composer* (one who *places the types together* in order, in printing). *Composure* (the having the emotions of the mind *placed together*, and therefore *at rest*; calmness). *Composed* (not *tost about*; resigned, calm). *To decompose* (to disturb what has been *placed together*). *Decomposition*. *To depose* a king (to *place him down*; to put him out of his throne). A witness *deposes* so and so (*places down*, puts down such and such facts). *Deposition*. A *deposit* (any thing placed in the hands of any one). A *depository* (the keeper of deposits). *Depository* (the place for deposits). *To dispose of* (to place it elsewhere; to part with it). *Disposition*, *disposal*, *disposer*. *To expose* (to place out, for instance, goods for sale). *To expose oneself* (to lay open one's folly). *Exposure*. *Exposition* (a laying open). An *expositor* (one who *exposes* goods; or *expounds* [= explains] an author). *To impose* (to place upon; hence, to put upon; to deceive). An *imposition* (a putting upon; a cheating). An *impostor* (one who puts upon; a cheat). *Imposture*. *To interpose* (to place between). *Interposition*. *Juxtaposition* (a placing close by). *To oppose* (to place in front of). *Opposition*; *opposite*, *opponent*. *To postpone* (to put off). *Postponement*. A *preposition* (a particle *placed before* a word, which it governs). *To propose* (to put forward for consideration). *Proposition*. A *purpose* (a putting forth; intention). *Purposely*. *To repose* (to place again; to lay back; also, intrans. to rest). *Repository* (a place where things may be laid up). *To suppose* (to lay down without proof). *Supposition*. *Supposititious* (put by trick in the place assigned to another; not genuine). *To transpose* (to put each in the place of the other). *Transposition*.

8. A person's *pontificate* (the time of his being pontiff). *Pontifical*.

9. *Populous* (full of people). *Populace* (the common people). *Population* (the whole of the people; the act of peopling). *Popularity* (state of being favoured by the people). *To depopulate* (to remove the people out of a country). *Depopulation*. *Unpopular* (disliked by the people). *Unpopularity*. *Public* (belonging to all the people). *Publicly*, *publicity*. A *publican* (one who keeps a public house). What were the Roman *publicans*? (the farmers of the public taxes). *To publish* (to make known to the people). *Publisher*, *publication*. A *republic* (a form of government in which the public, by itself or its representatives, manages its own affairs; a commonwealth). *To republish* (to make public again).

10. *Porket* (a young hog). *Porpoise* (a sea-hog). *Porcupine* (a spiked or bristly hog).

11. *Exportation*. *To import* (to carry in). *Importation*, *importer*. *Important* (bearing upon; weighty). *Importance*. *Purport* (a bearing forth). *To report* (to carry back). *Reporter*. *To support* (to bear up something from beneath it). *Supportable*. *To transport* (to carry beyond or across). A *port* (a bay into which ships are borne and

- goods are carried). A *porter* (one who carries). *Portable* (that can be carried). *Portly* (of noble carriage; of bulky carriage). *Portliness*. To *comport* (to bear with). *Comportable*, *comportment*.
12. *Importunate* (properly, not offering a harbour; then *inconvenient*, *unseasonable*; used of *troublesome*, *often repeated requests*). *Importunately*. To *importune* (to trouble with repeated asking). *Importunity*. *Opportune*. *Opportunity*. *Portal*.

## LESSON LXXVIII.

## Key-words.

## Latin Roots.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. A PORTICO.   | portic-, portico.                                  |
| 2. a) A POSTILION; a rider who rides or drives hired horses to a place and back.      | a) post-, after.                                   |
| b) OUR POSTERITY; those who come after us; future generations of men.                 | b) poster-, after (as adj.).                       |
| 3. A POSTULATE; a thing to which assent is demanded without proof.                    | postula- } to demand.<br>postulat- }               |
| 4. POTATION; the act of drinking.   | pot-, potat-, to drink.                            |
| 5. POTENT; powerful; literally, being able.   | pot-, posse-, to be able.                          |
| 6. DE-PRAVITY; crookedness of mind; moral perversion.                                 | prav-, faulty; depraved.                           |
| 7. To DEPRECIATE; to undervalue; to run down the price at which a thing is estimated. | preci- } price.<br>preti- }                        |
| 8. To DEPRECATE; to pray against.   | a) prece-, prayer.<br>b) prece-, precat-, to pray. |
| 9. A PREDATORY warfare; warfare carried on for plunder, booty.                        | præd-, prey; booty.                                |
| 10. To APPREHEND a thief; to take him; to arrest him.                                 | prehend- } to lay or take hold of.<br>prehens- }   |
| 11. To PRESS.   | prem- }<br>press- } to press.<br>prim- }           |

1. porticus, tis, a portico. 2. post, after. 3. postulare, to demand; from poscere, poposci, to ask for. 4. potare, potatum, to drink. 5. potis, able; posse, to be able. 6. pravus, crooked; wicked. 7. pretium, price, reward, value. 8. [prex, precis], an entreaty; a prayer: pl. preces. precari (precatus sum), to pray; to entreat. 9. præda, a prey; booty. 10. prehendere, prehendi, prehensum, to take; to apprehend. 11. premere, pressi, pressum, to press.

2. *Preposterous* (putting that *before* which should be *after*). *Preposterously*. The *postern* (the back gate of a city; a small gate).
3. To *expostulate* with a person (to *demand* a person *out* of his conduct; to demand that he should give it up; to *remonstrate* with). *Expostulation*.
4. *Potable* (that may be drunk). *Potion* (a draught). *Computation* (a drinking with). A *compotator* (one who drinks with another).
5. *Potency*, *potently*. *Impotent* (wanting power). *Impotency*. *Omnipotent* (having all power). *Omnipotence*. A *potentate* (one who possesses power). *Potential* (having the power to become so; being so in *possibility*, though not *actually*). *Potentially*, *potentiality*.
6. To *deprave* (to pervert the mind).
7. *Depreciation*. *Precious* (of great value). *Preciousness*, *preciously*. To *appreciate* (to set a [due] value upon). *Appreciation*, *unappreciated*. Hence to *ap-praise* (to set a value on): *prize*, &c.
8. *Deprecation*, *deprecator*, *deprecatory*. To *imprecate* (to pray against any body; to pray for evil upon him). *Imprecation*, *imprecatory*. *Precarious* (depending on prayer, on the *will* therefore of others; doubtful, uncertain). *Precariously*. Hence *pray*, *preach*, &c.
9. *Depredation*, *depredator*, *depredatory*.
10. *Apprehension* (the act of *apprehending*). A *quick apprehension* (the power of catching a notion quickly). *Apprehensive*, *apprehender*, *apprehensible*. To *comprehend* (to take in; to take together with). *Comprehension*. *Comprehensiveness* (taking in much in a small space). *Comprehensive*. To *reprehend* (to take hold of again; to blame). *Reprehension*, *reprehensible*. *Apprentice* (one who takes hold of, or learns, a business). To this root belong *prison*, &c., and to *apprise*, *reprisal*, &c., all through the French *prendre*, *pris*.
11. To *compress* (to press together). *Compression*, *compressible*, *compressure*. To *depress* (to press down). *Depression*. To *express* (to press or squeeze out). *Expressive*, *expression*, *expressiveness*. To *impress* (to press upon). *Impression*, *impressive*. To *oppress* (to overpress; to subdue). *Oppression*, *oppressive*, *oppressor*. To *repress* (to press back). *Repression*, *repressive*. *Unpressed* (not pressed). A *pressman* (one who presses men, or enrolls them for the navy; also, in printing, one who *presses*, i.e. prints off, the sheets). A *pressgang* (a body of pressmen).

## LESSON LXXIX.

### Key-words.

### Latin Roots.

1. PRIME cattle; cattle of the }  
*first* quality. } a) *prim-*, *first*.  
 The PRINCIPAL point; the } b) *princip-*, *chief*.  
*chief* point.

- 
1. *primus*, *first*. *princeps*, *principis*, *first*, *chief*.

## Key-words.

## Latin Roots.

2. **PRIOR** to this; before this. prior-, former.  
 3. **PRIVATE**; belonging to one's own. a) priv-, single, peculiar.  
 4. a) A man of **PROBITY**; a man of integrity, honesty. b) privat-, private.  
 b) **APPROBATION**; approval. a) prob-, as it should be; upright; honest.  
 b) proba- { to prove; to try whether a thing is as it should be.  
 probat- {  
 5. **PRONE** to vice; inclined to vice; running headlong into vice. pron-, leaning forward; inclined to.  
 6. **OPPROBRIOUS** epithets; disgraceful, contumelious epithets. probr-, a disgrace; a term of reproach.  
 7. **PROPINQUITY**; nearness. } a) propinqu-, near.  
 The **AP-PROXIMATE** value; the value that comes nearest to the true one. } b) proxim-, nearest.  
 8. Every thing looks **PROFITIOUS**; every thing looks favorable. propiti-, favorably inclined; favorable; gracious.  
 9. To **APPROPRIATE** any thing; to make it one's own. propri-, own; peculiar.  
 10. To **PROSPER**; to be successful. prosper-, prosperous.  
 11. A **PRURIENT** desire; an itching (hence a longing) desire. pruri-, prurit-, to feel an itching desire.  
 12. An **IMPUDENT** person; a shameless person; bold, immodest. pude-, pudit-, to feel shame; to be ashamed.
1. **Primeness** (the state of being first). *Primely*. To *prime* (to begin; to lay the first powder in shooting; to lay on the first colour for the ground in painting). *Primeval* (belonging to the first age: ævum, age). *Premier* (the prime minister). *Primate* (the first minister of the Church; the archbishop). *Primacy* (the office of primate). *Primitive* (of the first times). *Primitiveness*. *Primogeniture* (state or privilege of being first-born [gen-, gign-, to beget]). *Primordial* (existing from the beginning; original: ordiri, to begin). *Primrose* (first rose). *Principle* (firstness; element). *Principal* (of first rate). *Principally*. *Prince* (the first or highest person). *Principality* (the condition, authority, or country of a prince). *Princely*, *princelike*. *Pristine* (first, antient).  
 2. **Priority** in point of time (*antecedence* in point of time).

---

2. pris (not in use), prior, former. 3. privus, particular; peculiar; one's own. 4. probus, upright; honest. 5. pronus, headlong. 6. probrum, a disgraceful act; a term of reproach. 7. prope, near to. propior, nearer. proximus, nearest. 8. propitius, favorably disposed. Related to root pet-. Greek, προ-περ-ης. 9. proprius, peculiar; own. 10. prosper, lucky. 11. prurire, pruritus, to itch. 12. pudet, puduit, it shameth.

3. *Privacy* (state of being by oneself; of living in *private*). To *deprive* (to take away what belongs to a man). *Deprivation*. *Privilege* (literally, a private law). *Privileged*.
4. Our time of *probation* (our time of trial). *Re-probate* (rejected on trial; condemned; wicked). *Im-probity* (wickedness). A *probationary* fellow (a fellow who is on trial, as it were, and will lose his fellowship if his conduct should not be approved).
- Hence comes the English termination *-prove*. To *approve*, &c.
5. *Proneness* to any thing (inclination to it; readiness to yield to it).
6. *Opprobriously*, *opprobriousness*. To *exprobrate* (to charge upon with reproach; to upbraid). *Exprobration*.
7. To *approximate* to (to come near to). *Approximation*. *Proximity* (closeness to). *Proximate* (near or next to).
- Hence, English words in *-proach*. To *approach*, &c.
8. To *propitiate* (to make favorable). *Propitiation*, *unpropitious*.
9. *Appropriation*, *appropriator*. To *expropriate* (to make no longer one's own). *Expropriation*. To *impropriate* (to convert property into private property). A *lay impropriator* (a layman who owns impropriated tithes or church lands). *impropriation*. *Proprietor* (owner). *Proprietary*. *Propriety* (the state of properly belonging to; hence, *fitness*, *decorum*, &c.). *Proper* (belonging to oneself). *Properly*, *properly*. *Improper* (not belonging to oneself). *Improperly*.
10. *Prosperous*, *prosperity*. *Unprosperous* (unsuccessful). *Unprosperousness*. *Improsperous* (unsuccessful).
11. *Prurience* (an itching; hence, a longing desire for).
12. *Impudence* (want of modesty). *Impudently*. To *repudiate* (to put away as a thing one is ashamed of).

## LESSON LXXX.

### Key-words.

### Latin Roots.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. Such conduct is <b>PUERILE</b> ; suits a boy; is almost childish.     | puer-, boy.  |
| 2. A <b>PUGNACIOUS</b> person; given to fight stoutly.                   | a) pugn-, fist.<br>b) pugn-, battle.                         |
| 3. To <b>PULVERIZE</b> chalk; to reduce it to powder.                    | pulver-, dust.   |
| 4. To <b>PUNCH</b> a hole; to prick a hole; to make a hole with a point. | pung-, punct-, to prick; to puncture.                        |
| 5. A <b>PUPPY</b> ; a young dog.   | pup-, a young maiden; doll.                                  |
| 6. The <b>PURE</b> air; air unmixed with any alien matter.               | a) pur-, pure.<br>b) purga-, purgat-, to cleanse; to purify. |

1. puer, pueri, a boy. 2. pugnus, a fist. pugna, battle. 3. pulvis, pulveris, dust. 4. pungere, pupugi, punctum, to prick. 5. pupa, a young child. 6. purus, pure.

**Key-words.**

**Latin Roots.**

7. A COM-PUTAT-ION; a calculation; a reckoning.  
8. PUTRID flesh; *corrupt*; rotten.
- puta, putat- (1) to reckon; (2) to think.  
a) putē, to become corrupt.  
b) putr-, putrid.  
c) pūr-, corrupt matter.

**Q.**

9. Give me a **QUARTER** of it ; quatuor-, four.  
the fourth part of it.
10. A **QUADRANT** (the fourth part; the fourth part of a circle). quart-, quadr-, fourth.
11. a) I will **EN-QUIRE** into it ; quær-, quæsit- } to seek ; to in-  
I will ask about it ; investi- quîr-, quisit- } quire.  
gate it. (In English quest-.)
- b) The **INQUISITION** ; the tribunal which *inquires* into offences against religion, in Roman Catholic countries.
12. It is of good **QUALITY** ; of qual-, such.  
good kind.
1. **Puerility**. *Puerperal* (relating to child-birth).
2. **Pugnacity** (inclination to attack). To *impugn* (to attack by argument). *Impugner*. To *expugn* (to fight out ; to overcome). *Expugnable*. To *oppugn* (to attack). *Oppugner*, *oppugnancy*, *repugnant*.
3. **Pulverization**, *pulverable*. *Pulverulence* (powderiness, dustiness). *Pulvil* (sweet-scented powder).
4. **Puncture** (the act of pricking). To *punctuate* (to mark with points). *Punctuation*. *Pungent* (pricking). *Pungency*. *Punctual* (doing any thing at the fixed point of time : careful to be exact in point of time). *Punctuality*. A *punctilio* (a nice point ; a scruple of honour). *Punctilious*, *punctiliousness*. *Compunction* (a pricking of the conscience). To *expunge* (to prick out, efface).  
Hence, *poignant* sorrow (piercing sorrow). *Poniard*, *point*, &c.
5. **Pupa** (an insect in an infantine state). *Pupil* (a young person). *Pupilage*. *Puppet* (a figure made like a child ; a doll).
6. **Purely**. To *purify* (to make pure). *Purification*, *purity*. To *depurate* (to remove what is impure). *Depuration*. *Impure* (not pure). *Impurity*. A *puritan* (one who professes more than common purity in religion). *Puritanical*, *puritanism*. To *purge* (to make pure by cleaning). *Purgation*. *Purgative* (having the power to make pure ; to cleanse). *Purgatory* (a place where souls are supposed to be purified). *Purgatorial*. *Expurgation* (a thorough

7. *putare, to prune (nearly obsolete); to think.* 8. *putĕre, to stink.*  
9. *quatuor, four.* 10. *quadrare, to make square.* 11. *quærerere (quæsi-*  
*quæsitum), to seek; to ask.* 12. *qualis, of what sort; such.*

purification; a cleaning out). *Expurgatory*. *Compurgation* (the clearing oneself from a charge).

7. To *impute* any thing to a man (to set it down to his account; to reckon it as a fault in him). *Imputation*. To *dispute* (to think differently; to argue on different sides). *Disputation*, *disputations*. *Reputation* (the being *thought* much of). To *repute*, *reputed*.

From *putare*, to prune, *lop off*, comes our to am-PUTATE a leg, to cut it off.

8. **Putridity, putrefy.** *Putrescence* (the state of rotting). *Putrescent*. *Putrefaction* (the state of being made rotten). *Purulent* (consisting of putrid matter). *Purulence*. To *suppurate* (to generate putrid matter). *Suppuration*. A *pustule* (a pimple containing putrid matter). *Pustulous, pustulate*.

10. The *quadrature* of the circle (the *squaring* of the circle; that is, the finding a *square* that shall contain just as much area as a given circle. There cannot be such a square; hence, to *square the circle* is an impossible problem). *Quarterage* (an allowance paid four times in the year). *Quarterly*. A *quartern* (the fourth part of a pint). A *quatnion* of soldiers (a file of four soldiers). *Quadragesima* (*Lent*, the forty-days' fast).

11. *Acquirable, acquirement. Acquisition* (the act of obtaining). *Acquisitive. Esquisite* (sought out; hence, rare). *Esquisitely*. To *inquire* (to seek into). *Inquiry, inquest. An inquisition* (a seeking or searching into). *Inquisitive* (given to inquiry into things; curious; prying). *Inquisitiveness. An inquisitor* (a judge of the *Inquisition*). *Inquisitorial. Inquisitor* (what is obtained in an office, over and above the settled wages). A *question* (a seeking). *Questioner. Questionable* (that may be doubted). To *question* (sometimes means to doubt; that is, to raise a *question* about any thing). To *request* (to endeavour to obtain by asking). A *disquisition* (a search amongst scattered materials; a *discursive inquiry*: hence an essay discussing a subject). To *require* (to ask a thing as of right). *Requirement. Requisite* (demanded by the nature of things). A *requisition*. To *conquer* (properly to bring together by search; then to *obtain*; hence to *obtain possession* of a country). *Conquest. A query* (a doubt proposed).

12. To *qualify* (to make a thing or person such as will fit or suit). To *qualify* a statement (to make it correct by adding a *restriction*). *Qualification, qualifiable*. To *disqualify* (to deprive of fitness; to unfit; to incapacitate). *Disqualification*.

## LESSON LXXI.

**Key-words.**

**Latin Roots.**

1. A CON-CUSSION of the brain; a violent *shaking-together* of the brain.
- a) quati-, quass- } to *shake*.  
cuti-, cuss-
- b) quassa-, quassat-, to *shake* often, or violently.

1. quātere (quāsi; quāsum), *to shake*. concutere (concutio), concussi, concussum, *to shake*.

## Key-words.

## Latin Roots.

2. A QUERULOUS old woman; a *complaining* old woman. quer-, quest-, to *complain*.
3. Peace and QUIETNESS; peace and undisturbed *rest*; tranquillity. a) *quiēt-, rest.*  
b) *quiesc-, quiet-, to rest.*
4. A QUINQU-ENNIAL division of profits; a division of profits every *five* years. [Annus, year.] a) *quingu-, five.*  
b) *quint-, } fifih.*  
quin- }
- R.
5. A RABID democrat; a *raging* democrat. rabi-, *madness.*  
rabid-, *mad.*
6. TO RADIATE; to emit rays. radi-, a *spoke*; a *ray.*
7. RADICAL reform; *root-reform*; or, as we should say, *root and branch* reform. radic-, *root.*
8. TO ERASE; to *scrape* or *scratch* out. rād-, rās-, to *shave*; to *scrape.*
9. TO RAMIFY; to *make branches*; to *branch out.* ram-, *branch.*
10. RANCID oil; *rank* oil. rancid-, *rancid.*  
[In English, *rank.*]
11. "The RAPE of the lock," a poem that describes the *stealthy snatching away* of a lock of hair from a lady's head. rapi-, rapt- }  
ripi-, rept- } to *snatch.*
12. Any thing is RARE; is seldom found. rār-, *thin*; *rare.*

1. To *discuss* a question (to *agitate* it by *arguing* it). A *dis-cussion*. A violent *per-cussion* (a violent *striking* of one body against another). What is a *percussion-lock*? To *quash* legal proceedings (to *shake* them to *pieces*; hence, to *make* them *void*). A court of *cassation* is a court of *quassation*; a court where legal decisions are revised and *set aside*, if the court disapproves of what has been done.
2. *Querulously, querulousness. Querimonious* (complaining). *Querimoniously.*

Hence, to *quarrel* (to *complain* with violence). *Quarrelsome, quarreller, quarrelsomeness.*

3. *Quietude* (rest). *Quietly. Quietism* (the name of a *meditative, dreamy* kind of religion, from its *resting* in the contemplation of the Divine perfections). *Quiescent* (resting; at rest). *Quiescence. To disquiet* (to *take away* rest; to *disturb*). *Disquietude. Unquiet*

2. *queri* (*questus sum*), to *complain*. 3. *quies, quiētis, rest.* 4. *quinque, five.* 5. *rabies, fury; madness. rabidus, mad.* 6. *radius, the spoke of a wheel; a ray.* 7. *radix, radice, f. a root.* 8. *radere, rasi, rasum, to scrape.* 9. *ramus, a branch.* 10. *rancidus, rank; stinking.* 11. *rapere (rapio), rapui, raptum, to snatch; to carry off by violence; to hurry.* 12. *rarus, thinly-placed; rare.*



(not quiet). *Unquietly*. To *acquiesce* in any thing (to give a quiet assent to it; to rest in it). *Acquiescence*.

A *quincunx* (five arranged as on dice:  $\therefore$ ). The *quint-essence* (properly the *fifth essence*, considered by *alchemists* the most perfect).

5. *Rabidness*. Hence, to *rave*, &c. (to act as if mad). *Ravingly*.
6. *Radiance* (brightness from emitted rays). *Radiant*. *Radiation* (propagation or emission by rays; emission by lines from a central point). *Radius* (a ray; a line drawn in a circle from the centre to the circumference: like the spoke of a wheel). To *irradiate*.
7. A *radical* error (an error that lies at the root; a *fundamental* error). *Radication*. *Radically* distinct. A *radicle* (a 'little root'). To *eradicate* (to root out). *Eradication*. A *radical*.
8. *Erasable*, *erasure*, *erasion*. To *rase* (to scrape or graze). To *abrade* (to rub off). *Abrasure*, *abrasion*. A *rasher* (a scraping or shaving; a *thin slice*). To *rase* (to demolish from the foundation). A *razor* (a shaving instrument). A *razee* (a ship with one deck removed or shaved off).
9. The *ramifications* (the branches of trees; the questions, &c. into which a subject branches out).
10. *Rancidness*, *rancidity*. *Rancescent* (becoming rank). *Rancour* (rankness of mind; virulent enmity). *Rancorous*. To *rankle* (to grow corrupt in the mind; to acquire virulence).
11. *Rapture* (the being snatched or hurried away by feelings of pleasure or admiration). *Rapturous*. *Rapacious* (addicted to snatching). *Rapacity*, *rapaciousness*. *Corruption* (a *snatching with* or *chiding*). *Surreptitious* (snatched secretly; obtained by stealth; hence, *clandestine*, &c.). *Surreptitiously*. *Rapid* (hurried). *Rapidly*, *rapidity*. To *ravish* (to seize by violence). *Enravishment*. To *ravage* (to seize as a destroyer; to plunder). *Ravager*. *Rapine* (the act of snatching or plundering). A *rapier* (a light sword easily snatched out).
12. *Rarely*, *rarity*, *rareness*. To *rarify* (to make thin). The *rarefaction* of the air (the making it thin).

## LESSON LXXXII.

### Key-words.

### Latin Roots.

1. **REAL**; relating to the thing re-, *thing*.  
itself.
2. **RECENT** discoveries; disco- recent-, *fresh*; *recent*.  
veries lately made.
3. **REGAL**; belonging to rule or a) rēg- } rect-, to *rule* or *direct*  
right. rig- } (in a straight line).

1. res, *thing*. 2. recens, *new*. 3. rego, rexi, rectum, *to rule*; *to guide*.

*Key-words.**Latin Roots.*

4. A REPTILE; a *creeping* thing.  
 5. RETICULATED; made of or like *network*.  
 6. TO RIDICULE; to laugh at.  
 7. RIGID propriety; *stiff*, formal propriety.  
 8. TO IRRIGATE; to *water* (meadows, &c.).  
 9. A SACRED RITE; a sacred ceremonial form or observance.  
 10. A RIVER; a running *stream* larger than a *brook*.  
 11. A ROBUST man; a strong, stout man.  
 12. TO CORRODE iron; to *eat it away* by degrees.
- b) *rēg-*, *king*.  
 c) *rēgāl-*, *royal*.  
 rep-, rept-, to *creep*.  
 ret-, *net*.  
 ride-, ris-, to *laugh*.  
 rigē-, to *be stiff*.  
 rigid-, *stiff*.  
 riga-, rigat-, to *water*.  
 ritu-, *manner; rite*.  
 riv-, *river*.  
 robor-, *heart of oak; strength*.  
 rod-, rōs-, to *gnaw; eat away*.
1. *Really. Reality* (truth). To *realize* (to turn a *notion* into a *thing*). *Realization*.  
 A *re-public* (a *commonwealth*; a government that is the *common affair* of all the governed).  
 2. *Recently, recentness*.  
 3. *Regally, regality. Regalia* (ensigns of rule). *Regent* (ruling). *Regency. Rector* (literally, a ruler; in the Church, the governor of a parish, and owner, for the time being, of the Church property). *Rectorial, rectory. Regicide* (the murderer of him who rules). *Regimen* (a rule or direction). *Regiment* (formerly rule or government; now a body of soldiers, governed by a colonel). *Regimental. Regnant* (ruling). *Regular* (according to rule). *Regularly, regulation, regulator. Rectify* (to make right). *Rectification. Rectitude* (rightness). To *correct* (to make right). *Correction, corrective, correctness. Incorrigible* (that cannot be made right). To *direct* (to put in the right way). *Direction, directness. Directly* (in a right line). *Director* (one that fills the office of ruler). To *erect* (to place upwards in a right line). *Erection, erector, erective, erectness. An interregnum* (time intervening between the death of one ruler and the commencement of the rule of his successor).  
 4. *Repent* (creeping). For *surreptitious, surreptitiously, &c.*, see *rapi-(o)*.  
 5. *Reticule* (a small net). *Reticulation. Retiform* (in the form of a net). *Reticle* (a small net). *Retina* (the net-like portion of the eye, on which the images of objects are painted).

---

4. *repēre, repsi, reptum, to creep*. 5. *rete, retis, n., a net*. 6. *ridēre, risi, risum, to laugh*. 7. *rigēre, rigui, to be cold; to be frozen; to be stiff*. *rigidus, cold, stiff*. 8. *rigare, to water*. 9. *ritus, ſs, manner; ceremony*. 10. *rivus, river*. 11. *robur, -oris, oak; strength*. 12. *rōdere, rosi, rosum, to gnaw*.

6. *Ridiculous, ridiculously, ridiculousness.* To *deride* (to laugh down or at). *Derision, derisive, derisively.* *Irrision* (the act of laughing at another). *Risible* (that can laugh or excite laughter). *Risibility.*
7. *Rigidly, rigidity, rigidity.* *Rigour* (stiffness: hence, *exact strictness*). *Rigorous, rigorously.*
8. *Irrigation* (the watering of lands by artificial canals). *Irriguous* (watery).
9. *Ritual* (belonging to rites). A *ritualist* (one skilled in the knowledge of rites).
10. To *de-ri-ve* one thing from another (to draw or *deduce* it from another, like a stream from some source). *Derivation.* A *derivative* (a word *derived* from another).
- A *rival* was properly one who had a common *water-right* with another; hence, one who *contested a water-right* with another; and so, generally, a competitor, &c.). A *rivulet* (a small stream; a little brook). Hence, a *rill* (for *rivull*).
11. *Robustness. Roboreous* (made of oak). To *corroborate* (to strengthen a statement; to *confirm* it). *Corroboration, corroborative.*
12. *Corrosion, corrosive, corrosiveness.* *Corrosible* (that can be eaten away by degrees). *Corrosibility.* To *erode* (to eat out; to *canker*). *Erosive, erosion.*

## LESSON LXXXIII.

## Key-words.

## Latin Roots.

- |  |                              |
|--|------------------------------|
| 1. To INTERROGATE; to ask; to question.  | roga-, rogat-, to ask.       |
| 2. A ROSEATE hue; a <i>rosy</i> hue.   | ros-, rose.                  |
| 3. What is the <i>derivation</i> of ROSE-MARY?   | rōr-, dew.<br>roscid-, dewy. |
| 4. A ROTATORY motion; a wheel-like motion; <i>whirling</i> round.  | rot-, wheel.                 |
| 5. The RUBRIC; the body of directions in the Prayer Book; so called, because originally printed in <i>red</i> letters. | rub-, rubr-, red.            |
| 6. A RUDE attempt; a <i>rough</i> attempt; the attempt of an <i>untaught</i> person.                                   | rud-, untrained; rude.       |
| 7. The COR-RUGATIONS of his forehead; its contraction into <i>wrinkles</i> .   | rug-, wrinkle.               |

1. rogare, to ask. 2. rosa, a rose. 3. ros, roris, m., dew. 4. rota, a wheel. 5. ruber, rubra, rubrum, red. 6. rudis, new, fresh; rude, ignorant. 7. ruga, a fold; a wrinkle.

## Key-words.

8. A RUIN; a downfall.  
 9. To RUMINATE; to chew the cud.  
 10. RUPTURE; the state of being broken.  
 11. RUSTIC and rural; belonging to the country.

## Latin Roots.

- a) ru-, to rush.  
 b) ruin-, a falling down; a ruin.  
 rumina-, ruminat-, to chew the cud.  
 rump-, rupt-, to burst; to break.  
 rur-, country.

## S.

12. a) The SACRED writings; the holy writings.  
 b) A SACRAMENT; a holy rite by which we are consecrated to Christ as his sworn followers.  
 c) A SACERDOTAL benediction; the benediction of a priest.
- a) sacr-, sacred.  
 b) sacra-, sacrat-, { to make sa-  
 secra-, secrat-, { cred; to con-  
 secrate.  
 c) sacerdot-, priest.
1. *Interrogation, interrogator, interrogative.* To abrogate (to ask away; to repeal). *Abrogation.* To arrogate (to ask for oneself; to claim; mostly of an undue claim). *Arrogation.* *Arrogant* (literally, asking for oneself presumptuously; proud). *Arrogance, arrogantly.* To derogate (to ask from; to detract). *Derogatory, derogation, derogatoriness.* *Prerogative* (the right of being asked one's opinion before others; hence, a peculiar claim or right). To prorogue (to ask forward; to protract). *Prorogation.* *Rogation* (an asking or supplication). Works of *supererogation* (works above what the law asks for at our hands).
3. *Roration* (a falling of dew). *Roriferous* (bearing dew). *Rorifluent* (flowing with dew).
4. *Rotation* (the act of turning round: succession by turns). *Rotated* (whirled round). *Rotund* (round). *Rotunda* (a round building). *Rotundity* (roundness). *Routine* (a round of business; hence, the ordinary course of business). To learn by *rote* (by going over and over it).
5. *Rubricated, rubrical.* *Erubescence* (a becoming red). *Erubescant.* A *ruby* (a red stone). *Rubicund* (inclined to redness). *Rubicundity.* Here belongs *rust*; properly meaning red rust.
6. *Rudely.* *Erudite* (taken out of a rude state; learned). *Erudition.* *Rudiment* (that which belongs to a rude state; the beginning of any thing). *Rudimental.*
7. To *corrugate* (to wrinkle).
8. *Ruinous, ruinously.*
9. *Ruminant* (chewing the cud). *Ruminator* (one that ruminates or reflects).
10. A *ruption* (a breaking). An *eruption* (a breaking out). *Eruption.* To *interrupt* (to break in upon). *Interruption, interruptedly.*
- 
8. ruere, rui, ruitum, to fall. ruina, a falling down; a ruin. 9. ruminare, to chew the cud. 10. rumpere, rupi, ruptum, to break. 11. rus, ruris, n., the country. 12. sacer, sacra, sacrum, sacred.

- Irruption* (a breaking into). *Irruptive*. To *corrupt* (literally, to break together; to vitiate). *Corruption*, *corruptible*, *incorruption*. *Abrupt* (broken off). *Abruptly*. *Bankrupt* (broken in fortune). *Bankruptcy*. *Disruption* (a breaking asunder).
11. *Rusticity* (country manners; want of city polish). To *rusticate* (to reside in the country). *Rustically*.
12. *Sacredness*, *sacredly*. To *sacrifice* (to perform sacred rites; but only of presenting victims or offerings to God). *Sacrificial*. *Sacrilege* (the sin of violating the law with respect to sacred things). *Sacrilegious*, *sacrilegiously*. A *sacristan*, corrupted into *sexton* (one who has charge of the sacred utensils). *Sacristy* (the place where they are kept). To *consecrate* (to make sacred). *Consecration*, *consecrator*. To *desecrate* (to divert from sacred purposes; hence, to treat a holy thing as if it were a common thing). *Desecration*. To *execrate* (lit. to place out of what is holy; hence, to detest or curse as unholy).

## LESSON LXXXIV.

## Key-words.

## Latin Roots.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. A SAGACIOUS mind; able to divine or discern; a mind that is skilful in discovering obscure causes; keen, penetrating. | sagi-, to track or scent out.  |
| 2. A SALINE draught; a saltish draught.  | a) sal-, salt.<br>b) salin-, salt (as adj.).                             |
| 3. To ASSAIL a person; to leap, as it were, upon him; to attack suddenly.  | sali-, salt- }<br>sil-, sult- } to leap.<br>(In English, -sail, -scuit.) |
| 4. The SALIVA; the spittle.  | saliv-, spittle.   |
| 5. a) A SALUTARY measure; a healthful saving measure.<br>b) The SALVATION of the soul; the saving of the soul.           | a) salut-, safety.<br>b) salva-, salvat-, to save.                       |
| 6. To SANCTIFY; to make holy; to hallow.   | sanct-, holy; pious.   |
| 7. A SANGUINARY battle; a bloody battle.   | sanguin-, blood.   |
| 8. Is INSANITY an hereditary disorder? is un-soundness of mind an hereditary disorder?                                   | san-, in health; sound.  |

1. sagax, sagacis, quick-scented. 2. sal, salis, salt. 3. salire, salui, saltum, to leap [mostly in compounds *desilio*, &c.]. 4. saliva, spittle. 5. salvus, safe; in good health [salvare, late Latin = to save]. salus, salūis, health. 6. sancire, sanxi, sancitum or sanctum, to make sacred. 7. sanguis, sanguinis, blood. 8. sanus, whole; sound in health. 9. sapere (sapio), sapivi, sapii or sapui, (1) to taste; (2) to be wise.

## Key-words.

## Latin Roots.

9. a) An INSIPID substance; a }  
 tasteless substance. }  
 b) A SAPIENT pig; a learned }  
 pig. }
10. A SAPONACIOUS substance; sapon-, soap.  
 a soapy substance.
11. To SATISFY the demand; to satis, enough.  
 supply enough for it; to content it.
12. To ASCEND the stairs; to scand-, scans- }  
 climb or mount up the stairs. scend-, scens- } to climb.
1. Sagaciously, sagacity To pre-sage (to anticipate a coming event; to forebode). A presage (a prognostic). A sage (a wise man). Sagely.
2. Salination (a washing in salt water). A salary (properly, salt-money, it being originally paid partly in salt; a stipend). Salsuginous (saltish).
3. Assailable (capable of being assaulted). Assailant. To assault (to leap at). Assaultable. A desultory habit (the habit of leaping from one thing to another; of attending only by fits and starts). Desultoriness. To exult [for ex-sult] (to leap for joy). Exultant, exultation. To insult (to leap on; hence, to treat with insolence, &c.). Insultingly. The result (the leaping back: the event, considered as what starts up as the agent's return for his labour). To sally (to leap or rush out of a besieged city). A salmon (leaping fish).
4. To salivate (to affect the salival glands). Salivation (an injury done to the salival glands by taking mercurial medicines).
5. Salutariness. Salubrious (health-promoting; healthy). Salubrity. To salute (to wish health; to greet). Salutation. Salvable (that may be saved). Salvability. Salvation (the act of saving, or state of being saved). Salvage (reward for saving goods from a wreck). Insalubrity (unhealthiness). Insalubrious.
- [Safe, safety, are from salve, salvety, through the French sauf.]
6. Sanctifier (He who makes us holy; The HOLY SPIRIT). Sanctification. Sanctimonious (mostly used in a bad sense; professing great holiness). Sanctimoniously. Sanctity (holiness). A sanctuary (a holy place; a shrine; especially a place to which criminals might fly for refuge). To sanction any thing (to give it one's countenance as a right thing). A saint, for a sancte (a holy person). Sainted (holy). Saintly, saintlike. Unsanctified (not made holy).
7. Consanguinity (blood-relationship). Sanguine (having the colour of, or abounding with, blood; and hence of an ardent, hoping temper). Sanguineness.
- [A cousin is properly a 'con-sanguin,' one who has common blood.]
8. Sanative (having the power to heal). Sanitary measures (measures taken for promoting the health of the public). Insane (of unsound mind). Insanity, insanelly.

---

10. sapo, saponis, soap. 11. satis, enough. 12. scandere, scandi, scansum, to climb.

9. a) *Inspidity* (want of flavour; hence, want of any *raciness* of character; want of life and spirit). *Inspidly*. *Sapid* (tasteful). *Savour* for *sapor* (taste). *Savory*, *savoriness*. b) *Sapient* (wise: mostly used ironically). *Sapience*. *Insipience* (want of wisdom).
11. *Satisfaction*, *satisfactory*. To *dissatisfy* (not to give enough). *Unsatisfactory*. To *satisfy* (to give enough, and more than enough). *Satiety* (the feeling of having had enough, mostly implying that one has had more than enough, and *loathes* the thought of having more). *Sated* (having had enough). *Insatiable* (that cannot be satisfied). To *saturate* (to give so much more than enough, that there is no room for more). *Saturation*.
12. *Ascendant*, *ascendancy*. *Ascent* (the act of climbing, or mounting). *Ascension*. To *descend* (to climb down). *Descent*, *descendible*, *descension*. To *transcend* (to climb beyond: hence, to rise far above). *Transcendant*, *transcendency*. To *scan* (literally, to climb). What is to *scan* objects? (to mount, as it were, step by step, till one reaches their full meaning: hence, to examine minutely.) What is to *scan* a verse? (to go through it, *step by step*, till one reaches, and can tell, the number of its *feet*; hence, to divide it into feet.) *Scansion*. To *condescend* (literally, to climb down together). *Condescension*. To *reascend* (to climb up again). *Reascension*.

## LESSON LXXXV.

### Key-words.

### Latin Roots.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. The SCHOLASTIC art; the art of keeping school.                                  | schol-, a school.   |
| 2. To RESCIND a law; to cut it off; to abrogate it.                                | scind-, sciss-, to cut, to rend.                                      |
| 3. The arts and SCIENCES; the arts and other departments of human knowledge.       | sci-, to know.  |
| 4. a) A SCRIBE; a writer.<br>b) HOLY SCRIPTURE; holy writ.                         | scrib-, script-, to write.  |
| 5. I have no SCRUPLE; no particle of doubt; no hesitation.                         | scrupul-, a little stone; a scruple (prop. and fig.).                 |
| 6. To SCRUTINIZE his motives; to submit them to a close and searching examination. | scrut-, old garments.   |
| 7. A SCULPTOR, a carver in stone; a statuary.                                      | scalp-, sculpt-, } to grave; to ensculp-, sculpt-, } grave; to carve. |

1. schola, a school. 2. scindere, scīdi, scissum, to cut. 3. scire, scivi or scii, scitum, to know. 4. scribere, scripsi, scriptum, to write. 5. scrupus, a sharp or rough stone. scrupulus, a little sharp stone; a scruple, a doubt. 6. scruta, old garments. scrutari, scrutatus sum, to search diligently. 7. sculpere, sculpsi, sculptum, to carve in stone or metal.

## Key-words.

## Latin Roots.

8. A SCURRILOUS style; a *style* of abusive jesting. scurr-, a buffoon.
9. A SCUTIFORM leaf; a *shield-shaped* leaf. scut-, shield.
10. To BISECT an angle; to cut it in two. a) seca-, sect-, to cut.  
b) segmin-, a cutting.
11. SECULAR wisdom; the wisdom of the world, or age, not spiritual. secul-, age.
12. A SEDENTARY occupation; an occupation at which the person engaged in it sits. a) sede-, sess-, side-, to sit.  
b) sid-, to settle.  
c) seda-, sedat-, to make to settle; to appease.

1. A scholar (one who learns in or belongs to a school). *Scholarship, scholastically*.—A *scholiast* was an annotator who employed his leisure (in Greek σχολή) in writing learned notes on (Greek) authors. Such a note was a *scholium*.

2. *Excision* (a cutting out). *Abscission* (the act of cutting off). *Scissors* (cutting instrument).

3. *Scientifically, unscientific*. *Conscience* (the knowledge of right and wrong that dwells with us). *Conscious, consciousness*. *Conscientious* (observant of what conscience directs). *Conscientiously*. *Conscientiousness*. *Omniscient* (knowing every thing). *Omniscience*. *Prescient* (knowing beforehand). *Prescience*. A *sciolist* (a bit of a knower; one who knows many things superficially). *Conscionable* (according to internal knowledge).

4. *Scriptural* (according to the [holy] writings). To *scribble* (to write with haste). *Scribbler*. A *scribe* (a writer). A *postscript* (an after-written addition). To *describe* (to write down; hence, to relate). *Description, descriptive, describable*. *Indescribable*. To *inscribe* (to write upon). An *inscription*. An *inscriber*. A *manuscript* (a paper or book written by the hand). To *prescribe* (to write before; to write rules or directions to be followed). *Prescription, prescriptive*. To *proscribe* (to write forth; to publish in writing a list of persons condemned; hence, to denounce, to condemn). *Proscription*. To *rescribe* (to write back, or over again). *Rescript*. To *ascribe* (to write with respect to, attribute). *Ascription, ascribable*. To *circumscribe* (to write round; to limit). A *conscript* (written together; a newly enlisted soldier, whose name is just written with the names of many others on the roll). *Conscription*. To *subscribe* (to write under; hence, to write my name under the names of others in a list of contributors; hence, to contribute). *Subscription, subscriber*. To *super-scribe* (to write over or above). *Superscription*. To *transcribe* (to transfer in writing; to copy). A *transcript* (a copy). *Transcriber*.


5. *Scrupulous, scrupulosity, unscrupulous*.

---

8. scurra, a scoffer, a buffoon. 9. scutum, a shield. 10. secare, secui, sectum, to cut. 11. seculum, an age. 12. sedēre, sēdi, sessum, to sit.



6. To *scrutinize* (to hold up to the light, and examine; hence to scan accurately). *Scrutinizer*. *Inscrutable* (unsearchable; not discoverable by the closest examination). *Inscrutably*, *inscrutableness*.
7. A *sculptor* (one that carves in stone). *Sculptile* (made by carving).
8. *Scurrilously*, *scurrility*.
9. *Scutcheon* and *escutcheon* (heraldic shield). *Escutcheoned*. *Scutellaria* (name of a plant with a shield-like leaf).
10. *Bisection*. To *dissect* (to cut up, and so separate the parts). *Dissection*, *dissector*. To *intersect* (to cut between). *Intersection*. To *trisection* (to cut into three). *Trisection*. A *secant* (a line that cuts another). A *section* (a cutting). *Sectional*. *Sector* (the part which cuts). A *segment* (a portion cut off from a circle; part of the circumference of a circle). *Venesection* (the cutting or opening of a vein). An *insect* (so called from the body appearing to be cut in the middle).
11. *Secularity* (worldliness). To *secularize* (to convert from sacred purposes to secular use).
12. *Sedentarily*. *Sedulous* (sitting close; diligent; assiduous). *Sedulity*, *sedulously*. A *session* of parliament (a sitting of parliament). *Sessional*. To *reside* (to settle; to dwell; to be settled in; to live in). *Residence*, *resident*, *residential*. The *residue* (that which sits back, or remains; for instance, the property that remains at the bottom of the purse, when all the legacies are paid). A *residuary* legatee (the person to whom the residue is left; who pays the legacies, and takes the rest). To *subside* (to settle beneath; to sink). *Subsidence*. To *supersede* (to sit above; hence, to take another's place). To *possess* (literally, to sit before or at the head of; hence, to own, &c.). *Possession*, *possessive*. To *dispossess* (to deprive of the power of having). *Dispossession*. To *prepossess* (to possess before another; to preoccupy). *Prepossession*. *Unpossessed*. To *preside* (to sit before; to sit at the head of a deliberative or ministerial body). *President*, *presidency*. To *assess* (to make a man sit down contented with being rated at so much). An *assessor* (one who sits by a judge). A *dissident* (one who sits apart; who differs in opinion). An *insidious* attack (such an attack as one who sits or lies in ambush against a man would make; a stealthy, treacherous attack). The waters *subside* (settle down). A *sedative* effect (a soothing, quieting effect).

 *Siege*, *besiege*, are formed from *sede-*: a *g* or *j* sound often slips in after *d*.

## LESSON LXXXVI.

### Key-words.

### Latin Roots.

1. A SEMINARY of sound learning; an institution in which the seeds of sound learning are
- a) ser-, sat-, to sow.  
b) semin-, seed.  
(Compare 11.)

1. serere, sevi, satum to sow. semen, seminis, seed.

## Key-words.

## Latin Roots.

- sown and watered; a *seed-plot* of sound learning.
2. A SEMICIRCLE; a *half* circle. semi-, *half*.  
 3. He is my SENIOR; he is *older* than I. sen-, *old* (*in age*).  
 4. What are your SENTIMENTS? your *thoughts* or *feelings*? senior-, *older, senior*.  
 5. SEPTENNIAL parliaments; parliaments elected for *seven* years. senti-, sens-, *to feel*.  
 6. A SEPULCHRE; a place of burial. sepi-, } *to bury*.  
 7. To PERSECUTE a man; to follow him through, that is, *up*, till he is caught; to be *always* after him; and hence to *pursue* him with *injuries*. sepult-, } *to follow*.  
 8. A SERENE brow; a *clear, calm* brow. seren-, *fair* (of weather); *serene*.  
 9. A SERPENTINE walk; a *winding* walk. serp-, *to creep*.  
 10. SERRATED leaves; leaves like the edge of a *saw*. serr-, *a saw*.  
 11. Works that come out in a SERIES: in a *continued succession*; at regular intervals. ser-, sert-, *to bind* (*tie* or *string*) *together*.  
 12. A CONSERVATIVE; one who wishes to *keep* things *together* as they are. serva-, servat-, *to keep, to pre-serve*.
1. *Semination* (the act of sowing). To *disseminate* (to scatter seed; hence to scatter news, errors, &c.). *Dissemination*.  
 2. *Semicircular*. *Semipellucid* (half clear). *Semispherical* (belonging to half a sphere, &c.).  
 3. *Senile* (belonging to old age). *Senescence* (state of growing old). *Senate* (originally an assembly of elders; the Roman parliament). *Senator, senatorial, senatorship*.  
 4. *Consentient*. *Consentaneous* (thinking or agreeing with). *Consentaneously*. To *dissent* (to think apart; to differ). *Dissenter*. *Dissension*. To *assent* (to think towards, to agree). *Assenter*. A *pre-sentiment* (a feeling previous to *sensation*; the act of feeling). A *sentiment* (a thinking). *Sentimental*. Hence *sense, sensibility, &c.*  
 5. *Septennial* (lasting seven years; occurring every seventh year).

---

2. semis, *half of some whole*. 3. senex, senis, *an old person*. 4. sentire, sensi, sensum, *to discern by the senses, to think, to feel*. 5. septem, *seven*. 6. sepelire, sepelivi, or sepelii, sepultum, *to bury*. 7. sequi, secutus, *to follow*. 8. serenus, *fair, calm, serene*. 9. serpere, serpsi, serptum, *to creep*. 10. serra, *a saw*. 11. serere, serui, sertum *to lay in order, to join or knit*. 12. servare, *to keep*.

*Septangular* (having seven angles or corners). *Septilateral* (having seven sides). *Septuple* (seven times as much).

6. *Sepulchral*. *Sepulture* (the act of burying).

7. *Persecution*, *persecutor*. *Consequence* (that which follows in company with a principle). *Consequential*, *consequently*. To *execute* (to follow out; to perform; accomplish). *Execution*, *executive*, *executor*. What is to *execute* a prisoner? (to follow up and perform the sentence of the law condemning him to die.) A *sect* (a body following particular principles: as a *sect* of philosophers. With respect to the Church, it means a body following its own *private* opinions instead of the doctrines and discipline of the Church). *Sectarian* (belonging to a *sect*; not to the Church; opposed to Catholic). *Obsequious* (following in front, obedient). *Obsequiousness*. To *prosecute* (to follow forward). *Prosecution*, *prosecutor*. The *sequel* (the following and concluding part). *Sequent* (following). *Sequence*. *Subsequent* (following after). *Subsequently*.

[English words in *-sue*, *-suit*, all come from *sequi*-, *secut*-, through the French *suire*, *suite*. To *ensue*, *pursue*, &c. *Obsequies* are the rites with which one follows a corpse to the grave.]

8. *Serenely*, *serenity*. *Serenade* (music performed in a clear night).

9. A *serpent* (a creeping reptile).

10. *Serration*, *serrature*.

11. To *insert* (to place in). *Insertion*. To *assert* (literally, to place to; to maintain). *Assertion*. To *desert* (to disconnect oneself from; to quit; leave in the lurch). *Desertion*, *deserter*. To *exert* power (to put it forth). *Exertion*. To *reassert*, to *reinsert*. A *sermon* (properly, a *connected* discourse; an address). To *dissert* [whence a *dissertation* = a discussion; or essay *discussing* a subject] is to *disconnect* one's knowledge from one's own stock; to make it common property.

12. *Preserver*, *preservation*, *preservative*. To *observe* (to keep in front of; hence, to *watch*, &c.). *Observant*, *observance*, *observation*. An *observatory* (a room in which astronomers *observe* the heavenly bodies). To *reserve* (to keep back). Mental *reservation* (the keeping back a part of the whole truth). A *reserved* character (a character that is *kept back*; uncommunicative). *Reservoir*. *Unreservedly* (without any *reservation*).

## LESSON LXXXVII.

### Key-words.

### Latin Roots.

- |                             |                                    |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. A state of SERVITUDE; of | servi-, servit-, to be a slave; to |
| slavery.                    | serve (as a slave).                |
| 2. SEX-ANGULAR; having six  | a) sex-                            |
| angles.                     | b) sēn- (as adj.) } <i>six</i> .   |

1. *servire*, *servitum*, to *serve*; to *obey*. *servus*, a *slave*. 2. *sex*, *six*. *seni*, *by sixes*.

## Key-words.

## Latin Roots.

3. "A *hortus siccus*;" literally, a dry garden; a collection of dried flowers.
 

a) sicc-, dry.
b) sicca-, siccata-, to dry.
  4. A *SIDEREAL* year; a year as determined by the return of the stars to the same point of the heavens.
 

sider-, star.
---------------
  5. A *SIGNAL*; a sign given.
 

sign-, sign.
--------------
  6. *SILENT*.
 

sile-, to be still.
---------------------
  7. A *SIMILAR* occurrence; a like occurrence.
 

simil-, like.
---------------
  8. A *SINGLE* crow; one crow.
 

singul-, one by one.
----------------------
  9. A *SINISTER* countenance; properly, a left one, one that does not look right: a forbidding, bad countenance.
 

sinistr-, on the left hand; left (opp. right).
--
  10. To *IN-SINUATE* oneself; to wind oneself in.
 

a) sinu-, bosom; bay.
b) sinua-, sinuat-, to curve or swell out; hence, to wind.
  11. To *ASSIST* a man; to stand by him and help him.
 

sist-, stit-, to cause to stand; to place.
--
  12. The *SITE* of its house; its position; the ground it stands on.
 


situ-, position; site.
------------------------
1. *Servitude*. A servant (one who watches or attends on a master). *Service*, *serviceable*. *Servile* (slave-like). *Servility*. *Servitor* (a servant). To *subserve* (to serve in subordination). *Subservient*, *subservience*. *Disserviceable*, *unserviceable*. To *deserve*.
2. *Senary* (of six). *Sexennial* (every sixth year, or lasting six years). *Sexangular* (having six angles), &c.
3. To *desiccate* (to dry up). *Desiccation*. To *exsiccate* (to dry out; to dry).
4. To *con-sider* (is to reflect upon a thing after bringing one's lights to bear upon it). *Consideration*. A *considerate* person (one who considers the feelings of others: hence, *reasonable*, &c.). To *de-siderate* a thing, is to miss it from one's stars, that is, from what one wishes might be one's fate, since the ancients thought the stars determined a man's fate: hence, to miss; to feel with regret the want of something.
5. A *signer* (one who signs). *Signature* (a signing). *Signet* (a little sign; usually, the seal-ring with which a person in old times signed [or sealed] a letter or deed). To *signify* (to express by a sign). *Signification*, *significance*, *significantly*. *Signal* (a sign intended to give

---

3. *siccus*, dry. *siccare*, *siccavi*, *siccatum*, to dry. 4. *sidus*, *sideris*, n. a star. 5. *signum*, a mark or sign; a seal. 6. *silere*, *silui*, to be silent. 7. *similis*, like to. 8. *singuli*, one by one; single. 9. *sinister*, *sinistrum*, on the left; unlucky. 10. *sinus*, *us*, a bosom; a bay. *sinuare*, *sinuavi*, *sinuatum*, to wind. 11. *sistere* (*stiti*, *statum*), to make to stand; to stop. 12. *situs*, *us*, position in which any thing lies; site, &c.; also filth contracted from lying, unused: said to be from *sinere*, *sivi*, *situm*, to suffer; to permit.

notice). *Signally*. To *signalize* (to make marked; to distinguish). To *assign* (to sign to or for; to sign a decree for giving up some property to a person; hence, to *allot* to; to *attribute* to). *Assignable*. An *assignment* of property (the giving it up by a deed, signed and sealed, for the good of one's creditors). An *official assignee* (the person to whom property is assigned, to be disposed of by him for the equal benefit of the creditors). To *consign* (literally, to sign with; generally, to send goods to an agent in another country). A *consignment* (a quantity of goods consigned). To *design* (to sign or mark down; hence, to intend). A *designer*. *Designedly* (intentionally). To *designate* (to sign down; to set down a man's name for an office, &c.). A *designation*. To *signify* (properly to make a sign; then to be a sign of, to mean). What do we mean when we ask: "What does it signify?" [What does it matter? Of what significance is it?] *Insignificant* (not signifying; a thing or person that makes no difference). *Insignificance*. *Insignia* (signs). To *resign* (to sign back or away). The *resignation* of any thing (the giving it up). To bear evils with *resignation* (with a mind that surrenders itself to them, and therefore does not struggle against them; with Christian patience and submission). To be *resigned* to any thing (to be prepared to bear it with resignation, that is, with Christian submission: hence, to give up; to surrender). *Resigner*.

6. *Silence*, *silently*.
7. *Similarly*, *similarity*. *Similitude* (a likeness). A *simile* (a likeness; a comparison). *Simulation* (a feigning likeness; hypocritical pretence). *Dissimulation* (the concealing a real likeness: hence, the act of hiding the truth; of *dissembling* = *dissim'ling*). To *assimilate* (to make like). *Assimilation*. *Semblance* and *resemblance* (likeness to). To *dissemble* (to feign to be like). *Dissembler*. *Dissimilar* (unlike). *Dissimilarity*.
8. *Singly*, *singleness*. *Singular* (pertaining especially to one; by [or considered by] itself). *Singularity* (*oddness*: hence, often *odd*, as not being elsewhere seen).
10. An *insinuation* (an ill-natured remark thrown out that it may wind its way into the hearer's mind; a remark we wish to convey without openly stating it).
11. *Assistance*, *assistant*. To *consist* (to stand together; spoken of component parts: hence, to be made up of). A *consistent* person (a person whose conduct stands-together as a whole; without any discordant parts; whose conduct is all of a piece). *Consistency*. Of the consistence of jelly (the standing-together, as jelly does, from being about equally thick, equally near a solid state). *Consistently*. To *desist* (to stand off from; to stop). To *exist* (to stand out; to be). *Existence*, *co-existence*. To *insist* (to stand on a point; to urge it). To *persist* (to stand through). To *resist* (to stand back against; hence, to oppose). *Resistance*, *resistible*, *resistless*. To *subsist* (to stand under; to retain the present state; also, to support oneself upon, or be maintained by). *Subsistence*, *subsistent*.
12. *Situate*, or *situated* (placed). *Situation*.

 A *silicula*, or *silicle*, is a little seed-vessel, from *siliqua* a seed-vessel.

## LESSON LXXXVIII.

## Key-words.

## Latin Roots.

1. "The ASSOCIATED black-smiths;" the united black-smiths. soci-, companion; ally.
  2. The SOLAR rays; the rays of the sun. sol-, sun.
  3. To CON-SOLE a person; to comfort him. sola-, solat-, to comfort; to console.
  4. An INSOLENT answer; properly, an unwonted answer; an answer one is unaccustomed to receive: hence, contemptuous, insulting, &c. sole-, to be wont.
  5. To SOLICIT a favour; to ask it with anxiety or earnestness. solicit-, anxious.
  6. A SOLID mass; a compact mass; one that holds together; one that is not fluid. solid-, solid.
  7. To lead a SOLITARY life; to live alone; to see very few persons. sol-, alone.
  8. a) To SOLVE a problem; to loosen it; to clear it of its difficulties: hence, to explain.  
b) The SOLUTION of the difficulty; its explanation. solv-, solüt-, to melt; to dissolve.
  9. A SOMNOLENT person; a sleepy person. somn-, sleep.
  10. A SONOROUS voice; a loud-sounding voice. son-, sound.
  11. A SOPORIFIC; a medicine to produce sleep. sopor-, sleep.
  12. To ABSORB moisture; to drink it in; to suck it up. sorbe-, to sup up; to suck up.
1. Association. To consociate (to unite together). Consociation. To dissociate (to disunite). Dissociation. Sociable (disposed to unite; fond of society). Society (a union of persons). Sociableness, socialness.
2. Solstice (the standing still of the sun. The point in the ecliptic at which the sun ceases to recede from the equator: (1) the summer
- 
1. socius, helping; confederate. sociare, sociavi, sociatum, to match; to join; to associate. 2. sol, solis, the sun. 3. solari, to console. 4. solère, solitus sum, to be wont. 5. sollicitus, anxious. 6. solidus, substantial; solid. 7. solus, alone. 8. solve, solvi, solutum, to loosen. 9. somnus, sleep. 10. sonus, sound. 11. sopor, sleep. 12. sorbere, sorbui, or sorpsi, to sup up; to drink in.

- solstice, June 21; (2) winter solstice, Dec. 21 [sist-, stit-].  
*Parasol* (a defence from the sun).
4. *Insolence, insolently.*
  5. *Sollicitous, solicitation.* A *solicitor* (one who asks for another; an attorney). *Solicitude* (anxiety of mind). *Unsolicitous.*
  6. *Solidly, solidness, solidify, solidity.* To *consolidate* (to make solid). *Consolidation.* *Insolidity* (want of solidness). *Unconsolidated.* To *solder* (= to make solid by joining). A *soldier* was so called from his receiving *solid* pay.
  7. *Solitude* (loneliness). *Sole* (alone). *Solely.* To *soliloquize* (to speak aloud to oneself). A *soliloquy.* *Desolate* (left alone). *Desolation.* *Soli-vagant* (wandering alone). A *soli-fidian* (one who holds the doctrine of justification by faith alone, in an exaggerated way, so as to neglect works).
  8. *Solvent* (having the power to loose. A person is *solvent* when he can free himself from debt). *Solvency* (power to pay one's debts). *Solution* (a loosening; the untying of a difficulty; explanation). To *absolve* (to loose from; to release from the guilt of sin). *Absolution.* *Absolute* (finished off; unconditional; not relative). *Absolute power* (power that is perfect or complete; unlimited power). To *dissolve* (to loose apart; for instance, to turn a *solid* into a *liquid*; also to *break up* the sitting or session of a *council*). *Dissolution* (the *breaking up*; for instance, of parliament: also of a man's death, the *breaking up* of the constituent parts that make up his life). *Dissolute* (loose in behaviour). *Dissoluteness.* *Insoluble* (that cannot be dissolved). *Insolvent* (unable to loose or pay). *Insolvency.* To *resolve* (to make loose what was fast; hence, to *resolve a doubt*; also, used in the sense of coming to a *decision*). *Resolution.* *Resolute* (of a resolved or firm character). *Unsolved.*
  9. *Somnambulist* (a sleep-walker [ambula-, to walk]). *Somnambulism.* *Somnolent* (sleepy). *Somnolency.*
  10. *Soniferous* (bringing sound). *Unison* (a being of one sound). A *consonant* (a letter that *sounds with another*, but never alone). *Consonance* (agreement in sound). *Consonantly.* *Dissonant* (disagreeing in sound). *Dissonance* (sounding dreadfully). *Resonant* (re-sounding). *Resonance.* Hence, *sound*, &c.
  11. *Soporiferous* (bringing sleep).
  12. *Absorbable, absorbent, absorption.*

## LESSON LXXXIX.

### Key-words.

### Latin Roots.

1. SORDID avarice; mean ava- sordid-, sordid.  
rice.
2. To AS-SORT goods; to distri- sort-, lot.  
bute into lots or sorts.

---

1. sordes, sordis, *filth.* sordidus, *filthy.* 2. sors, sortis, *lot,*  
*chance.*

## Key-words.

## Latin Roots.

3. To DISPERSE the mob; to scatter it in different directions. sparg-, spars-, } to scatter.  
sperg-, spers-, }
4. To EXPATiate; to range at large; to step out over large spaces. spati-, space.
5. An IN-SPECTOR; an officer appointed to look into work done, &c.: hence, an over-looker. a) spici-, spect-, to look.  
b) specta-, spectat-, to behold.
6. A state of DE-SPERATION; a state when hope is down; a state of despair. spera-, sperat-, to hope.
7. The SPINE; the back-bone; from the thorn-like structure of the back-bone of a fish, &c. spin-, thorn.
8. To ASPIRE to; to breathe after; to long for; to aim at (a high office, &c.). spira-, spirat-, to breathe.
9. A SPLENDID court; a shining brilliant court. splende-, to shine.
10. The SPOIL of the enemy; the booty and other property taken from an enemy. spolia, spoliat-, to rob, despoil.
11. A SPONSOR; a god-father or god-mother, who answers for a child. sponde-, to answer back; to answer.
12. SPONTANEOUS combustion; properly, voluntary burning; the taking fire and being consumed without any application of fire; the taking fire from within oneself. spont-, (one's own) accord.
1. Sordidly, sordidness.
2. Assortment. To consort (to cast in one's lot with; to keep company with).
3. Dispersion, dispersedness. To asperse (to scatter calumny; to calumniate). Aspersio. To intersperse (to scatter among).
4. Expatriator. Space (local range or extension). Spacious, spaciouly.
5. Despicable (fit to be looked down upon). To expect (to look out for). Expectance, expectation. To inspect (to look into). Inspection. Introspection (a looking into the inside). Perspicuous (that

---

3. spargere, sparsi, sparsum, to scatter; to sprinkle. 4. spatium, a space. 5. specio (obsol.); aspicio, aspexi, aspectum, to see; to behold. 6. spes, spei, hope. sperare, speravi, speratum, to hope. 7. spina, a thorn. 8. spirare, to breathe. 9. splendēre (splendui), to shine. 10. spoliare, to despoil; to rob. 11. spondēre, spondendi, sponsum, to promise solemnly. 12. sponte, of free will.



can be looked through; clear). *Perspicuity*. *Prospect* (a looking out before). *Prospectively*. To *respect* (have regard to; to reverence). *Respectful*, *respectable*. *Respective* (looking to what is peculiar in each case). *Respectively*. *Retrospect* (a looking back). *Retrospection*, *retrospective*. To *suspect* (to look up from beneath). *Suspicion*, *suspiciously*. *Aspect* (a look). *Auspice* (originally, a looking at birds for omens: *au-* for *avi-*). *Auspicious*. *Circumspect* (looking round: hence, *cautious*). *Circumspection*. *Conspicuous* (open to the look: hence, *marked*). *Conspicuously*. A *spectator* (one who looks). A *spectacle* (the thing looked at). *Specular* (having the appearance of a looking-glass). To *speculate* (to look through with the mind; to meditate). *Speculative*, *speculation*. *Specious* (pleasing to the look). *Specimen* (portion to be looked at as a sample).

6. In English, *-spair*, *-sper*. *Desperate*, *despairingly*, *desperation*. To *prosper* (to hope forward). *Prosperous*, *prosperously*, *prosperity*, *unprosperous*.

7. The *spinal* marrow (the marrow in the spine).


8. *Aspiration*, *aspirant*. To *aspire* (to pronounce with full breath). To *conspire* (to breathe together; used of agreeing in a plot). *Conspiracy*, *conspirator*. To *expire* (to breathe out; to breathe one's last). *Expiration*. To *inspire* (to breathe into: used of breathing Divine knowledge into the holy penmen). *Inspiration*. *Inspirable*. To *perspire* (to breathe through the pores). *Perspiration*. To *respire* (to breathe back: opp. to *inspire*, to breathe in: then to breathe generally). *Respiratory*, *respirator*, *respiration*. To *respire* (to under-breathe; to fetch a long deep breath; to sigh. *Shakesp.*) *Suppiration*.

9. *Splendidly*. *Splendour* (resplendent; very brilliant). *Resplendence*.

10. *Spoiler*. To *despoil* (to take by force). *Despoiler*, *despoliation*. To *spoliate* (to take by force). *Spoliation*.

11. To *respond* (to answer). *Responsive*. To *correspond* (to answer reciprocally; that is, the one with the other). What is to *correspond* by letter? (to exchange letters.) One thing *corresponds* to another (is its counterpart). *Correspondent*, *correspondence*.

12. *Spontaneously*, *spontaneousness*.

 To *inspissate* (to make thick; from *spissus*, thick). *Inspissation*.

## LESSON XC.

### Key-words.

### Latin Roots.


- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. SQUALID looks; <i>dirty</i> , <i>haggard</i> looks. | squale-, to be stiff with dirt; to be <i>dirty</i> .           |
| 2. THE CONSTITUTION; the established government.       | statu-, statut- } to place; to establish.<br>stitu-, stitut- } |

1. *squalere*, to be stiff (especially with dirt). 2. *statuere*, *statui*, *statutum*, to place; to set up; to appoint.

**Key-words.****Latin Roots.**

3. A CONSTELLATION; a *cluster of stars*. stell-, stella-.
4. PROSTRATE on the ground; *laid out, spread out at full length on the ground*. stern-, strat-, to *stretch on the ground*.
5. a) To EXTINGUISH a fire; to quench it; put it out. a) stingu-, stinct- (almost obs.), to *extinguish*.  
b) To DISTINGUISH; to mark a difference; to mark an object out, or to discern one from another. b) stingu-, stinct- (obs.), to *prick*.
6. His DESTINATION; the place that it is *fixed* he is to go to. stina-, stinat- (*only in compounds*), to *place*; to *fix*.
7. STIPEND; settled-pay. stip-, a *money contribution*.
8. To STIPULATE; to bargain; since in old times the parties to a covenant either *broke a straw*; or, in contracts about property, held a straw, as a representative of the estate. Others derive it from *stipare*; others from (*stips*), *stipis*. stipul-, a *straw*.
9. To EXTIRPATE; to root out. stirp-, lower part of the stock (with the root).
10. An OBSTREPEROUS child; a noisy, roaring child. strep-, strepit-, to *roar*; make a *loud noise*.
11. A STRINGENT rule; a rule that binds tightly; a strict rule. string-, strict-, to *bind*; *compress*.
12. To CONSTRUCT a bridge; to build (properly, to arrange the materials together). stru-, struct-, to *pile together*; to *build*.
2. Constitution, constitutional, constitutive, constituent. Destitute (placed away from; deprived of). Destitution. To institute (to make to stand in; to found or establish). Institution, institutive, institutor. A prostitute (one who places herself forth; a strumpet). To prostitute (to apply any thing to base uses). Prostitution. To substitute (to cause to stand in place of another). Substitution. Statute (a standing law). Statutable. Restitution (the act of causing things to stand as they did; restoration).

3. stella, a star. 4. sternere, stravi, stratum, to spread; strew.  
5. a) stinguere, stinxi, stinctum (poet.) for exstinguere, to extinguish.  
b) stinguere, stinxi, stinctum (στίξω), to prick (obs.). 6. stinare (obs.), to fix. 7. stips (nom. not found), stipis, a money contribution.  
8. stipula, straw; stubble. 9. stirps, stirpis, root; stem; stock. 10. strepere, strepui, strepitum, to make a noise. 11. stringere, strinxi, strictum, to grasp; to bind. 12. struere, struxi, structum, to heap up; to build.

3. *Stellar* (relating to the stars). *Stellate* (pointed in the manner of a painted star). *Stellation* (emission of light as from a star). *Stelliferous* (having stars).
  4. *Prostration* (the falling or being knocked flat down; hence, the utter exhaustion of one's strength, &c.). *Stratum* (a layer). *Substratum* (an under layer). To *stratify* (to form in layers). *Consternation* (the being struck all of a heap with wonder or alarm).
  5. *Distinguishable*. *Distinct* (marked out as separate). A *distinction* (a difference). A person of *distinction* (one marked out by his rank). *In'-stinct* (a sense pricked in, as it were, into some animals; knowledge printed deep in their minds, without the intervention of reason). *Instinctive*. Hence, also, *sti-mulus* (a prick, urging one forwards), and to *stimulate*. To *in-stig-ate* (to prick a man on to do something).
  6. *Destiny* (fixed fate). To *predestine* (to fix a man's fate before-hand). *Predestination*. A *predestinarian* (a believer in predestination). *Obstinate* (fixed in resolution). , *Obstinately*.
  7. *Stipendiary* (receiving settled pay).
  8. *Stipulation, stipulator*. Hence *stubble*, for *stipule*.
  9. a) *Extinction*; b) *extirpation, extirpator*.
  10. *Obstreperous, obstreperously, obstreperousness*.
  11. To *astringe* (to bind or draw together). *Astringent, astringency*. To *astrict* (to bind or contract). *Astriction, astrictive*. To *constringe* (to bind together; to compress). *Constriction, constrictor*. To *constrain* (to bind together; to compel). *Constraint, constrainable*. To *restrain* (to hold back). *Restrainer, restraint*. To *restrict* (to hold back or limit). *Restriction, restrictive*. *Strait* (bound up; narrow). To *straiten, straitness*.—*Strict* (bound, confined to some precise rule). *Strictness, strictly*. A *stricture* (lit. the pulling a man up tight; a critical censure. 2. A diseased tightening of some passage in the body).
  12. *Construction, constructive, constructure*. To *destroy* (to unbuild; to throw down). *Destruction, destructive, destroyer, destroyable, destructiveness, indestructible*. To *instruct* (to build up by information or education). *Instruction, instructive, instructor*. *Instrument* (a tool or machine put together as a means of accomplishing a task). To *obstruct* (to heap up in front of). *Obstruction, obstructor, obstructuent*. *Stricture* (a building). *Substruction* (under building). To *superstruct* (to build upon). *Superstruction, superstructure*. To *construe* (to place the words together so as to give their meaning in English).
-  *Spum- (foam)*. To *despumate* (to throw off in foam). *Despumation*.—*Squam- (a scale)*. *Squamous* (covered with scales).

## LESSON XCI.

*Key-words.**Latin Roots.*

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. He STUDIES to please; he desires or endeavours to please.   | stude-, to apply eagerly to; to study. |
| 2. He is STUPEFIED (or STUPIFIED); he is astounded.  | stupe-, to be astounded.               |
| 3. To PERSUADE a man; to induce him by advice.   | suade-, suas-, to advise.              |
| 4. A SUBLIME poem; a very elevated one, of a very high kind, with strikingly noble words and sentiments.     | sublim-, elevated; sublime.            |
| 5. A SUDORIFIC; a medicine that causes perspiration.   | suda-, sudat-, to sweat.               |
| 6. The law has fallen into DESUETUDE; has gone out of use; is no longer customarily appealed to.             | suesc-, suet-, to be accustomed.       |
| 7. To ASSUME too much; to take too much for granted; also, to take too much upon oneself; to take liberties. | sūm-, sumpt-, to take.                 |
| 8. Our SUPERIORS; those above ourselves in character, rank, &c., especially used of superiors in rank.       | supr-, above.<br>super-, upper.        |
| 9. "If the vine On rising hills be placed SUPINE," leaning against the hills.                                | supīn-, lying on one's back.           |

## T.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 10. A TABERNACLE; a tent or moveable dwelling.                         | tabern-, a booth.                      |
| 11. A TABLE-land; a flat surface of (generally) high land.             | tabul-, a plank.                       |
| 12. TACIT approbation; silent approbation (implied but not expressed). | tace- } to hold one's tongue.<br>tice- |

1. *Studiosus, studiously.* A student (one who studies). *Unstudied.*

1. studēre, studui, to study; to endeavour. 2. stupēre, stupui, to be senseless; to be stupefied. 3. suadēre, suasi, suatum, to persuade; to advise. 4. sublimis, lofty, sublime. 5. sudare, to sweat; to drop. 6. suescere, suevi, suetum, to use; to be accustomed. 7. sumere, sumpsit, sumptum, to take. 8. superus, upper; superior, higher; supremus, highest. 9. supinus, lifted up, with the face upward. 10. taberna, a shed or shop. 11. tabula, a board; a table. 12. tacēre, tacui, tacitum, to keep silence.

2. *Stupidity*. To *stupefy* (to deprive of sense). *Stupefaction*. *Stupendous* (affecting the senses). *Stupendously*.
3. *Persuasive*, *persuasion*, *persuadable*, *persuatory*. To *dissuade* (to advise against). *Dissuasion*, *dissuasive*.
4. *Sublimely*, *sublimity*. To *sublimate* (to raise by heat). *Sublimation*, *sublimable*.
5. *Sudorific* (causing sweat). To *exude* (to sweat out). *Exudation*. To *transude* (to pass through in sweat). *Transudation*.
6. *Assuefaction* (the act of accustoming). *Desuetude* (cessation from being usual).
7. *Assumption*, *assumptive*. To *consume* (to take quite up; hence, to use all up; to destroy). *Consumer*, *consumptive*. A *consumption* (a disease that gradually consumes a person's strength; a decline). *Inconsumable*. To *presume* (to take before as a thing granted). *Presumable*, *presumption*, *presumptuously*. To *resume* (to take back). *Resumption*, *resumable*.
8. *Superiority*. *Insurmountable* (that cannot be overcome). *Insurmountably*. *Superable* (that can be overcome). *Supreme* (highest). *Supremely*, *supremacy*.
9. *Supinely*, *supineness*, *supination*, *supinity*. *Resupination* (the act of lying on the back).
10. *Tabernacular*. A *tavern*.
11. *Tabular*. To *tabulate* (to shape with flat surfaces). *Tablet* (a small flat surface). To *contabulate* (to make a flat surface with boards laid down). *Contabulation*. *Tablature* (painting on flat surfaces, such as walls and ceilings).
12. *Tacitly*. *Taciturnity* (habitual silence). *Reticence* (concealment by silence).

 *Absurd* comes from *surdus*, deaf.

## LESSON XCII.

### Key-words.

### Latin Roots.

1. To RETALIATE; to return tal-, such (as).  
like for like.
2. Is this disease communicated by CONTACT? by touching? tang-, tact- } to touch.  
ting-, tact- }  
[A shorter root still is the original one; tag-, tig-.]
3. A TARDY acknowledgement; one that is made late. tard-, slow.
4. A TEDIOUS journey; a wearying, irksome one. tæde-, to be disgusted at; weary of.
5. To DETECT; to remove the teg-, tect-, to cover.  
cover from; to discover.

---

1. talis, such like. 2. tangere, tetigi, tactum, to touch; to reach. 3. tardus, slow. 4. tædet, tæduit, to be weary. tædium, weariness. 5. tegere, texi, tectum, to cover; to hide.

## Key-words.

## Latin Roots.

6. He paid the penalty of his **TEMERITY**; of his *rashness*. **temer-, rashly.**
7. To **CONTEMN** order; to **despise** it. **temn-, to despise.**
8. To **TEMPER** *justice* with *mercy*; to *mix* them in *due proportion*. **tempera-, temperat-, to mix in due proportion.**
9. A **TEMPORARY** arrangement; one intended for a *time* only; a provisional arrangement. **tempor-, time.**
10. To **EXTEND** the line; to *stretch it out*. **tend-, tens-, to extend; to stretch.**
11. **TENEBOUS**; dark. **tenebr-, darkness.**
12. That ground is not **TENABLE**; cannot be *held*. **tene-, tent-, to hold.**
1. *Retaliation, retaliatory.* To *tally* (to be like another).
2. *Contiguous* (touching). *Contiguity.* *Contagion* (a communicating by the touch). *Contagious.* *Contingent* (touching by chance; *casual*). *Contingency, contingently.* A *contingent* (the portion which most nearly *touches* a man, *viz.* that which *he* has to pay for or provide). *Tangible* (that can be touched). *Tangibility.* *Tangent* (a line that *touches* a curve, without cutting it). *Tact* (touch; then, the fine sense that *feels* what is true or right, without reasoning about it). *Tactile* (that cannot be touched).
3. *Tardiness, tardily.* To *retard* (to make slow). *Retardation.* *Tardigradous* (moving slow).
4. *Tediously, tediousness.* *Tedium* (weariness).
5. *Detection, detector.* To *protect* (to cover over an object when danger is at hand). *Protection, protective, protector.* *Tegument* (a covering). *Integument* (a cover or wrapper).
6. *Temerarious* (rash).
7. *Contemner.* *Contempt, contemptible, contemptuous, contemptuously.*
10. *Extendible, extension, extensive, extensiveness, extent.* To *attend* (to stretch oneself or one's mind towards). *Attendance, attendant.* *Attention* (a stretching towards). *Attentive.* To *distend* (to stretch apart). *Distention, distensible.* To *intend* (to have a *fixed*, opposed to a *lax*, purpose to do something; to mean). *Intention, intentionally.* *Intense* (stretched out; strained to a great degree). *Intensive, intenseness, intension.* *Intent* (bent upon; having one's faculties *strained*). *Intently, intentness.* To *pretend* (to stretch forward). *Pretender, pretension.* To *prolend* (to stretch forth). To *subtend* (to stretch under). To *superintend* (to stretch over; overlook). *Superintendence.* *Tendency* (a stretching towards). To *tend, tender* (a stretch or offer made). *Tendon* (a cord of fibres by which a

- 
6. *temere, rashly.* 7. *temnere* (mostly *con-temnere, -tempai, -temptum*), to *contemn*; to *despise*. 8. *temperare, to mix; to temper.* 9. *tempus, temporis, time.* 10. *tendere, tetendi, tensum, to stretch.* 11. *tenebræ, darkness.* 12. *tenēre, tenui, tentum, to hold.*

- limb is *hung* to [*i. e.* fastened to] a bone). *Tense* (stretched tight). *Tenseness, tension*. *Tent* (a portable dwelling of stretched canvas). *To contend* (to stretch forth together). *Contention, contentious, contentiousness*. *Tenter* (a hook on which things are stretched).
11. *Tenebrosity. Obtenebration* (the state of being darkened).
12. *Tenacious* (holding fast). *Tenaciously, tenacity. Tenancy* (a holding). *Tenant* (a holder). *Tenanted, tenantable, tenantry, tenantless. Tenement* (property that may be held; a house, &c.). *Tendril* (a holder or clasper of a vine or other climbing plant). *Tenet* (opinion held). *Tenure* (the manner or condition of holding). *Tenour* (way held or pursued). *To abstain* (to hold oneself from). *Abstinence, abstinent. Abstemious* (holding back from; habitually holding the appetite in check). *Abstemiousness. To contain* (to hold or hold in). *Containable. To continue* (to hold on or together; hence, to go on). *Continually, continuance. To detain* (to hold from). *Detainer, detention. To obtain* (to get hold of). *Obtainable, obtainment. To pertain; to appertain* (to hold to; to belong). *Appertenance, or appurtenance. Pertinacious* (holding fast to a purpose or opinion). *Pertinacity. To retain* (to hold back). *Retainer, retention, retentive, retinue. To sustain* (to hold up from under). *Sustainer, sustenance, sustentation. Unsustainable. Continent* (habitually containing one's appetites). *A continent* (continuous land; main-land). *Continence, continently. To entertain* (1. to keep a person hospitably within one's walls: 2. to keep him from wishing to go, by amusing him). *Entertainment. Lieutenant* (one who holds in lieu of another).

## LESSON XCIII.

### Key-words.

### Latin Roots.

- |   |                  |  |
|---|------------------|--|
| 1. Patent   | ANTI - ATTRITION | tēr- trit-, to rub.  |
| wheels; wheels that resist the being rubbed away.               |                  |  |
| 2. An ATTENUATED visage; a visage reduced to extreme thinness.  |                  | tenu-, thin.   |
| 3. A TEPID bath; a rather lukewarm bath.                        |                  | a) tepe-, to be (rather) warm.<br>b) tepid-, lukewarm; warm. |
| 4. It has ABSTERSIVE properties; cleansing properties.          |                  | terge-, ters-, to wipe; to scour.                            |
| 5. The TERMINATION of the whole affair; the limit or end of it. |                  | termin-, limit, end.   |
| 6. The TERRESTRIAL globe; the globe of the earth.               |                  | terr-, earth.  |

---

1. terere, trivi, tritum, to rub (away). 2. tenuis, thin. 3. tepere, tepui, to be warm. tepidus, warm. 4. tergeo and tergo, tersi, tersum, to make clean. 5. terminus, a bound, a limit. 6. terra, the earth.

## Key-words.

## Latin Roots.

7. To DETER a man; to stop him by fear; to frighten him from a purpose. terre-, to frighten.
  8. To ATTEST a fact; to bear witness to it. test-, a witness.
  9. A fine TEXTURE; woven stuff of fine quality. tex-, text-, to weave.
  10. THURIFEROUS; incense-bearing. thur-, frankincense.
  11. Is he TIMID? Is he fearful? time-, to fear.
  12. To TINGE the water with blue; to stain it slightly. ting-, tinct-, to wet; to tinge; to dye.
2. *Attenuation*. To *extenuate* (to make thin; to lessen a fault). *Extenuation*. *Tenuity* (thinness). *Tenuifolious* (having thin leaves).
3. *Tepidity*.
4. *Abstergent*, *abstersive*. To *deterge* (to cleanse). *Detergent*. A *terse* style (one from which all clumsy excrescences are rubbed off). *Tersely*, *terseness*.
5. To *terminate* (to end). *Terminative*, *terminator*. *Conterminous* (having the same boundaries, neighbouring; of nations, tribes, &c.). To *determine* (to come to an end). What is *to determine* to do a thing? (to set it down as a *fixed* thing; to resolve firmly). *Determination* (1. a resolution: 2. *fixedness* of purpose: resolution = *resolute* character). *Determinately*. *Disterninate* (separated by bounds). To *exterminate* (to drive beyond the boundaries; to make an end of). *Extermination*, *exterminator*. *Interminable* (that cannot be bounded; that is or seems endless). *Term* (a limit). *Termless* (without a limit).
6. *Terrigenous* (born on the earth). *Territory* (property in land). *Territorial*. A *terrier* (an account of land). Has *terrier* no other meaning? (Yes: a dog that is a good one for going into fox-earths, &c.). *Terr-aqueous* (consisting of land and water). *Conterraneous* (of the same land). To *inter* (to put in the earth; to bury). *Interment*; to *disinter*. *Subterraneous* (under the earth). *Superterrestrial* (above the earth). The *Mediterranean* (the sea that is in the middle of the lands of the Eastern Hemisphere).
7. *Determent*. To *terrify* (to frighten). *Terrific*, *terrible*, *terroure*, *undeterred*.
8. *Attestation*. To *testify* (to witness). *Testification*. *Testimony* (proof by witness; evidence). *Testimonial*, *unattested*. To *protest* (to witness against; to object to by a solemn declaration). *Protestation*. A *protestant* (one who protests against the corruptions of the Church of Rome). *Testament* (a will duly attested by witnesses). *Intestate* (not having made a will). *Testamentary*. To *detest* (to

---

7. *terrēre*, *terrui*, *territum*, to frighten. 8. *testis*, a witness. 9. *texere*, *texui*, *textum*, to weave. 10. *thus*, *thuris*, frankincense. 11. *timēre*, *timui*, to fear. *timidus*, fearful. 12. *tingere*, *tinxi*, *tinctum*, to dye; to stain.



call a person to witness that we throw a thing *from us*: hence, to reject with abhorrence; to hate).

9. *Textile* (that can be woven). *Textrine* (relating to weaving). The *context* (the passages which are so woven into one piece with that which we are considering, that they necessarily affect its meaning). *Contexture*. A *pretext* (a web of alleged reasons or excuses, held before us for concealment: a pretended reason). *Intertexture* (the act of weaving in among). *Text* (literally, that which is woven). *Textual*, *textuary*.

10. *Thurification* (a perfuming with incense).  
11. *Timid*, *timidly*, *timidity*, *timorousness*. To *intimidate* (to cause to fear). *Intimidation*.  
12. *Tincture* (a staining). *Tint* (a stain). To *tint* (to stain or colour lightly). To *taint* (to stain or tarnish). *Untainted*. To *attaint* (to stain the blood). *Attainder*, *attainture*.

 *Thurible* (an incense-burner or censor).

## LESSON XCIV.

### Key-words.

### Latin Roots.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. To TITILLATE the ears; to tickle them.                                   | titilla-, titillat-, to tickle.             |
| 2. A TITLE; a claim; a note denoting rank.                                  | titul-, inscription, title.                 |
| 3. To TOLERATE errors; to endure them.                                      | tolera-, tolerat-, to bear; endure.         |
| 4. To EXTOL the general; to elevate; to raise him in estimation; to praise. | toll-, to lift up; to raise.                |
| 5. To be AS-TON-ISHED; to be thunder-struck, greatly surprised.             | tona-, tonit-, to thunder.                  |
| 6. A TORPID animal; an animal in its winter sleep; benumbed.                | torpe- } to be numb or torpid.<br>torpid- } |
| 7. The TORRID zone; the zone parched or dried up by heat.                   | torre-, to parch.                           |
| 8. To DISTORT the facts; to twist or turn them away.                        | torque-, tort-, tors-, to twist.            |
| 9. The TOTAL; the whole amount.   | tot-, whole.                                |
| 10. To INTOXICATE a man; to   | toxic-, a poison for arrows.                |

1. titillare, to tickle. 2. titulus, title. 3. tolerare, to bear; to endure. 4. tollere, sustulit, sublatus, to take or lift up; to elevate. 5. tonare, tonui, tonitum, to thunder; to make a noise. 6. torpère, torpui, to be benumbed; to be slow. torpidus, slow; dull. 7. torrère, torrui, to parch. 8. torquère, torsi, tortum, to twist. 9. totus, a, um (gen.-ius), whole. 10. toxicum, poison in which arrows were dipped.

## Key-words.

## Latin Roots.

affect him with the *poison* of spirituous liquors.

11. To DETRACT from a person's merits; to try to *draw away* something from them; to *depreciate* them (malevolently).  
 12. A TRANQUIL mind; a *calm* mind; a mind at peace.

## 1. Titillation.

2. To *entitle* (to give a name to; to give a *right* to). To *disentitle*. *Titular* (consisting of a name or title only).

3. *Toleration*, *tolerable*, *tolerant*, *intolerant*, *intolerance*. *Intolerable* (that cannot be endured). *Intolerableness*.

4. *Extoller* (one who praises). *Toll* (contribution raised; a payment *levied*).

5. *Tonic* (relating to sound). To *intone* (to utter a sound). *Intonation*. *Monotone* (a single sound). *Monotonous*, *monotony*. *Oxytone* (a sharp sound). *Semitone* (half a sound). *Semitonic*. To *detonate* (to explode with a loud noise like *thunder*). *Detonation*. To *astonish* or *astound* (to surprise as a *clap of thunder* does).

6. *Torpidity*, *torpidness*, *torpitude*. *Torpor* (state of being benumbed). A *torpêdo* (a fish that benumbs those who touch it).

7. *Torridness*. *Torrefaction*. A *torrent* (a violent stream, *boiling* and *bubbling* in its course).

8. *Distortion*. To *contort* (to twist together). *Contortion*. To *detort* (to twist or turn from). *Detortion*. To *extort* (to twist out; to *wring* from a person by importunity or other violence). *Extortion*, *extortioner*. To *retort* (to turn back an argument or accusation against one's opponent). *Retortion*. *Torsion* (the act of twisting). *Tortile* (twisted). *Tortuous* (twisted; winding; crooked; not straightforward). *Torture* (literally, a twisting; a violent wrenching of the limbs). *Torment* (a twisting; excruciating pain). *Tormentor*.

## 9. Totally, totality.

## 10. Intoxication.

11. From this root come a great number of English words (1) several with the change of *t* into the kindred mute *d* to *draw*; [*to drag*; a *dray*, a *draught*; *draft*]. (2) *trace*, *track*, *tract*, *trail*, *train*; to *treat*; a *treatise*. To *abstract* (to *draw off*; to form a notion by separating from it all connected notions or appearances that do not belong to it). An *abstract* notion (a notion *considered apart* from other connected notions; as, for instance, the *solidity* of any substance apart from its *colour*, *size*, &c.). What is an *abstract* of a book? (the principal contents *drawn off* from what is less important; an epitome or summary). What is the faculty of *abstraction*? (the faculty of attending only to the notion one wishes to consider, so as to *draw*

---

11. trahere, traxi, tractum, to draw. 12. tranquillus, calm, quiet, sedate.

this off from the connected notions or appearances). A fit of *abstraction* (a musing fit; the mind being *drawn off* from what is going on about it). To *attract* (to draw to: hence, to entice others). *Attractive, attraction*. To *contract* (to draw together). *Contraction*. A *contract* (an agreement *drawn up jointly* by two parties). A *contractor*. *Detraction, detractor*. To *distract* (to draw apart: hence, to *disperse* the attention). To *be distracted* (to be dragged asunder, as it were; to be pulled this way and that, till one is beside oneself). *Distractedly* (like a *distracted* person). *Distraction*. To *extract* (to draw out). *Extraction*. A person's *extraction* (the origin from which he is drawn; his family). *Extractor*. *Tractable* (that can be handled or managed). *Tractableness, tractably*. *Intractable* (that cannot be handled or managed). *Intractably*. A *tract* of country (an *extended space* of country). A *tract* on divorce (a short work in which the subject of divorce is treated of). A *tractate* (a *treatise*). *Tractation*. *Tractile* (that can be drawn out). *Tractility*. *Traction* (the act of drawing). To *subtract* (to under-draw; to draw from beneath). *Subtraction, subtractive*. To *protract* (to draw out or lengthen in time). *Protractive, protraction*.

12. *Tranquillity*; to *tranquillize*.

## LESSON XCV.

### Key-words.

### Latin Roots.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. A TREM-ULOUS motion; a trembling motion.  | a) trem-, to tremble.<br>b) trepid-, trembling. |
| 2. a) "A lofty tower with TREBLE walls;" with threefold walls.<br>b) A TRI-PLE crown; a three-fold crown.                | a, b) tre-, tri-, three.                        |
| c) A TERTIAN fever; a fever the fit of which returns every third day.  | c) terti-, third.                               |
| 3. A TRIBE; a body of people (properly, the division of a nation into three clans).                                      | tribu-, tribe.                                  |
| 4. TRIBUTE-money, that which is given or paid by a conquered nation to its conquerors to give amongst different persons. | tribu-, tribut-, to give to; to allot.          |
| 5. A TRIUMPH (properly, the procession of a victorious general and his army).  | triumph-, triumph.                              |

---

1. tremere, tremui, to tremble. trepidus, fearful. 2. tres, tria, three. 3. tribus, a tribe. 4. tribuere, tribui, tributum, to give; to pay; to allot. 5. triumphus, a triumph.


**Key-words.****Latin Roots.**

6. If I **INTRUDE**; I beg pardon for my **INTRUSION**; for my *thrusting in* of myself; for forcing my company upon you. **trud-**, **trus-**, to *thrust*.
7. The leaves are **TRUNCATED**; are *lopt off*, as it were. a) **trunc-**, *maimed*.  
b) **trunc-**, *trunk of a tree from which the boughs are lopt*.
8. A **TUBE**; a *pipe*. **tub-**, a *pipe*; *tube*.
9. An **INTUITIVE** perception of truth; a power of *seeing into* it, as it were, without reasoning or strict proof. **tue-**, **tuit-** (1) to *gaze at*; to *behold*. (2) to *regard and protect*.
10. A **TUMID** orator; a *swelling* bombastic orator. **tume-**, to *swell out*; to *be swollen*.
11. To **DISTURB**; to *throw into confusion* what was at peace or at rest; to *disquiet*. **turb-**, *crowd, disturbance*.
12. A **TURGID** style; a *swollen* or *inflated* style. **turge-**, to *swell*.
1. *Tremblingly, trembler. Tremour* (state of trembling). *Tremulous* (trembling). *Tremendous* (causing to tremble). *Trepidation* (state of trembling). *Intrepid* (not given to trembling; brave). *Intrepidity, intrepidly*.
2. A *trivet* (a three-legged vessel). *Triad* (the union of three). *Trefoil* (a three-leaved plant). *Triangle, triangular, &c.*
3. *Tribune* (an officer chosen by the people). *Tribunal* (the judgement-seat of a tribe; judgement-seat). *Tribunitial*.
4. *Tributary. To attribute* (to assign or ascribe). *Attribution, attributable. To contribute* (to give with others). *Contribution, contributory. To distribute* (to give in parts; to divide into portions and give the portions). *Distribution. To redistribute. Retribution* (requital). *Retributive*.
6. *Intrusion, intrusive, intruder. To extrude* (to thrust out). *Extrusion. To obtrude* (to thrust upon). *Obtrusion, obtruder, obtrusively. To protrude* (to thrust forward). *Protrusive, unobtrusive. Abstruse* (thrust out of sight). *Abstrusely*.
7. *Truncation. To detruncate* (to lop off). *Detruncation, trunk. Truncheon*.
8. *Tubular, tubulated. Tubulous* (in the form of a pipe).
9. (1) *Intuition, intuitively. (2) Tutor* (a defender or protector). *Tutorage, tutorship, tuition. Tutelage* (protection, guardianship). *Tutelary* (protecting, guarding).

---

6. *trudere, trusi, trisum, to thrust.* 7. *truncus, cut short; maimed. truncare, to cut shorter; to lop off.* 8. *tubus, a conduit, pipe; a tube.* 9. *tueri, tuitum or tutum, (1) to see; (2) to defend; to keep.* 10. *tumēre, tumui, to swell. tumidus, swollen.* 11. *turba, a crowd.* 12. *turgēre (turvi), to swell.*

10. *Tumidly, tumidness.* *Tumour* (a swelling). *Contumacy* (a swelling against; obstinacy, disobedience to a court of justice). *Contumely* (insulting arrogance). *Contumacious, contumelious, contumeliously.* *Intumescence* (a swelling). *Tumult* (a swelling of the multitude). *Tumultuous, tumultuously.* To *tump* (to cause the earth to swell round the foot of a tree). A *tomb* (a swelling or mound of earth). To *entomb*.
11. *Disturbance, disturber.* To *perturb, or perturbate* (to disquiet). *Perturbation.* *Turbid* (confused). *Turbidness.* *Turbulent* (disquiet). *Turbulence, turbulently.* *Turmoil* (confusion).
12. *Turgidly, turgidity.* *Turgescence* (the act of swelling). *Inturgescence.*

 *Contumacy, contumely, &c.,* are, however, more probably derived from *con*, and *tem-*, a shorter root of *temn-*, to *despise*, than from *tume-*, to *swell*.

## LESSON XCVI.

### Key-words.

### Latin Roots.

1. A CONTUSION; the *pounding together* of one's limbs; a severe *bruise*.      tund-, tus-, to *pound*; to *bruise*.
2. A TYRANT; an absolute and cruel monarch.      tyrann-, tyrant.

### U.

3. EXUBERANT fertility; fertility *overflowing* with abundance.      uber-, the *mother's breast*; hence, fertility.
4. AN ULCER; a sore.      ulcer-, ulcer.
5. UMBRAGEOUS walks; *shady* walks.      umbr-, shade; shadow.
6. The UNDULATIONS of a fluid; its *waves*.      und-, wave.
7. "Extreme UNCTION;" the act of anointing a dying man.      ung-, unct-, to *anoint*, (for *anoyunct*.)
8. The UNITY of the faith; the *oneness* of the faith.      un-, one.
9. A SUBURB; the building streets, &c., *under* (but outside) the walls of a city.      urb-, city.

---

1. tundere, tutūdi, tunsum, or tusum, to *pound*; to *beat*. 2. tyrannus, a *tyrant*. 3. uber, n. an *udder*. ūber, *fruitful*. 4. ulcus, ulceris, n. a *sore*. 5. umbra, shade. 6. unda, wave; water. 7. ungere, or unguere, unxi, unctum, to *anoint*. 8. unus, one. 9. urbs, a *city*.

## Key-words.

## Latin Roots.

10. To URGE a request; to *press* urge-, to *press*; to *urge*.  
it.
11. COM-B-USTIBLES; substances *ūr-*, *ust-*, to *burn*.  
that *burn* easily; that readily  
take fire.
12. To USE; to employ for a pur- *ūt-*, *ūs-*, to *use*.  
pose.
1. *Obtuse* (with the edge beaten; blunt). *Obtuseness*. *Pertused* (beaten through; beaten into holes). *Pertusion*. To *obtund* and to *re-tund* (to beat the edge; to blunt).
2. *Tyrannical*, *tyranny*. To *tyrannize* (to be cruel and oppressive).  
*Tyrannous*, *tyrannically*.
3. *Exuberance*, *exuberantly*. To *exuberate* (to abound in the highest degree).
4. To *ulcerate* (to make sore). *Ulcerous*, *ulceration*. To *exulcerate* (to produce an ulcer). *Exulceration*.
5. An *umbrella* (a little *shade*, or defence from the sun or rain). To *obumbrate* (to shade). *Obumbration*. The *penumbra* (almost a shade; the space bordering on the perfect shade or darkness—in an eclipse). To *adumbrate* (to give a faint shadow or likeness).
6. *Undulating* (swelling; with rising ground and hollows alternately). *Undulation* (wave-like motion). To *inundate* (to bring the waters upon). *Inundation* (flood; deluge). To *abound* (to overflow like water). *Abundant*, *abundantly*, *abundance*. To *redound* (to return like a flood of water). *Redundant*, *redundantly*. *Superabundant*.
7. *Unctuous*, *unctuousness*. An *unguent* (ointment).
8. *Unit* (one). To *unite* (to make one). To *co-unite*. To *disunite* (to make no longer one). To *reunite* (to make one again).
9. *Suburban*. *Urbane* (polite, as *city-folks* should be). *Urbanity*.
10. *Urgent*, *urgently*, *urgency*, *urget*.
11. *Combustible*. *Adust* (burnt up; dry). *Adustion*. *Ustion* (the act of burning).
12. *Utility* (usefulness). *Inutility* (uselessness). A *utensil* (a thing for use). To *abuse* (to make an ill use of; to *abuse* a man is to *rail* at him). To *disuse* (to cease from using). To *misuse* (to use in a wrong manner). To *peruse* (to use throughout; to read through). *Usual* (as is commonly used). *Usage* (the act of using). *Useful* (being of good use). *Useless*. *Usury* (profit upon the use of money).

- 
10. *urgēre*, *ursi*, to *press on*; to *urge*. 11. *uro*, *ussi*, *ustum*, to *burn*.  
12. *utor*, *uti*, *usus sum*, to *have the use of*; to *use*.

## LESSON XCVII.

*Key-words.**Latin Roots.*

1. An **UXORIOUS** husband; one who is foolishly fond of a *wife*, so as to spoil her, and be her slave. **uxor-, wife.**

## V.

2. **VACCINE** inoculation; inoculation with the *cow-pox* as a safe-guard against the small-pox. **vacc-, cow.**
3. To **VACATE** an office; to make it empty; to resign it. **a) vacu-, empty.**  
**b) vaca-, vacat-, to be empty.**
4. A **VACILLATING** mind; a *wavering*, undecided mind. **vacilla-, vacillat-, to totter; to stagger.**
5. To **INVADE** a country; to go into it; to march into it with hostile intentions. **vad-, vas-, to go; to march.**
6. A **VAGRANT**; a pauper who wanders about to beg. **vaga-, vagat-, to wander.**
7. To **AVAIL** much; to have much strength; to have power (with a person). **vale-, to be strong; to avail.**
8. A wide **INTERVAL**; a wide space. **vall-, a rampart.**
9. To **VANISH**; to disappear; to retire into *empty* space. **van-, empty; unsubstantial.**
10. A **VAPID** composition; a *tasteless*, spiritless composition. **vapp-, spoiled wine.**
11. The **VAPOURS** rise from the earth; *exhalations*. **vapor-, vapour.**
12. To **PREVARICATE**; to speak in a *crooked*, quibbling manner. **var-, bent out from each other; straddling.**
1. *Uxoriously, uxoriousness.*  
2. To *vaccinate* (to inoculate with the cow-pox). *Vaccination.*  
3. *Vacation, vacancy. Vacant* (empty time; no work time; holidays). *Vacuum* (an unoccupied or empty space). *Vacuous, vacuity.*

---

1. *uxor, uxoris, a wife.* 2. *vacca, a cow.* 3. *vacare, vacavi, vacatum, to be empty; to be at leisure.* 4. *vacillare, to totter.* 5. *vadere, vasi, vasum, to march; to move.* 6. *vagus, wandering.* 7. *valère, valui, valitum, to be strong; to be in health; to avail.* 8. *vallus, a palisade.* 9. *vallum, a trench; a wall.* 10. *vanus, empty; unsubstantial.* 11. *vappas, sour wine.* 12. *vapor, vapour; steam.* 13. *varus, bent outwards; straddling.*

To *evacuate* (to empty a town, &c. of the troops that held it). *Evacuation*.

4. *Vacillation*.

5. *Invasion, invader, invasive*. To *evade* (to go out; to get out of the way of one we should meet boldly). *Evasion, evasive, evasiveness*. To *pervade* (to go through). *Pervasive, pervasion*. To *wade*.

6. *Vagrancy. Vagabond* (a wanderer). *Extravagant* (wandering beyond limits; boundless in expenses). *Extravagantly, extravagance. Multivagant* (wandering much). *Vague* (wandering; loose; not fixed, indefinite).

7. *Available*. To *prevail* (to have power). *Prevalent. Valid* (sufficient in power). *Validity. Valour* (strength of mind). *Valorous. Valiant, valiantly. Invalid* (insufficient in power; having no binding force; of documents, &c., that are not legal). *Invalidity. To invalidate* (to deprive of power). To *countervail* (to have power in a contrary direction). *Convalescent* (regaining strength; recovering). *Convalescence. A valetudinarian* (one who is not strong; is always ailing).

8. *Circumvallation* (surrounding with a wall). *Contravallation* (a wall raised in opposition to the enemy's wall). *Wall*.

9. *Vanity* (emptiness). *Evanescant* (empty). *Evanescence. Vain* (empty). *Vainly, vain-glory, vain-glorious*.

10. *Vapidness, vapidly*.

11. *Vaporous, vaporation*. To *evaporate* (to pass off in exhalation). *Evaporation*.

12. *Prevarication, prevaricator*. To *divaricate* (to bend off in divergent directions). *Divarication*.

~~13.~~ To *vaunt* does not come, as is often supposed, from *vanus*; but from *venditare*; the French *se vanter* (to boast) is the Latin *se venditare*; literally, to sell oneself, i. e. to set oneself off; to make people take one at one's own price.

## LESSON XCVIII.

### Key-words.

### Latin Roots.

1. To **VARY**; to make *diverse*; *vari-, variegated; various*.  
to change.
2. The **VASCULAR** system; the *vas-, vessel*.  
system of the body which consists of (little) *vessels*.
3. a) A **VAST** discovery! a *great, vast-, huge and unformed*: hence,  
a mighty discovery (ironical). *waste*.  
b) To **DEVASTATE**; to lay  
*waste*.

1. *varius, changeable, diverse*. 2. *vas, vasis, n. vessel; utensil*. 3. *vastus, huge; unformed; hence, waste*.



**Key-words.**

4. To VEGETATE; to spring; to grow like a *vegetable*; hence, to lead a confined dull life, like a *vegetable*, rooted to one spot.
5. A VEHEMENT speech; a strong, violent speech.
6. To CONVEY; to carry.
7. To CONVULSE a man with laughter; to pull him to pieces with laughter; to make him shake his sides with fits of laughter.
8. To DEVELOP his plans; to uncover them; to discover them gradually.
9. The VENAL blood; the blood in the veins.
10. A VENAL patriot; one who is ready to sell his services; mercenary.
11. The noble art of VENERY; of the chase; the sport of hunting.
12. The VENOM of his tongue; the poison of his tongue.

**Latin Roots.**

- a) vege- (obsol.), to set in motion.
- b) vexa-, vexat-, to prevent from resting; to tease, annoy, &c.
- vehement-, impetuous.  
[In English, -vey, -veigh.]
- veh-, vect-, to carry.  
[According to Georges, for vēmens, from ve = without, and mens.]
- vell-, vuls-, to pluck.
- vel-, sail; veil.
- ven-, vein.
- veni-, to be for sale; to be sold.
- vena-, venat-, to hunt.
- venen-, poison.
1. Variety, variance, variation, variable, variableness. Invariable (not varying; ever the same). Invariably. To variegate (to make of diverse shades or colours). Variegation.
2. Vascularity. Extravasated blood (forced out of the proper vessels).
3. Devastation, devastator, &c.
4. Vegetation, vegetable, vegetableness.
5. Vehemence (violence). Vehement, vehemently.
6. Conveyable, conveyance. A conveyancer (a lawyer who draws up the forms for conveying estates to other owners). To inveigh (to be carried against; to attack with censures). Inveigher. An invective, invectively. Vehicle (a carriage). Vehicular.
7. Convulsion, convulsively. Divulsion (the act of pulling asunder,

4. vegeo, vegēre, to be strong. vegētus, quick, strong. vexare, to vex, tease, &c. 5. vehemens, vehement; impetuous. 6. vebere, veki, vectum, to carry. 7. vellere, velli or vultsi, vulsum, to pull; to pluck. 8. velum, sail; a veil. 9. vena, a vein. 10. venco (= venum eo), to go for sale; to be sold: inf. venire. 11. venari, to hunt. 12. venenum, poison.

- away). *Revulsion* (a drawing back). To *vellicate* (to pull or pluck at intervals; to twitch).
8. In English, *-veil, -veal*. *Developement*. To *envelope* (to cover in). *Envelopement*. The *en'velope* of a letter (the *paper* cover in which it is placed). To *reveal* (to disclose by drawing a veil; to discover). *Revealer, revelation, unrevealed*. *Veil* (a covering).
9. *Venesection* (cutting a vein; bleeding).
10. *Venality*. To *vend* (to sell). *Vendible, vendor, vendibility*.
11. *Venation*. *Venison* (the beast of the chase; deer's flesh).
12. *Venomous*. To *envenom* (to poison).

**225** A *revel* (= a riotous party) is, probably, from *rab-, rabi-*, r. of words denoting madness, fury.

## LESSON XCIX.

### Key-words.

### Latin Roots.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. To VENERATE a person; to reverence him.   | venera-, venerat-, to <i>venerate</i> .                                    |
| 2. A VENIAL sin; a pardonable sin.   | veni-, indulgence; <i>pardon</i> .   |
| 3. a) PREVENIENT grace; grace coming before, to stir our wills.<br>b) The festival of ADVENT; of our blessed Lord's coming to us in the flesh. | veni-, vent-, to <i>come</i> .   |
| 4. To VENTILATE the room; to open it to the wind or air.   | vent-, <i>wind</i> .   |
| 5. A VENTRI-LOQUIST; a man who appears to speak from his stomach.  | ventr-, <i>belly</i> .   |
| 6. The RE-VERBERATING thunder; the thunder that repeats its strokes; its rolling sound.  | verbera-, verberat-, to <i>beat</i> ; to <i>scourge</i> ; to <i>flog</i> . |
| 7. A VERBAL criticism; a criticism that attends to the accurate use of words.  | verb-, <i>word</i> .   |
| 8. To REVERE; to regard with veneration.   | vere-, verit-, to <i>fear</i> ; to <i>regard with awe</i> .                |
| 9. To VERGE on threescore; to be tending towards it; to be on the very brink of it.  | verg-, to <i>incline</i> ; to <i>verge</i> .                               |

- 
1. *venerari, to worship; to honour*. 2. *venia, pardon*. 3. *vĕnire, vĕni, ventum, to come; to go*. 4. *ventus, wind*. 5. *venter, ventris, the belly*. 6. *verber, verberis, a scourge; a blow. verberare, to strike*. 7. *verbum, a word*. 8. *vereor, vereri, veritus sum, to fear; to reverence*. 9. *vergere, to incline; to bend; to verge*.

## Key-words.

## Latin Roots.

10. A VERMIFUGE; medicine for destroying worms. *ver-*, *worm*.
  11. To ADVERT to a subject; to turn attention to it; to touch upon it. *vert-*, *vers-*, to *turn*.
  12. To VERIFY a date; to prove it true. *ver-*, *true*.
1. *Veneration, venerable, venerableness, venerator.*
  3. An *adventure* (a coming to; an event or circumstance that came to, that is, befell one). *Adventurer, adventurously.* An *avenue* (a way by which to come; of trees, mostly a shady walk leading up to a mansion). *Adventitious* (coming by accident; not belonging necessarily to a thing's own nature and substance). *Adventitiously.* To *circumvent* (to come round; to get round a man, so that he has no escape left). *Circumvention.* To *contravene* (to come against; to thwart an order). *Contravention.* To *convene* (to cause to come together). *Convenient* (coming together aptly, so as to satisfy a person's want; commodious). *Conveniently, convenience.* A *convent* (a place where persons come together to lead a life of devotion and retirement; a monastery). *Conventual.* A *convention.* *Conventional* (founded upon agreement). A *conventicle* (a meeting-house where persons come together to worship). *Covenant* (an agreement, as being that by virtue of which two parties have come together; a compact). *Covenanter.* An *event* (that which comes or falls out). *Eventful.* *Eventual* (final; happening at last). To *intervene* (to come between). *Intervention* (the interposition of a friend or mediator). To *invent* (to come upon; hence, to discover). *Invention, inventive, inventor.* An *inventory* (a list showing where each thing may be found). *Inventorial.* *Peradventure* (by chance-coming; perchance). To *prevent* (to come or go before; hence, to hinder, &c.). *Prevention, preventive.* *Revenue* (income). To *supervene* (to come upon). *Supervenant, supervision.* *Vent* (a passage to come out by). To *venture* (to come with risk; to dare).
  4. *Ventilation.* A *ventilator* (a wind-giver; a contrivance for admitting fresh air). *Unventilated.* To *eventilate* (to separate by the wind; to winnow).
  5. A *ventriloquist* (properly, one who speaks from his stomach; but now used of one who makes his voice seem to come from a distant place).
  6. *Verberation.* To *reverberate* (to beat back or echo). *Reverberation, reverberatory.*
  7. *Verbally.* *Verbatim* (word for word). *Verbose* (wordy). *Verbosity.* *Verbiage* (wordiness). A *proverb* (literally, a fore-word; a speech that people often put forward as conveying an acknowledged truth). Give an example. ("Half a loaf is better than no bread.") *Adverb* (adjunct to a verb).

---

10. *vermis, a worm.* 11. *vertere, verti, versum, to turn.* 12. *verus, true.*

8. *Reverence*, reverently, reverential. *Reverent* (regarding with respect). *Reverend* (to be regarded with respect). *Irreverently*, irreverence.
9. To *converge* (to incline to one point). *Convergent*, *convergence*. To *diverge* (to incline away from). *Divergent*, *divergingly*.
10. *Vermiculous* (full of worms). *Vermiform* (having the form of a worm). To *vermiculate* (to inlay, by worming pieces in). *Vermiculation*. *Vermilion* (the red colour produced from the cochineal worm).
11. *Advertence*, *advertent*. To *animadvert* (to turn the mind upon; to remark upon with severity). *Animadversion* (severe reproof). To *avert* (to turn from). *Averse* (having the mind turned from; disinclined to). *Aversion* (dislike). To *controvert* (to turn against; to oppose an opinion, and endeavour to overthrow it). *Controvertible*. *Controversy* (a discussion of questions by opposing parties). *Controversial*. To *convert* (to turn or change a thing into something else). *Convertible*. A person's *conversion* (his turning to a different opinion or party). To *divert* (to turn aside from serious thoughts). *Divertible*, *diversion*. *Diverse*, *diversity*, *diversify*. To *invert* (to turn inwards; in a contrary direction). *Inverse*, *inversion*. *Malversation* (the turning one's opportunities to a bad use; fraudulent appropriation of money). To *pervert* (to turn aside from what is right). *Perversé* (turned amiss; cross-grained, &c.). *perversity*, *perversion*. To *revert* (to return). To *reverse* (to turn upside down). To *reverse* a sentence (to overthrow it by declaring the opposite). *Reversible*. A *reversion* (the returning of an estate to the grantor or his heirs). To *subvert* (to overturn). *Subverter*, *subversion*. *Transverse* (turned across). *Transverseable*. To *traverse* (to turn round; to cross a country). To *converse* (to talk together; properly, to take a turn together). *Conversation*, *conversable*, *conversant*. *Versatile* (that may easily be turned: hence, changeable). *Versatility*. *Vertebra* (turning bone; spine). *Vertebral*. *Vertigo* (a turning in the head). *Vertiginous*. *Anniversary* (annual return of a particular day). *Tergiversation* (a turning the back upon; subterfuges).
12. *Verifiable*, *verification*. *Veracity* (truthfulness). *Veracious*. *Verisimilar* (likely to be true). *Verisimilitude*. *Verity* (truth). *Veritable*. To *aver* (to affirm as true). *Averment*. *Verdict* (truth declared; the finding of a jury). *Very* (true). *Verily* (truly).

---

## LESSON C.

### Key-words.

### Latin Roots.

1. The lungs consist of **VESICLES** vesic-, bladder.  
admitting air; little bladders,  
as it were; little cells.

---

1. vesica, bladder.

## Key-words.

## Latin Roots.

2. To leave no **VESTIGE** behind ; no *trace, track, or footstep*.      *vestigi-, footstep.*
  3. To **DIVEST** it of its mysterious character ; to *strip* off the mystery in which it is dressed up.      *vesti-, to clothe.*
  4. An **INVETERATE** prejudice ; one of *long* continuance ; an *old* prejudice.      *veter-, old.*
  5. To **DEVIATE** from a path ; to *go out* of it.      *vi-, way.*
  6. To **VIBRATE** like a pendulum ; to *move* or swing rapidly *to and fro*.      *vibra-, } to shake ; to brandish,*  
*vibrat-, }*
  7. The **VICE-chancellor** ; the person who without *being* chancellor *holds* the *place* of chancellor ; he who acts instead of the chancellor.      *vic-, in stead (of).*
  8. The **VICINITY** of Oxford ; the neighbourhood.      *vicin-, neighbouring.*
  9. a) The blessing of **PROVIDENCE** ; of God's *foreseeing* care.      *vide-, vis-, to see.*  
b) **VISIBLE** things ; things that can be seen.
  10. **VIGOUR** of intellect ; *force, energy* of intellect.      *vige-, to be vigorous.*
  11. A **VIGILANT** protector ; a *watchful* protector.      *vigil-, awake.*
  12. A **VILE** miscreant ; a *base, worthless* miscreant.      *vil-, vile.*
1. **Vesicle** (a small bladder).      *Vesicular.*
  2. To **investigate** (to trace out).      *Investigation.*
  3. To **invest** (to put on clothes).      To *invest* money (to put it into the funds, or any bank, &c.).      *Investment, investiture ; to reinvest, reinvestment.*      *Vestry* (room for clothes ; used of the small room in a Church in which the *surplices, &c.* are kept). What is a parish *vestry*, and why so called ? (a parish meeting ; so called, because usually held in the 'vestry' of the church).      *Vestment* (clothing).      *Vesture* (clothing).      *Vest.*
  4. *Inveterately, inveterateness, inveteracy.*      A *veteran* (one who has long continued in the service).

---

2. *vestigium, a track ; a footstep.* 3. *vestis a garment.* *vestire, to clothe.* 4. *vetus, veteris, former, old.* 5. *via, a way.* 6. *vibrare, to make a thing shake ; to brandish.* 7. *vicis (gen.), change, course, stead.* 8. *vicus, a street.* *vicinus, near.* 9. *videre (vidi, visum), to see.* 10. *vigere, vigui, to flourish ; to grow.* *vigor, strength.* 11. *vigil, awake, watchful.* 12. *vilis, vile.*

5. *Deviation, devious.* To *obviate* (to meet in the way). To *obviate* a difficulty, objection, &c. (to *meet and remove* it). *Obvious* (meeting one in the road; so *plain* that it *lies*, as it were, in *one's path*). *Obviously.* *Pervious* (having a way through). *Previous* (being a way beforehand; former). *Previously.* *Trivial* (*trifling*; like what is talked in the streets: *trivia* was a place where three roads met; hence, a *square*, or *public place*). *Viaduct* (a passage leading from way to way; a bridge over a hollow). *Viaticum* (provision for the way).
6. *Vibration, vibratory, to revibrate.*
7. *Viceroy* (one in the place of a king). *Vice-royalty.* *Vice-admiral, viscount, vice-president, vice-chamberlain, vicegerent* (one who holds the place of another). *Vicarious* (acting in the place of another). *Vicariously.* *Vicar* (one in the place of another; one who stands in the *rector's* place). *Vicarial, vicarage.* *Vicissitude* (return of the same things in the same succession; then, *striking change*).
8. *Vicinage* (neighbourhood).
9. *Provident, providence, providently, providential.* *Provision* (a fore-seeing and consequent preparation made). *Provisional.* To *revise* (to re-see.) *Revision, revisal.* To *supervise* (to oversee). *Supervision, supervisor.* *Visible* (that can be seen). *Visibly.* *Vision* (the act of seeing). A *visionary* (one who indulges in *visions*, in day-dreams; as opposed to the realities of life). To *visit* (to go to see). *Visitor, visitable, visitation.* *Visor* (the *sight-opening* of a helmet; the opening for the eyes). *Visual* (belonging to sight). *Evidence* (a seeing out; testimony). *Evident, evidently.* *Invisible* (that cannot be seen). *Invisibility.*
10. *Vigour, vigorous, vigorously.* To *invigorate* (to infuse energy). *Invigoration.*
12. *Vileness.* To *vilify* (to degrade; to represent as vile; to defame). *Vilifier.* To *revile* (to address as degraded; to reproach). *Reviler.*

**NOTE** A *vicar* is a clergyman who has no right to 'the great tithes,' but only to 'the small tithes.'

*Void* comes from *vid-uus*, empty; which belongs to the same root as *vid-*, in *di-vid-o*.

## LESSON CI.

### Key-words.

### Latin Roots.

1. A **VILLAGE**; a collection of **vill-**, a *country-house*. houses.
2. The **INVINCIBLE** armada; the **vinc-**, **vict-**, to *conquer*. armada that *could not be con-*

---

1. *villa, a country-house.* 2. *vincere, vici, victum, to conquer.*

## Key-words.


## Latin Roots.

- quered* (according to its own false boast).
3. **VINDICTIVE**; inclined to punish wrongs. vindica- } prop. to *claim*; then, vindicat- } to *claim satisfaction*; to *avenge*; to *revenge*.  
[In English, *vindic-* becomes *venge*; the *d, c* being changed into *g*.]
4. A **VINOUS** flavour; a *wine-like* flavour. vin-, *wine*.
5. To **VIOLATE** an oath; to offend against its *sanctity*; to break it. a) vi-, *force*.  
b) viola-, violat-, to *wrong*; to *violate*.
6. **VIRTUOUS**; possessing that virtue which constitutes *man's true worth*. vir-, *man*.
7. A **VIRULENT** tongue; a *venomous* tongue. viru-, *venom*.
8. **ISCID** and **VISCOUS**; glutinous. visc-, *birdlime*.
9. A **VICIOUS** man; a man given to vice; a *corrupt*, bad man. viti-, *flaw*; *vice*.
10. His **INEVITABLE** fate; that cannot be avoided. vita-, vitat-, to *avoid*.
11. **VITRIFIED** rocks; rocks *glazed* (coated with glass) by the action of fire. vitr-, *glass*.
12. To **REVIVE**; to *live again*; to be restored to life. viv-, vict-, to *live*.
1. *Villager*.
2. *Vincibleness*. *Invincible* (that cannot be conquered). *Victor* (conqueror). *Victory*, *victorious*. A *victim* (a thank-offering slain after a victory; hence, an animal or person sacrificed). To *convince* (to conquer in argument). *Convincible*, *convincingly*. To *convict* (to conquer a man's defence; to prove his guilt). *Conviction*. To *evince* (to establish triumphantly by proof). *Evincible*. To *evict* (to conquer a tenant, by proving that he may lawfully be turned out). *Eviction*. *Province* (a conquered country, considered as advancing the boundaries of a state: *pro* = *forward*). *Provincial*.  
Hence, to *vanquish*, &c.
3. *Vindictively*. To *vindicate* (to claim or assert as a punisher of wrongs). *Vindication*, *vindicator*. *Vindictory* (punishing wrongs). To *avenge* (to punish wrongs). *Avenger*. *Vengeance* (the punishment of wrongs). *Vengeful*. To *revenge* (to exact punishment for a wrong received). *Revengeful*, *revenger*, *unrevenged*.

---

3. vindicare, to *avenge*; to *punish*; to *defend*. 4. vinum, *wine*.  
5. vis, vi, *force*. 6. vir, a *man*. 7. virus, n. *poison*. 8. viscum, *mistletoe*,  
glue. 9. vitium, *vice*. 10. vitare, to *shun*; to *avoid*. 11. vitrum,  
vitri, *glass*. 12. vivere, vixi, victum, to *live*.

4. *Vine* (the wine plant). *Vineyard*. *Vintage* (the gathering of grapes for wine). *Vintager*.
5. *Violation*. *Violence* (force). *Violent, violently*. *Inviolat* (not violated). *Inviolable* (that cannot be violated). *Inviolably, inviolability*.
6. *Virago* (a manlike woman; a fierce-tempered woman). A *triumvirate* (a union of three men; applied to three joint usurpers of a government, e.g. Pompey, Cæsar, and Crassus; Augustus Cæsar, Antonius, and Lepidus). A *virtual* confession (a confession, which, though not one formally, is one to all intents and purposes). *Virtually* (in effect; to all intents and purposes).
7. *Virulence* (a sort of poisoned animosity): *Virulently*.
8. *Viscid*ity, *viscosity*.
9. *Vitiousness, vitiously*. To *viliate* (to corrupt). *Viliation*. *Unvitiated* (uncorrupted). *Vice*.
10. *Inevitably*. *Evitable*.
11. *Vitrifiable, vitrification*. *Vitreous* (glassy). *Vitriol*.
12. *Revival*. To *revivify* (to restore to life). To *survive* (to live after another). *Survivor*. *Vital* (belonging to life). *Vitality, vitality*. *Vivacious* (long lived). *Vivacity* (liveliness). *Vivid* (lively). *Vividness*. *Victuals* (supporters of life). *Victualler*.

 *Villain* originally meant a *slave* belonging, as a fixture, to an estate, with its country-house (*villa*): then a *worthless slave*; a *rascal*.

## LESSON CII.

### Key-words.

### Latin Roots.

1. To CONVOKE a parliament; voca-, vocat-, to call.  
to call it together.
2. A VOLATILE child; a heedless flighty, bird-witted child. vola-, volat-, to fly.
3. A VOLUNTARY confession; one proceeding from free will; not compulsory. vol-, vell- } to wish; to be willing.  
volunt- }  
voluntat-, will.
4. To REVOLVE a question; to roll it round (or backwards and forwards) in the mind. volv-, volut-, to roll.
1. Convocation. To evoke, or evocate (to call out). Evocation. To invoke (to call on the name of the Deity, &c.). Invocation. To provoke (to call forth; to call a man out of himself; to irritate him). Provocation, provocative. To revoke (to recall a will, &c.). Revocation, revocable. Irrevocable (that cannot be recalled; cannot be altered). To vociferate (to call out). Vociferous, vociferation. Vocative (in grammar, the case used in calling or speaking to).
1. vox, vōcis, the voice. vōcare, to call. 2. vōlare, to fly. 3. volo, velle, volui, to will. voluntās, the will. 4. volvere, volvi, volūtum, to roll.



*Vocation* (calling). To *avouch* an opinion = to *advocate* it; hence, to *avouch* = to *affirm* it. An *advocate* (one called to a person on his trial, to assist him with professional advice). *Vocal* (sounding with the voice; *vocal* music [= singing]; opposed to *instrumental* music).

2. *Volatility*. To *volatilize* (to cause to fly; to turn a solid into an air-like or gaseous condition). *Volatilization*. *Volley* (a flight of shot).

3. *Voluntarily, volunteer*. *Benevolence* (good will). *Benevolent*. *Malevolence* (ill will). *Malevolent*. *Involuntary* (without the concurrence of the will). *Involuntarily*.

4. *Revolution, revolutionize*. To *evolve* (to roll out). *Evolution*. To *devolve* (to roll down). To *involve* (to roll in or upon). *Involute, involution*. To *convolve* (to roll together). *Convolution*. *Convolvulus* (rolling or winding plant). To *circumvolve* (to roll round). *Circumvolution*. *Voluble* (apt to roll; hence, of one who rolls on in a flood of talk). *Volubility*. *Volume* (a roll; the books of the ancients being sheets rolled round a stick). *Volute* (in architecture, an ornamental roll or scroll). The *revolutions* of the seasons (their rolling round; their regular course; their return at regular intervals).

THE END.

